Cyanomicon

History, Science and Art of Cyanotype: Photographic Printing in Prussian Blue

Mike Ware
MA DPHIL CCHEM FRSC

Honorary Fellow in Chemistry, University of Manchester, UK
Scientific Advisor to the National Gallery of Art, Washington, DC

Revised & Illustrated 2016
Further revised 2020
# Table of Contents

Table of Contents ................................................................. 2

Warning and Disclaimer .......................................................... 7

Preface ....................................................................................... 8

1 Introduction in Monochrome ..................................................... 9
   1.1 The legacy of John Herschel .............................................. 10
   1.2 Equivocal blue images .................................................... 12
   1.3 Acceptance of blue photographs ........................................ 15
   1.4 Commercial use of blueprint ............................................. 17
   1.5 Artistic renaissance of cyanotype ...................................... 19
   1.6 A rare colour in nature .................................................... 19
   1.7 Symbolic blue in art and religion ...................................... 23
   1.8 Liberation from blue preciousness ..................................... 27
   1.9 The aesthetics of the colour blue ...................................... 29
   1.10 Colour language and coordinates .................................... 30

2 The Invention of Cyanotype ....................................................... 35
   2.1 A brief history of Prussian blue ........................................ 35
   2.2 Light–sensitivity of iron salts ............................................ 38
   2.3 The first silver photographs on paper ................................. 41
   2.4 Herschel’s research records ............................................. 42
   2.5 Anthotype and phytotype ............................................... 44
   2.6 Discovery of cyanotype .................................................. 45
   2.7 Invention of siderotype .................................................. 49
   2.8 Publication of siderotype ............................................... 53
   2.9 Misapprehension of Herschel’s processes ............................ 57
   2.10 An unaccountable omission ........................................... 60
   2.11 Pursuit of photographic permanence ............................... 63
   2.12 Misappropriation of cyanotype ...................................... 64

3 The Molecular Basis of Blueprinting .......................................... 69
   3.1 Chemistry of Prussian blue ............................................. 69
   3.2 Molecular structure of Prussian blue ................................ 73
   3.3 Prussian blue for ion exchange ....................................... 74
   3.4 Prussian blue for electrochromic displays .......................... 77
   3.5 Chemical history of siderotype ....................................... 77
   3.6 Photochemical principles ............................................ 78
   3.7 Chemistry of blueprinting ............................................. 80

4 Historical Variations on Cyanotype ......................................... 82
   4.1 Herschel’s formulae ..................................................... 82
      4.1.1 Proto–cyanotype .................................................. 82
      4.1.2 Negative–working cyanotype ................................... 84
      4.1.3 Hydargyro–cyanotype .......................................... 86
      4.1.4 Positive–working cyanotype ................................... 86
      4.1.5 Anachronistic ‘Herschelotype’ ................................ 87
      4.1.6 Light–bleaching of Prussian blue ............................... 88
   4.2 Pellet’s process ......................................................... 89

©Mike Ware 2020

Cyanomicon

2
4.3 Survey of negative–working formulae .................................................. 92
4.4 Modifications of the cyanotype sensitizer ........................................... 95
  4.4.1 Robert Hunt’s ‘chromo–cyanotype’ .................................................. 95
  4.4.2 John Mercer’s ‘chromatic photographs’ ........................................... 95
  4.4.3 Charles Burnett’s ‘cobalt cyanotype’ ............................................. 97
  4.4.4 Other iron(III) sensitizers ........................................................... 98
  4.4.5 Terry King’s ‘cyanotype rex’ ....................................................... 100
  4.4.6 Cyanotype using uranium and vanadium salts ............................... 103
4.5 Cyanotype diapositives on glass and film ......................................... 104
4.6 Cyanotype negatives made in camera .............................................. 106
4.7 Printing cyanotypes by projection ....................................................... 108
4.8 Cyanotypes on ceramics .................................................................... 109
4.9 Cyanotypes on fabrics and textiles .................................................... 110
4.10 Gel lithography: ‘true-to-scale’ process ........................................... 112
4.11 Commercial blueprint papers .......................................................... 114
4.12 Type B blueprint papers–Blue Layer ............................................... 118
4.13 Type AB blueprint paper .................................................................. 120

5 Studies in Blue 1842–2013 .................................................................. 122
  5.1 Herschel’s use of engravings ............................................................. 122
  5.2 Identifying the sources of engravings ................................................. 124
  5.3 Herschel’s cyanotype tests ................................................................. 129
  5.4 Cyanotypes of British algae by Anna Atkins ..................................... 135
  5.5 Recent scholarship on Anna Atkins .................................................. 141
  5.6 Albums by Anna Atkins and Anne Dixon ........................................... 143
  5.7 An anonymous cyanotype album of 1843 .......................................... 146
  5.8 Later botanical cyanotypes ............................................................... 149
  5.9 Julia Herschel’s lacemaking handbooks ............................................. 150
  5.10 Early pictorial studies in cyanotype ................................................ 151
  5.11 Documentary and topographical cyanotypes ................................... 154
  5.12 Cyanotype currency notes and postage stamps ............................... 161
  5.13 Linley Sambourne’s cyanotypes ...................................................... 164
  5.14 Some contemporary cyanotypists ................................................... 165

6 Contemporary Methodology ................................................................. 169
  6.1 Diaphanes: a neologism ................................................................. 169
  6.2 Skiagraphy of photograms ............................................................... 171
  6.3 The processing environment ............................................................ 175
  6.4 Materials and equipment ................................................................. 175
    6.4.1 Paper characteristics .............................................................. 176
    6.4.2 Using glass rods to coat paper .................................................. 179
    6.4.3 Contact-printing frames ......................................................... 182
    6.4.4 Ultra–violet light sources ...................................................... 184
  6.5 Making suitable silver–gelatin negatives ........................................ 186
  6.6 Inkjet–printed digital negatives ....................................................... 189
    6.6.1 Summary and purpose ........................................................... 190
    6.6.2 Calibration of equipment and materials .................................... 191
    6.6.3 Fine-tuning negative opacities ................................................. 193
    6.6.4 The 'gamma slider' for tonal correction .................................... 193
    6.6.5 Workflow for digital negatives .............................................. 195
7 Formulary for Cyanotype Sensitizers .......................................................... 213
7.1 The Classic cyanotype process 1842/1897 ........................................... 213
  7.1.1 Sensitizer chemicals needed .......................................................... 213
  7.1.2 Preparation of Classic cyanotype sensitizer .................................... 214
  7.1.3 Mixing and coating ........................................................................ 215
  7.1.4 Printing exposure .......................................................................... 215
  7.1.5 Wet processing and reoxidation ...................................................... 215
7.2 An improved Classic cyanotype sensitizer ........................................... 216
  7.2.1 Sensitizer chemicals needed .......................................................... 216
  7.2.2 Preparation of improved Classic cyanotype sensitizer .................... 216
  7.2.3 Shortcomings of the Classic cyanotype process ............................. 217
  7.2.4 Remedies for shortcomings of the Classic process ......................... 218
  7.2.5 Modified chemistry for the New cyanotype process ....................... 219
7.3 The New cyanotype process 1995 ......................................................... 221
  7.3.1 Sensitizer chemicals and apparatus needed .................................... 221
  7.3.2 Preparation of New cyanotype sensitizer ....................................... 222
  7.3.3 Use of dichromate ........................................................................ 226
  7.3.4 Use of Tween 20 surfactant ........................................................... 226
  7.3.5 Choice of papers .......................................................................... 226
  7.3.6 Drying .......................................................................................... 227
  7.3.7 Citric acid to prevent fogging .......................................................... 228
  7.3.8 Negatives and exposure ...............................................................
  7.3.9 Wet processing and contrast control ............................................. 228
  7.3.10 Washing and reoxidation ............................................................. 229
  7.3.11 New cyanotype: workflow summary ........................................... 231
  7.3.12 Effects of heat–drying and ‘darktime’ .......................................... 232
7.4 The Simple cyanotype process 2019 ..................................................... 233
  7.4.1 Sensitizer chemicals needed .......................................................... 233
  7.4.2 Preparation of Simple cyanotype sensitizers ................................. 235
  7.4.3 Equipment and materials ............................................................. 237
  7.4.4 Choice of paper .......................................................................... 238
  7.4.5 Negatives and control of contrast ................................................. 238
  7.4.6 Addition of surfactant ................................................................... 238
  7.4.7 Coating ......................................................................................... 239
  7.4.8 Drying ......................................................................................... 239
  7.4.9 Printing exposure ......................................................................... 239
  7.4.10 Wet processing .......................................................................... 240
  7.4.11 Simple cyanotype: workflow summary ........................................ 240
7.4.12 Typical results: one-bottle version ........................................... 241
7.4.13 Sensitizers separated for longer storage .................................... 242
7.5 Mike’s cyanotype ................................................................. 244
7.5.1 Sensitizer chemicals needed ................................................... 244
7.5.2 Preparation of Mike’s cyanotype sensitizer .............................. 244
7.6 Diagnosis of fogged highlights .................................................. 246
7.7 List of chemicals and hazards ................................................... 248
7.8 Environmental issues and disposal ............................................. 255
7.9 Suppliers of chemicals and equipment ....................................... 257
UK ............................................................................................. 257
EUROPE ...................................................................................... 257
USA ............................................................................................ 258
AUSTRALIA ................................................................................ 259

8 Methods for Toning Cyanotypes .................................................... 260
8.1 Hydrolysis of Prussian blue ......................................................... 261
8.2 Ferro–gallate and tannate ............................................................. 261
8.3 Assorted beverages ..................................................................... 262
8.4 Iron–mordanted dyes ................................................................... 263
8.5 Black toners ............................................................................... 264
8.6 Heavy metal incorporation ........................................................... 265
8.6.1 Lead ..................................................................................... 265
8.6.2 Thallium ............................................................................... 267
8.6.3 Nickel .................................................................................. 267
8.6.4 Copper ............................................................................... 268
8.7 Insoluble metal ferricyanides ......................................................... 268
8.8 Blue toning of silver prints ........................................................... 268

9 Vulnerability & Conservation of Cyanotypes .................................... 270
9.1 Fading of cyanotypes by light ......................................................... 271
9.1.1 Experimental: preparation of specimens .................................... 272
9.1.2 Experimental: fading apparatus and measurements .................. 274
9.1.3 Results: characteristic curves and the ‘fade’ .............................. 275
9.1.4 Results: variation of fade with initial density .............................. 276
9.1.5 Results: variation of fade with exposure time .............................. 279
9.1.6 Results: reversibility of repeated fade and regain ...................... 281
9.1.7 Results: effect of conditions on fading ...................................... 283
9.1.8 Conclusions: mechanism of light–fading ................................. 285
9.1.9 Regain of colour by faded Prussian blue ................................... 289
9.1.10 Recent spectrometry of Prussian blue fading ......................... 290
9.2 Bleaching of cyanotypes by alkali ................................................ 290
9.3 Peptization of Prussian blue ........................................................ 293
9.4 Conservation issues with cyanotypes .......................................... 295
9.4.1 Recognition of cyanotype ......................................................... 295
9.4.2 Exhibition and light sensitivity .................................................. 296
9.4.3 Safe copying techniques .......................................................... 297
9.4.4 Avoidance of alkali ................................................................. 301
9.4.5 Buffered substrates ............................................................... 302
9.4.6 Storage enclosures ............................................................... 304

Appendix I Chronology of Cyanotype .............................................. 307
Appendix II Chemistry of Prussian Blue .................................................. 308
II.1 Methods of preparation ........................................................................ 309
II.2 'Soluble' Prussian blue ........................................................................ 310
II.3 'Insoluble' Prussian blue ...................................................................... 313
II.4 Turnbull’s blue ..................................................................................... 314
II.5 Electronic spectrum of Prussian blue .................................................... 316
II.6 Iron(III) aquapentacyanoferrate(II) ..................................................... 317
II.7 Investigation of cyanotype Prussian blue ............................................. 318
II.8 Hydrolysis of Prussian blue .................................................................. 320
II.9 Prussian white ...................................................................................... 321
II.10 Berlin green ......................................................................................... 322
II.11 Prussian brown or yellow .................................................................... 323
II.12 Electrochemical studies of redox behaviour ....................................... 323

Appendix III Photochemistry of Cyanotype ............................................. 327
III.1 Light-sensitive iron(III) carboxylates .................................................. 327
III.2 Quantitative aspects of the photochemistry ....................................... 329
III.3 The Jones–Condit Equation ................................................................ 333
III.4 Photochemistry of trisoxalatoferrate(III) ........................................... 334
III.5 Composition of ammonium iron(III) citrate ....................................... 335
III.6 Photochemistry of citratoferrate(III) .................................................. 337
III.7 Photochemistry of hexacyanoferrate(III) ............................................ 338
III.8 Photochemistry of the blueprint process: 1 ....................................... 339
III.9 Photochemistry of the blueprint process: 2 ....................................... 342
III.10 Photochemical reduction of Prussian blue ........................................ 345

Appendix IV Units of Concentration .......................................................... 348
IV.1 Concentration as weight percent volume (% w/v) ............................... 348
IV.2 Concentration as molarity .................................................................... 348
IV.3 Concentration as weight percent weight (% w/w) ............................... 349
IV.4 Concentration as volume percent volume (% v/v) ............................... 349
IV.5 Early formulations and recipes .............................................................. 349
IV.6 Modern formulations and recipes ........................................................ 350
IV.7 Interconversion of $C_w$ and $C$ ............................................................. 350
IV.8 Conversion of units in obsolete formulae ............................................ 352

Notes and References ............................................................................... 354
Warning and Disclaimer

The practical instructions contained in this text involve the handling of some chemicals that are regarded as toxic or harmful. The chemical hazards are summarised in §7.7, but it is the responsibility of the users of chemicals to inform themselves about the risks, and to take appropriate precautions in their handling. Reference should be made to the Materials Safety Data Sheets (MSDS), which are accessible online:

http://www.ilpi.com/msds/index.html

The author hereby denies liability for any consequent sickness, injury, damage or loss resulting from the use of the chemicals and procedures described herein.
Preface

My first monograph on *Cyanotype* was published by the Science Museum of London in 1999, but has long been totally out of print. This book was devoted to the study of photographic printing in Prussian blue, engaging with its history, aesthetics, practice, conservation, and chemistry. Over the last twenty years, I have been substantially restructuring this text in an updated, extended, and illustrated edition that is freely available as a 400 page ~75 MB pdf download from the World Wide Web:
http://www.mikeware.co.uk/mikeware/downloads.html

With over 840 references to the literature and WWW, I hope it may serve occasionally as a useful resource for historians, curators and conservators of photographs, photochemists, and students of siderotype – iron–based analogue photographic printing – should any of these good folk ever find themselves as castaways upon the strange blue shores of cyanotype. For those other shipwrecked mariners – photographic artists exploring the use of cyanotype printmaking as an expressive medium – I have included full practical instruction in all the modern processes.

Mike Ware
Buxton
January 2020
www.mikeware.co.uk
1 Introduction in Monochrome

"Blue, darkly, deeply, beautifully blue"
Robert Southey (1774-1843)
Poet Laureate

Out of the entire gamut of photographic printing techniques left to us by the early pioneers of the medium, only one process survives unchanged to the present day: cyanotype. Yet its images still seem unnatural to many viewers; the colour intensity of Prussian blue invests them with an incongruity that has curbed the scope of this process ever since it first saw light in the dawn of photography. Cyanotype endures nonetheless, and is still practised today in much the same way as 178 years ago. Its strange blue aesthetic is now gaining a wider acceptance than hitherto, thanks to the advancing sophistication of our photographic sensibility. So the time now seems ripe for a review of cyanotype as an alternative medium of photographic practice. The author’s only misgiving is that it may seem over-ambitious, in this era of specialism, for any writer to assume all three mantles of historian, scientist, and art-critic within a single text; this presumption therefore calls for a short justification.

Historically, cyanotype is an undervalued process which the standard works on photography usually dismiss in a paragraph. Despite its marginalized status, there is much of interest and relevance to be found here – a history that deserves to be more widely appreciated for the added light it sheds on the early development of photography.

Scientifically, the photochemical theory of the cyanotype has attracted rather little professional attention, and the published explanations do not seem to account fully for its phenomenology. It is fortunate that an intense research interest in the substance, Prussian blue, has grown up in recent years among electrochemists with quite different technological aims, but their interest has greatly improved our chemical understanding of this fascinating historical pigment.

Artistically, there are strong signs that contemporary photographic image-makers are now taking more interest in the process, to judge by the growing presence of cyanotypes on gallery walls and in published books. The aesthetics of the blue monochrome image have always presented something of a problem for the connoisseurs of photography, and the origins of this difficulty will provide us with an interesting subject for discussion.
1.1 The legacy of John Herschel

Photography in Prussian blue was discovered on 23rd April, 1842 by Sir John Frederick William Herschel (1792–1871), just over three years after Louis Jacques Mandé Daguerre (1789–1851) and William Henry Fox Talbot (1800–1877) had announced their independent inventions of photography in silver, respectively using substrates of metal and paper. The success of these two pioneers in finally securing photographs in silver was the fruition of an idea that had been gestating for more than a century in the minds and laboratories of several leading natural philosophers.¹ In contrast, the birth of the silverless cyanotype was totally unexpected; it came, literally and metaphorically 'out of the blue', to a 'single parent'. Why should the circumstances of these two major photographic innovations have been so different? An attempt to answer this question will be offered in the next chapter.

While Henry Talbot was creating several thousand images in silver and assembling them into a creative œuvre that is now recognised as the richest vision in early photographic art,² his fellow-scientist Sir John Herschel, rather than making new pictures, was experimenting widely with chemical processes that might prove photographic, for he was motivated by a preoccupation with the medium rather than the message. By retracing Herschel's steps which led to the discovery of cyanotype we will engage with just one facet of the life and work of this great polymath. The account of his photographic researches offers us a paradigm for the extraordinary interactions between chance, intuition, and inductive logic, as they blended within one outstanding scientific mind of the 19th century.

As one of the leading physical scientists of his day, Herschel was driven by a desire to understand photochemical phenomena, and to enlist them as tools for probing the electromagnetic spectrum beyond the narrow optical limits imposed by human vision. He sought to venture outside the shortwave end of the visible spectrum, into the region of the ultra-violet or 'actinic' rays that had been discovered in 1801 by Johann Ritter. At the other end of the optical spectrum, he explored beyond the longwave visible limit, into the region of the infra-red or 'thermic' rays that had been discovered in 1800 by his father, the celebrated astronomer, Sir William Herschel. In part, the son intended his investigations as a vindication of his father's work:

"thus my father's experiments have full ocular demonstration" ³
Herschel also clearly entertained a practical objective: the hope of devising a direct photographic process in natural colour. There is no compelling evidence to suggest that he was in pursuit of commercially useful methods of reprography, unlike Talbot, whose clear intention to multiply his photographic images in printers’ ink was ultimately realised in his method of ‘photoglyphic engraving’. It is therefore a happy irony that it was Herschel who became the inventor of the first process for reprographic photocopying, which we now call “blueprint”.

Fig. 1.1 Sir John F.W. Herschel by Julia Margaret Cameron

Over the years since his death in 1871, Sir John Herschel’s original writings, unpublished personal memoranda, experimental notes and specimen images have become somewhat dispersed globally; but the following chapters will attempt to re-unite those fragments of his scientific legacy that are concerned with the cyanotype process, and to interpret them in the light of a modern understanding of the properties of the image substance, Prussian blue. The reader will find that every text on ‘alternative’ photographic processes quotes a formula for the cyanotype which is claimed to be ‘Herschel’s original’, but references are never cited in support, because his publications are not explicit on the exact formula. I have now resolved this issue by reference to Herschel’s own experimental notes of 1842 (from the manuscript archive at the Harry Ransom Humanities Research Center of the University of Texas, at Austin) which reveal how he explored at least fifteen chemically distinct ways of making images in Prussian blue. It will become clear that
limitations in the chemical knowledge of Herschel’s day pre-conditioned his achievements to a significant extent, and that he owed much to a young scientist, Dr Alfred Smee (1818–1877), whose chemical expertise provided Herschel with information and actual samples of newly-synthesised substances that would prove crucial to his success.

1.2 Equivocal blue images

The history of the cyanotype has a rather periodic character; within its 172 years (as of 2014) we can distinguish three main phases of use. At first Herschel’s invention was taken up only by a small élite of botanists for the purposes of plant illustration. The most notable achievement was that of Anna Atkins who, during two decades from 1843, produced and distributed her now celebrated and highly-treasured albums of botanical photograms, as described in §5.4. Otherwise, Herschel’s cyanotype found little acceptance among his peers, such as Sir David Brewster, the leading scientific patron of the new art-science of photography.

Fig. 1.2 "Cyanotype by Sir John Herschel"
from the Brewster Album, collection of the J. Paul Getty Museum.
In his scholarly exposition of the famous ‘Brewster Album’ in the J. Paul Getty Musuem collection, the photohistorian Professor Graham Smith has noted that it contains one of Sir John Herschel’s cyanotypes of 1842, fig. 1.2, which was donated by Michael Pakenham Edgeworth to Brewster in 1843, and concerning which Brewster confided, in a letter to Talbot:

“It is taken from an engraving, and is tolerably sharp but by no means pleasing.”

Talbot himself made no use whatever of the cyanotype process; but, much later in 1864, he did comment approvingly on its permanence in regard to the botanical photograms of Anna Atkins (see §5.4), who had presented him with a copy of her cyanotype work, *British Algae: Cyanotype Impressions*.

In the Great Exhibition of 1851, among a multitude of exhibits illustrating the burgeoning art-science of photography, the cyanotype process was represented by just one minor specimen. This evident lack of practice is an indication of the insignificant status accorded to cyanotype at the time, which may be attributable, at least in part, to inadequate published descriptions of the best procedures for carrying out the process, as we shall see in §2.9. The medium was relegated for a further twenty years to its sojourn in disuse. Following Herschel’s death in 1871, the cyanotype process was appropriated by entrepreneurs of a more commercial turn of mind than its true inventor, and then exploited as a reprographic medium, although Herschel himself had previously demonstrated its use for copying text and images. The re-branded ‘ferroprussiate’ process also found some use by photographers as a cheap and easy option for proofing negatives, but its major market was for copying the plans in every drawing office of the world. The commercialized version of Herschel’s invention – the ‘blueprint’ – held sway as the chief industrial reprographic process for eighty years.

By 1900, the acceptibility of cyanotype as a medium for pictorial photography had been seriously inhibited, at least in Britain, by the intolerant responses of various critics to its powerful colour. The arbiters of contemporary taste in ‘the art of photography’ were at the time habituated to an aesthetic of monochrome images that were mostly brown, so they declared the unremitting blue of the cyanotype to be anathema. Foremost among these critics was Peter Henry Emerson, always characteristically vituperative in his condemnations:
“... no one but a vandal would print a landscape in red, or in cyanotype.”

“The Ferro–Prussiate printing process, of course, does not concern us, blue prints are only for plans, not for art.”

Even R Child Bayley expressed his disdain for the process in this sardonic observation from *The Complete Photographer*:

“...as to printing methods, there is the simple “blue print”, which survives, as the Darwinians tell us some of the lower forms of life survive, from the extreme simplicity of its structure. The blue print needs nothing but a good washing in water to reveal its full vigour (such as it is). ... There are certain subjects which the colour is said to suit, and I live in the hope that one day I may see such a subject.”

As late as 1922, the prevailing view that cyanotype was fit only for proofing negatives was reflected in E J Wall’s dismissal:

“One rarely wants to print from an ordinary negative in the vivid blue of cyanotype, for the color is not suitable for ordinary views, except possibly ice and glacier scenes, and these can be much more effectively dealt with by the cyanotype toning of a bromide or development print.”

But one writer who did not join the general chorus of condemnation in Britain was the noted professional photographer, Frank Sutcliffe:

“An amateur of my acquaintance prints everything he does in cyanotype blue, and I must confess that looking through his prints from time to time gives me more pleasure than I get from looking at any other workers prints. They never give me neuralgia in the eyes.”

The anonymous “amateur” in question may have been Washington Teasdale (1831–1903) of Headingley, Leeds, where Sutcliffe was also born, and who used the cyanotype process extensively during the 1880s – see §5.10.

Despite Sutton’s interesting claim for their therapeutic value, cyanotypes were held in low esteem by the British photographic establishment, which deemed them both unacceptable for exhibition and unworthy of acquisition. The prevalence of this prejudicial view is apparent from historical evidence of a negative kind. If one searches the major British collections of photographic art for examples of the process, cyanotypes are found to be conspicuously absent. For instance, the Royal Photographic Society’s collection, which is an outstanding representation of 19th century work, had not admitted a single cyanotype, as of 1999.
The Scottish National Portrait Gallery holds a magnificent photographic collection, restricted neither to Scotland nor portraiture, but has acquired only one small cyanotype. Even the Victoria & Albert Museum can only boast, in addition to its modest fascicle of Anna Atkins, a relatively small number of recently-acquired twentieth-century examples of cyanotype.

The National Museum of Photography, Film, & Television, now rebranded as the National Media Museum, naturally has important holdings of early cyanotypes by Herschel and Atkins, but otherwise the later use of the process in the history of photography is represented only by a few anonymous architectural studies of little consequence. A similar state of non-representation seems to prevail in most other major British collections. It must also be considered significant that the – otherwise admirable – *Charts for the Recognition of Photographic Processes*, devised in 1976 by Messrs B Coe, T J Collings and A T Gill for the Royal Photographic Society, completely omitted the cyanotype process from their scheme of things.

The third phase of cyanotype – its rehabilitation as a medium for visual art – came about only in the last two decades of the 20th century, as we shall see, with the rise of the movement for ‘alternative photography’.

### 1.3 Acceptance of blue photographs

Early prejudice against the cyanotype process did not prevail universally. In Paris, the collections of the Musée d’Orsay and the Musée des Beaux Arts contain substantial holdings of beautiful cyanotypes by Paul Burty Haviland, fig. 1.3, and Henri Le Secq.

In the USA, the collection of the George Eastman House has specimens of Le Secq’s architectural studies, among many other significant cyanotypes. In Canada, the collection at the National Gallery in Ottawa contains many interesting cyanotypes, including a fine series of ethnographic studies of Native North Americans by Edward Curtis, fig. 1.4.
Neither was the process despised among the amateur community in North America, as it largely was in Britain. One handbook published in the USA refers to the process as “capable of such beautiful results”, and John Tennant, the editor of the influential American periodical The Photo-Miniature, conducted quite a spirited defence in one of his issues of 1900:

“This prejudice against the blue print because of its color is, in itself, curiously interesting. In every-day life we are inclined to be enthusiastic about everything blue, from the deep blue of the sea or the deeper depths of blue in a woman’s eyes, to the marvellous blue of old Delft ware or the Willow plates of years ago.”

But there was one North American photographer who did apparently find the process unacceptable: the young Alvin Langdon Coburn.
According to Nancy Newhall,\textsuperscript{20} he deemed the process “villainous”, a rather sophisticated judgement at the time – for an eight-year-old!

\begin{figure}[h]
\centering
\includegraphics[width=\textwidth]{fig14}
\caption{Edward Curtis, \textit{Misham}}
\end{figure}

### 1.4 Commercial use of blueprint

In Britain, the cyanotype suffered an almost total aesthetic boycott by photographic artists, connoisseurs, and curators until the last two decades of the 20\textsuperscript{th} century; but in contrast, one can point to huge archives of cyanotypes where its utility as a copying process was the paramount consideration. The commercial success of the cyanotype process was owed, not to its pictorial use, but its reprographic facility. These applications have endowed our language with a new word: \textit{blueprint} – a word that endures long after the process it described
became obsolete because, as Frances Robertson explains, it has now taken on the expanded and more abstract meaning of “master plan”.21

The era of the blueprint as a copying process was heralded by the manufacture of the cheap, sensitized paper in huge quantities. By the beginning of the 20th century its use for copying engineering and architectural plans had become universal in drawing offices, fig. 1.5. In 1918, a 30 foot roll of blueprint paper a yard wide could be purchased for as little as 1s. 6d.22 This was just as well, because consumption must have been enormous: the plans for a battleship, for instance, required 11,000 square feet of the material!23 Although it faced two or three competing processes, the blueprint was predominant for eighty years as the foremost industrial reprographic process, and it was only finally displaced in the mid-1950's in the UK, first by the diazo print medium, then by the invention of electrophotography, which enabled photocopying by entirely dry methods.24 It is interesting to note that commercial production and use of blueprint paper, though dwindling, was still significant in 1972 in the USA, and production of the paper survives there still, albeit on a very reduced scale, for leisure purposes.25
1.5 Artistic renaissance of cyanotype

Today we come full circle in witnessing a second revival of the cyanotype process among contemporary photographic artists who, like the very first practitioners, are mostly obliged to hand-coat their own paper or, in some instances, more unusual surfaces, such as wood, bone, glass or stone. There is a case to be made for the rehabilitation of cyanotype as a fine print medium, despite – or perhaps even because of – its powerful colour. It is not generally acknowledged that, if carefully executed with a good chemical formulation, cyanotype is capable of great delicacy in tonal gradation which can equal any other photographic printing process.\textsuperscript{26} It combines the advantages of very low cost, low toxic hazard, simplicity in manipulation, applicability to many types of surface, in very large formats if desired and, thanks to Herschel’s magnanimity, all this without restriction by patent or commercial secrecy. The well-known vulnerability of cyanotypes to alkali is not a serious problem if they are treated with nothing more than ‘benign neglect’. From a general observation of historic specimens of photography in major archives, I can justify the claim that most 150–year-old cyanotypes have survived better than their silver counterparts of a comparable age.

Nonetheless, the cyanotype is still relegated to the role of humble Cinderella among alternative printing processes. It is generally treated as a poor cousin to silver, carbon, and platinum printing – although it would be inappropriate to press this metaphor too far – I am not implying that these other processes are the ‘ugly sisters’! The rest of this introduction will be devoted to examining some possible explanations for cyanotype’s lowly status. One reason may be that the process is perceived by some influential commentators as so facile, cheap, and unsophisticated, that they think it is only worth practising by the unskilled. A second reason may stem from a deep-seated aesthetic rejection evoked by the incongruity of the blue image, when this colour is so seldom to be seen in nature. A third more sophisticated motive may be that, by inevitably rendering all that it touches in an uncompromising blue, the cyanotype is felt to devalue the very colour that had always been reserved historically by artists to embody a sense of preciousness.

1.6 A rare colour in nature

It is an observable fact that blue pigments are very rare in the natural world.\textsuperscript{27} Let us take a chromatic survey of the everyday hues in the
landscape, viewed through a chemist’s spectroscopic eye. The plant kingdom is mainly characterised by the green photosynthetic pigment, chlorophyll, enlivened here and there by the yellow, orange, and red of carotenoids in flowers and the turning leaves of autumn. Tree trunks and boughs display the deep browns of complex oxidised organic macromolecules, lignins and tannins, and the soil is similarly coloured with humic acids. Many rocks are stained with the reddish–browns of iron oxides.

Living creatures often display the dark tones of the pigment melanin in hair and hide (Greek: μελας = black), which contrasts with the crimson of myoglobin and haemoglobin, showing through in the pink and red of flesh and blood. The reader can savour the rarity of blue among all these familiar colours of nature, by contemplating, for a moment, the unnatural prospect of a plateful of blue food. Blue dye is used to mark condemned meat and hopefully ensure its non–consumption. It may also be significant in this context that blue was the colour conventionally chosen for the glass of ribbed poison bottles in Victorian times.

There is only one obvious source of blueness in the world which accustoms us to our everyday familiarity with the colour: the light that comes from the vast hemisphere of a clear sky. The presence of this ubiquitous blue source does not contradict the rarity of blue as a pigment because the colour of the sky is not due to absorption, but to a selective scattering of light, an optical phenomenon first elucidated by John Tyndall in 1869, and quantified mathematically by Lord Rayleigh in
Expanses of water often reflect the blue of the sky; and if the optical path length through water is very long, transmitted light does appear blue owing to a very weak absorption band in the red end of the visible spectrum of water.

In 1789 the Swiss natural philosopher Horace-Bénédict de Saussure (1740–1799) invented the *Cyanometer* to quantify and measure the blueness of the sky, using dilutions of the pigment Prussian blue to make a graded circular step-tablet, Fig. 1.7, as a comparator. He concluded that the transparency of the sky was a measure of the water vapour content of the atmosphere.

Later in the 19th Century, the blue of the sky became a central issue for a number of quasi-scientific investigators, of whom the "leading light", a retired US Civil War general named Augustus James Pleasonton,
published a memoir in 1877 describing his experiments with cultivation of grapes – and later pigs – within a glasshouse incorporating blue filters:

"I may premise that for a long time I have thought that the blue color of the sky, so permanent and so all-pervading, and yet so varying in intensity of color, according to season and latitude, must have some abiding relation and intimate connection with the living organisms on this planet."34

This book led the way for the niche following of "chromotherapy" and, true to its ideals, was printed with blue ink on blue paper.

Besides the sky, many of the other occurrences of blue in nature prove often to be examples, not of absorption by pigments, but of 'microstructural colour'; that is, chromatic phenomena generated by optical physics rather than chemistry.35 The blues to be seen in some birds’ plumage – the Indigo Bunting, Passerina cyanea is a fine example – are not caused by pigment absorption but by selective light-scattering from the feathers; the striking blue colour of some species of Morpho butterfly, Fig. 1.8,36 and the iridescent blue carapaces of some beetles are likewise due, not to the absorption of light, but to optical interference effects, akin to those in an opal, a soap bubble, or an oil film on a water surface.37

![Morpho Butterfly](https://via.placeholder.com/150)

**Fig. 1.8 Morpho butterfly**

The one important exception that 'proves' the rule of rarity is the occurrence of blue organic pigments – certain members of the family of anthocyanine dyes – in some common flowers such as bluebells and cornflowers. These we particularly admire for the vivid chromatic accents that they bring to contrasts in the natural landscape. It is possible that this botanical coloration has evolved as an adaptive characteristic, endowing the plants with survival advantages by attracting pollinating insects, which see them standing out against a common green background. Bees, for example, are blind to red light but can see into the
ultraviolet; a blue flower may be even more conspicuous to them than to us.

It is therefore comprehensible that the scarcity of blue dyestuffs among naturally-occurring materials has always conferred high status or ritual significance on the use of the colour in many early cultures. Indigo has been valued since 2500 BC. The best natural source is the *Indigofera* plant that occurs in India, as its name implies, although the woad obtained by the Picts from *Isatis* is the same dyestuff. In the early Mesoamerican cultures ca. 800 AD, indigo from *Indigofera Suffruticosa* (the *Anil* plant) was incorporated into a clay, palygorskite, to provide the remarkably stable pigment, Maya blue.

A close chemical relative of indigo is Tyrian purple, famously reserved as the dye for the Imperial robes of Rome, and also known biblically as the dye *argaman*, reserved for rabbinical vestments in the Judaic tradition. Tyrian purple was first extracted by the Phoenicians from a Mediterranean mollusc, *Murex Brandaris*, but can be sourced from several other species and, because it is formed photochemically in sunlight, it has even been employed for photographic printing. It is curious to reflect that when Julius Caesar’s invading legions fought the Picts in 58 BC, both the Emperor’s robes and the tribesmen’s skins were coloured with chemically similar dyestuffs, but of rather different cultural origins. With the common availability of synthetic blue dyes in modern times, the distinction conferred by blue clothing has become socially inverted, so we now have the bleu de travail of the French ouvrier, the ‘blue collar worker’ of British class culture, and the ubiquitous and commonplace ‘blue jeans’ of denim.

1.7 Symbolic blue in art and religion

Given the universal scarcity of blue pigmentation in the natural world, we can understand why the cyanotype image might have been considered ‘unnatural’. Its low status in photographic art, however, still remains somewhat paradoxical when we contrast it with the elevated role of blue in the traditions of painting. Of all the colours in the spectrum, blue held the place of honour among the pigments on the artist’s palette. In the history of painting, therefore, blue was always reserved for a noble role. Patrons of great paintings were inclined to limit their expenses by stipulating how much ultramarine the artist might use in the work; for this was the finest, most costly blue then available, ‘the queen of all the pigments’, and it was made by grinding up the gem-stone *lapis lazuli*,
which was mined only in Afghanistan, and therefore came from ‘over the sea’, hence *ultra mare*. The Ancient Egyptians also used ultramarine to decorate the death mask of King Tutankamun.

Blue was a prized pigment for the decoration of fine ceramics, as exemplified by the blue and white porcelain adopted in China, traded by Marco Polo, with some specimens dated 1351 finally ending up in the British Museum collection as the celebrated ‘David Vases’, Fig. 1.9.

![David Vases, 1351](image)

*Fig. 1.9 David Vases, 1351*  
(*Collection of the British Museum*)

The first synthetic pigment, Egyptian blue was used to decorate ceramic artworks and to dye the swaddling clothes for the baby pharaohs of ancient Egypt.
The association with the colour of the celestial hemisphere adds an extra dimension to the symbolism of blue. Because it appears in the sky after the obscuring clouds are dispelled, blue is said to be the ‘colour of truth’. C J Jung conjectured that:

“...blue, standing for the vertical, means height and depth (the blue sky above, the blue sea below).” 43

Jolan de Jacobi, in her study of Jungian psychology, says:

“...blue, the colour of the rarefied atmosphere, of the clear sky, stands for thinking.” 44

In a religious context, blue is the colour symbolising some of the loftiest sentiments: spiritual devotion, heavenly love, and innocence. In the traditions of Western religious art, for instance, the Virgin Mary’s mantle is invariably rendered in blue, and so is that of Christ during his ministry on earth.45 In some of the most notable altarpieces of Christian art, for instance the superb Wilton Diptych shown in Fig. 1.10, the entire court of heaven is clad in blue.46

Fig. 1.10 The Wilton Diptych
(collection of the National Gallery, London)
In Byzantine art, the haloes of the principal figures are golden if they are mere mortal emperors and prophets, but sky-blue is used for the haloes of the spiritual beings. Blue is also the predominant colour used to decorate the churches of the Greek Orthodox tradition. In Indian religious painting, Krishna, one of the incarnations of Vishnu the Preserver, is always represented with blue skin, Fig. 1.11:

“Since the infinite empty space appears as deep blue in colour, it is but proper that Vishnu, the all-pervading cosmic power, be depicted as blue in colour.”

J E Cirlot, in his work on symbols, notes that:

‘About the various shades of blue, ranging from near black to clear sapphire, there has been a great deal of speculation.’

He points out that there is not one perception of blue, but many. There is also an antithesis here between darkness and light: ‘Blue is darkness made visible.’ Cirlot reminds us that colour symbolism derives from several sources, and we should distinguish the mystical and esoteric from those associations forged by primitive logic and intuition, on which modern psychology would put more weight. The diurnal life of early humankind was dictated by the cycle of night and day; and night was when action had to cease. According to Lüscher, the dark blue of the
night sky is therefore the colour associated with quiescence and passivity.\(^4^9\) He goes on to claim that prolonged contemplation of pure dark blue has calming physiological effects on the central nervous system, reducing blood pressure and lowering the rates of pulse and respiration. Luscher's colour categories list the affective aspects of dark blue as tranquility, contentment, tenderness, love and affection.

Although there is a high degree of subjectivity in making all these associations between colour and human feelings, there seems to be a broad measure of agreement emerging from different sources on the significances of blue, especially when the depth of the colour is also taken into account. The first great antithesis of colour, according to the aesthetic theories of the painter, Wassily Kandinsky, lies between yellow and blue, between warmth and coolness, between advance and retreat, between overflowing the boundaries and contracting within them.

Concerning blue, he observed:

“Depth is found in blue...The deeper its tone, the more intense and characteristic the effect. We feel a call to the infinite, a desire for purity and transcendence. Blue is the typical heavenly colour; the ultimate feeling it creates is one of rest. When it sinks almost to black, it echoes a grief that is hardly human. It becomes an infinite engrossment in solemn moods. As it grows lighter it becomes more indifferent and affects us in a remote and neutral fashion, like a high cerulean sky.” \(^5^0\)

1.8 Liberation from blue preciousness

Blue pigments for the artist were provided historically by six substances: ultramarine, smalt, Egyptian blue, cobalt or Thénard's blue, azurite or blue verditer, and indigo.\(^5^1\) Each of these suffered from some disadvantage: ultramarine, known to the Egyptians and Babylonians, was very expensive – it had to be ground from the precious mineral, *lapis lazuli*, which was mined only in Afghanistan;\(^5^2\) smalt, a cobalt blue glass used in ceramics and as a paper 'whitener',\(^5^3\) is abrasive and rather weak in its covering power; the recipe for Egyptian blue, §1.7, was lost in the 9th century and only recreated in 2007 on the basis of a recipe left by 1st century BC Roman writer, Vitruvius;\(^5^4\) cobalt blue, first synthesised by Thénard in 1802, was a latecomer on the scene, but has become the dominant commercial blue pigment for the last 200 years;\(^5^5\) azurite, a basic copper carbonate mineral, is unstable to heat and acids, turning into green malachite; and indigo, an organic dyestuff obtained from a plant native to India, as mentioned in §1.6, is susceptible to fading in
light.\textsuperscript{56} We can therefore understand why the accidental discovery in 1706 of the completely new pigment, Prussian blue (see §2.1) by an artists’ colour-maker, heralded the liberation of painting from its inhibitions concerning the expense of the colour blue.

The conservation scientist, Jens Bartoll, has shown by non-destructive X-ray fluorescence spectrometry that Prussian blue is present in paintings made at the Prussian court as early as 1709 (Fig. 1.12). Bartoll has also demonstrated that by 1710 the pigment had evidently found its way from Berlin to Paris, because it was also used in works by Antoine Watteau and his circle.\textsuperscript{57} The ‘blue liberation’ of painting was completed in 1821 by the further discovery of a recipe for synthesising ultramarine itself.\textsuperscript{58} Thereafter, the history of painting is witness to a spectacular influx of blue; for instance, in the work of the French Impressionists, especially the landscapes and figure studies of Paul Cézanne, Fig. 1.12, and in the powerful work of Picasso’s ‘blue period’.

![Fig. 1.12 Pieter van der Werff, Entombment of Christ, 1709 (earliest painting known with Prussian blue). Picture Gallery, Sanssouci, Potsdam.](image)

The Expressionist school of Munich painters – the so-named \textit{Blaue Reiter} – is epitomised by Kandinsky’s ‘Blue Rider’, and the blue horses of
Franz Marc, Fig. 1.13, are later manifestations of their devotion to this colour and its significance in the portrayal of the spiritual side of life.

Another turning point in the artistic significance of the colour blue came when monochrome painter, Yves Klein, told French artists’ colourmaker, Edouard Adam, of his search for the perfect blue. Adam faced Klein with a choice: *bleu de Prusse ou bleu d’outremer*:

“There was,” said Adam, “no contest, and you can see why. Prussian Blue is sombre, good for shadows. Even in this windowless room, ultramarine glows.”

But the real advance came when the *marchand de couleur* replaced the traditional binder of rabbit glue, which dulled the vibrancy of the colour, with a polyvinyl acetate resin called Rhodopas M, from manufacturing chemists, Rhône-Poulenc. Mixed with ultramarine, Rhodopas allows the powdered ultramarine to retain its granular look, its matt depth. In 1960, Klein patented the new pigment under the number 63471 and the name, *International Klein Blue*.

![Fig. 1.13 Franz Marc, The Large Blue Horses, 1911](image)

**1.9 The aesthetics of the colour blue**

The colour continues to exert a fascination, as may be read in the lyrical *Rhapsody in Blue* of Alexander Theroux, with its wide-ranging free associations of the artistic, historical, linguistic and sociological connotations of blue, in Sarah Gottesman’s account of its 6,000 year history, and in John Gage’s art–historically oriented appraisal of a
recent exhibition of modern paintings on a blue theme. Maria Popova, in her anthology entitled *200 Years of blue*, expresses it thus:

“With Carl Sagan’s poetic Pale Blue Dot on my mind lately, I have found myself dwelling on the color blue and the way our planet’s elemental hue, the most symphonic of the colors, recurs throughout our literature as something larger than a mere chromatic phenomenon — a symbol, a state of being, a foothold to the most lyrical and transcendent heights of the imagination.”

To return to the aesthetic difficulties with the cyanotype introduced in §1.7: John Wood, in his essay, *The Art of the Cyanotype*, has been the first to try to discover a reason for the sense of unnaturalness or incongruity that appears to pervade this type of image. Wood puts forward two antithetical interpretations of the colour blue, which have some affinities with those I have cited above. On the one hand, he asserts that blue is ‘celebratory, affirmative and joyous’; on the other, that it has a ‘dark side’ which is ‘sad, depressed, and disturbing’. Wood is then able to propose a dichotomy of a ‘joyous–ominous’ colour as the reason for the ‘peculiar magic’ of the cyanotype, although no objective evidence is offered to support these personal interpretations of the significances of the colour. Perhaps this idea is also encapsulated in the German concept of *Schadenfreude* – taking pleasure in the sorrow of others.

Blue has even been declared as the world’s favourite colour. In recent surveys of randomly-chosen sample populations from several nations, the colour blue has emerged at the top of every poll. These surveys are part of the work of two post-modernist artists in the USA, Vitaly Komar and Alexander Melamid. Their method is to use telephone opinion polls to furnish sets of average aesthetic parameters for statistically ‘ideal’ paintings, according to the common taste of each national group. Their objective is to paint for each public exactly what it wants, which turns out in each case to be blue landscapes. Afficionados can join a Facebook Group devoted to the evocation of blue in painting and poetry. Most recently in 2015 a global survey of ten countries across four continents has concluded that blue is the most popular colour, rating 23% to 33%: 8 to 18% points ahead of any other colour.

1.10 Colour language and coordinates

In describing the various processes of cyanotype and the resulting images, it will be convenient to have a means of referring to colour in a way that can be conveyed unambiguously to the reader. I propose to
adopt here a simple notation that indicates the approximate location of the colour in a compact colour atlas, published as *The Methuen Handbook of Colour*,70 where hue, tone and intensity are the three colour coordinates. Referring to Fig. 1.14, the first number in this compilation, running from 1 to 30, corresponds to a page denoting the hue. Each double page spread presents six columns of colour patches, labelled A to F, which contain an increasing admixture of black, shading the tone from light towards dark. Within each column there are eight colour tablets, numbered 1 to 8 to indicate the increasing intensity or saturation of the colour, i.e. its relative brilliance or dullness. Some of the conventional names for the more saturated colours of blue are represented on this scale under the Figures 1.14 below.

Blue is the colour we humans perceive least efficiently, a fact that is quantified in the expression for the contributions of red, green and blue colours to the overall luminance of an image:

$$\text{RGB Luminance} = 0.3R + 0.59G + 0.11B$$

To conclude this chromatic introduction, it is my reluctant duty to record an etymological irony that completely undermines the very name of the cyanotype process and, in consequence, the title of this book. The prefix ‘cyano–’ derives from the Greek root ‘kyaneos’ (κυανεός), which is usually translated as ‘dark blue’; and the suffix ‘–type’ comes from ‘tupos’ (τύπος) meaning ‘strike’, i.e. ‘print’. However, in the development of various human languages, it was commonly the case that blue was the last of the primary colours to receive a name; even today some primitive languages lack any expression for this colour concept.71 Recent classical scholarship points to the likelihood that, in ancient Greek, ‘kyaneos’ simply meant ‘dark’, and the language of Homer therefore had no word for blue.72
19C7 Royal blue
19D8 International Klein blue (French patent 63471)

20A8 Ultramarine (artificial)
20E8 Lapis Lazuli
21C8 Ultramarine (genuine)
21F7 Prussian blue (also called Berlin, Milori or Paris blue)

22B7 Cobalt blue
23A7 Cyan (azure blue), 23C7 Cerulean blue, 23D7 Sapphire blue

Fig. 1.14 Blue Excerpts from the Methuen Book of Colour
2 The Invention of Cyanotype

“… sie macht sich nur durch Blut und Eisen.”
(“…It can only be carried out through blood and iron.”)
Prince Otto Edward Leopold von Bismarck (1815–1898)
Prussian House of Deputies, 28 January 1886.  

Cyanotype images are composed of the intensely-coloured substance Prussian blue, as it is generally known – except in the German-speaking world, where its preferred and politically-correct name is Berliner Blau after the city of its discovery. This celebrated pigment deserves to be placed in its historical context because, fully a century before photography was invented, Prussian blue was already an important colour for artists, and in that ensuing century it proved also to be a key substance for science, by opening up an entirely new area of chemistry. Experiments on Prussian blue led to the discovery of a whole new class of compound – the cyanides – which hover tantalisingly on the borderline dividing organic and inorganic matter, and which were therefore central to the debate surrounding the nineteenth-century doctrine of vitalism. The political connotations of the name, Prussian blue, are purely accidental which, in view of Bismarck’s statement in the epigram above, makes even more remarkable the coincidence that Prussian blue was indeed prepared traditionally from the raw materials of blood and iron.

2.1 A brief history of Prussian blue

Prussian blue has never been found in nature. There was no knowledge of it before the eighteenth century, but this substance still qualifies as one of the earliest synthetic pigments, dating from its first preparation, probably in 1706, by a stroke of serendipity that befell an artists’ colour-maker in Berlin, a Swiss immigrant called Johann Jacob Diesbach. The chance occurrence of such a spectacular hue would have instantly attracted the attention of any colour-maker, for at the time there was a keen awareness of the limitations or expense of all other blue pigments, as described in §1.8.

Diesbach identified the chemical source of his adventitious blue colour, and the profitable manufacture of Prussian blue by Berlin chemist Johann Frisch then began in 1708. Diesbach announced its merits as a pigment in 1710, but, no doubt in the pursuit of gain, he succeeded in concealing the method of its preparation until 1724, when it was finally
disclosed in a publication by John Woodward. Accounts of the original discovery therefore tend to be conjectural; the earliest, by G E Stahl, did not appear until 1731, but one version has it that Diesbach was wanting to prepare a crimson lake by adding potash to a solution of cochineal, alum and iron(II) sulphate. Lacking any potash, he purchased some from a disreputable alchemist called Johann Konrad Dippel, fig. 2.1, who had set up a laboratory in the same building. Dippel supplied Diesbach with an impure sample of potash that happened to be contaminated with a malodorous distillate of animal residues known as ‘Dippel’s oil’, which provided the essential element – nitrogen – for Diesbach’s serendipitous chemistry. Thus, the first preparation of Prussian blue, like several other notable chemical discoveries, can ultimately be attributed to the duplicity of an unscrupulous alchemist.

![Fig 2.1 Johann Konrad Dippel](image)

There was no comprehension whatsoever of this reaction chemistry at the time, because nitrogen had yet to be identified as an element. It turned out that any nitrogenous animal matter could be used as a source for Prussian blue: hide, hair, feathers, horn, hooves or flesh. Dried ox blood, especially, proved a popular starting material. The recipes of the day were varied and complex, often entailing superfluous ingredients, and all were without doubt strikingly obnoxious in their manipulation, of which the following is a short and colourful example:
“Six pounds of clippings of leather, six pounds of hoofs and horns, and ten pounds of common potash, are boiled together in an iron pot to dryness; the residue is then mixed with two pounds of crude tartar, and, by means of a strong fire, is brought into fusion. The lixiviation is conducted in the usual way, and a solution of five pounds of sulphate of iron, and fifteen of alum being added, a precipitate takes place, which is Prussian blue.”

Prussian blue rapidly came to the notice of chemists. Pierre-Joseph Macquer, author of the first chemical dictionary, was attracted to the substance by his interests as government supervisor of the French dyeing industry, and he showed that it could indeed provide a fast dye for silk and wool. His investigation in 1752 of the chief weakness of the pigment, the destruction of its colour by alkalis, had an important accidental outcome in the discovery of that useful salt ‘yellow prussiate of potash’ (potassium ferrocyanide), prepared from the reaction of Prussian blue with potash (potassium carbonate).

Macquer and other chemists of the time also recognised that a volatile, colourless, inflammable substance, which they named ‘the colouring principle’, could be driven out of Prussian blue by heat, leaving a residue that contained iron. A result of great significance to chemical theory was later provided in 1782 by Scheele’s preparation of a solution of this ‘colouring principle’ from the action of sulphuric acid on Prussian blue, and his re-naming it as ‘prussic acid’. It is an unwitting testimony to Scheele’s manipulative skills, that he achieved this preparation without also making the uncomfortable discovery that prussic acid is a speedy, lethal poison. Pure prussic acid was finally isolated in 1811 by Gay-Lussac, who determined its composition to be a simple compound of hydrogen, carbon and nitrogen, formula HCN, later to be called hydrocyanic acid. The German name for this colourless substance was Blausäure – ‘blue acid’ – in acknowledgement of its source. At this time, Gay-Lussac also coined the name that has become the common currency in this area of chemistry, a name that forms part of the title of this book. He called the –CN radical cyanogène, using the Greek roots κυάνος κενναίο (kyanos gennao) for ‘blue-generate’. This reference to its colourful historical origins established the name for a whole class of important new compounds – the cyanides – which very often are, ironically, quite colourless.

So, a century after its discovery, Prussian blue, which is actually one of the most complex of these cyanides (ferric ferrocyanide), had furnished a route for isolating the simplest members of this new class of substance,
whose name derives from its colour.\textsuperscript{96} Thereafter, a rational basis for the chemistry of cyanides began to emerge, and in 1814 Gay–Lussac isolated the parent of them all, the gas cyanogen, having the simple formula $(\text{CN})_2$. With the understanding that the fundamental unit in all this chemistry was just a simple radical consisting of carbon bonded to nitrogen,\textsuperscript{97} the possibility was recognised of synthesising cyanides from purely inorganic materials, thereby making the use of organic animal residues unnecessary – most mercifully, in view of the ‘foetid vapours’ to which they gave rise. As a mark of approval for this achievement, the Society of Arts in 1837 conferred a medal upon Lewis Thompson for introducing a method of making potassium ferrocyanide by roasting charcoal with potash and iron filings at red heat, exposed to the atmosphere which provided the nitrogen.\textsuperscript{98} Prussian blue could then be prepared from this product by reacting it with inorganic salts of iron.

By the 1780's Prussian blue was being widely manufactured in several places in Europe, including in Glasgow by the firm of Turnbull & Ramsay, Chemists,\textsuperscript{99} consequently the pigment also came to be known as Turnbull's blue. Another Scottish user was raincoat inventor, Charles Macintosh, who established a manufactury in the alum-works at Lennox town in 1808 for dyeing wool, silk, and cotton with Prussian blue.\textsuperscript{100} By the beginning of the nineteenth century, Prussian blue had become a popular artists' pigment; it was also then widely used in European papermaking as an alternative to indigo for the colouring agent in the popular blue-toned papers,\textsuperscript{101} and it was a constituent of that everyday blue commodity, Stephen's Ink. In the USA it was used as a laundry whitener – ‘Mrs Stewart's Blue'. The Newcastle firm of T. Bramwell & Co., were awarded a Council Medal at the 1851 Great Exhibition – the highest award – for their production, among other chemicals, of Prussian blue, which was exported to China for colouring green tea.\textsuperscript{102} In a curious later inversion of this use, it is now green tea that is used for toning cyanotypes – see §8.3.

\subsection*{2.2 Light-sensitivity of iron salts}

The cyanotype process is founded on a chemical reaction brought about by light acting on certain salts of iron. The notion that light can promote chemical transformations is, of course, central to the invention of photography, and its history has been described at length by Josef Maria Eder, and others.\textsuperscript{103} We shall not concern ourselves here with the long-established sensitivity of silver halides to light, which provides the
mainstream of the technical history of photography, but rather confine our attention to the less widely-known phenomenon of photosensitivity in iron compounds, which is of more recent discovery. The first such observation, albeit a rather indirect one, is attributed to Count Alexey Bestuscheff (1693–1768), the Lord High Chancellor of Russia. This worthy is said to have devised, in 1725, a nostrum called *Tinctura tonico-nervina*, of a secret formulation, but reputed to contain gold—presumably in order to justify its exhorbitant price. Bestuscheff claimed that the agency of sunlight was employed in its production—a further alchemical reference to gold. When the secret of the tincture’s composition was finally revealed by the Empress Catherine the Great, who purchased it from Bestuscheff’s heirs, it turned out to be no more precious than a solution of ferric chloride in alcohol, which had been decolourised by exposure to sunlight.

![Fig. 2.1 Count Alexey Petrovich Bestuzhev-Ryumin](Collection of the Hermitage Museum)

Despite the unmasking of its commonplace nature, the tonic continued to enjoy a long-lived commercial success as ‘Bestuscheff’s Nervine Tincture’, although we do not know whether it was the iron, or the alcohol, that conferred the greater benefit on the patient. A very similar secret preparation was also popular in France during the early 18th
century, known as the ‘Golden Drops of General Lamotte’,\(^{107}\) which was introduced to the French court under the title of *Elixir d’Or* and earned the favour of Louis XV, who consequently granted the enterprising General a substantial yearly pension to manufacture his ‘drops’, for the Pope, among others.\(^{108}\) As the elixir made his fortune, it may be said to have lived up to the promise of its name.

As late as 1853, the tincture can still be found listed in the pharmacopoeias as *Spiritus Sulphurico Etherus Martiatus*, or as *Ferruginated Sulphuric Ether*,\(^{109}\) having undergone in 1782 a modification due to Martin Klaproth, who replaced the ethyl alcohol with diethyl ether – making an altogether more heady mixture – but the tincture was still said to be ‘blended in light’. In 1813, a scientific investigation of the light–induced bleaching of ferric chloride in ether solution by Henri August Vogel, found it to be very sensitive.\(^{110}\) These early observations have no probable bearing on the actual invention of cyanotype, but they may be responsible for some of the more misleading and unhistorical statements that have been made concerning the process, such as:

“The principles involved in sensitizing blueprint paper were discovered in France in about 1725 and perfected by Sir John Herschel in England in 1842.” \(^{111}\)

Eder’s *History of Photography* suggests that the first observation of the formation of Prussian blue by the action of light was in 1783, due to an Italian professor of chemistry, Giovanni Antonio Scopoli, who exposed a solution of potassium ferrocyanide and acetic acid to sunlight, observing the precipitation of Prussian blue within about fifteen minutes.\(^{112}\) There is another little–known, pre–photographic observation of Prussian blue formation, made by John Mercer (1791–1866), a Mancunian calico–dyer and printer, who became a self–taught colour chemist and finished as a Fellow of the Royal Society. In 1828 he noted the formation of Prussian blue on cotton by a light–induced reaction. The biography of Mercer by his nephew, Edward Parnell, quotes Mercer’s own description from his experimental notebooks:

“I spotted a piece of white cloth with a solution of pernitrate of iron, and exposed it to the sun. On testing it afterwards with a solution of red prussiate of potash it gave a blue – but no blue before exposure. This is worthy of note. I have not seen it noticed by any chemical writer.” \(^{113}\)

The pressure of maintaining his business deprived Mercer of the opportunity to pursue this pioneering observation any further until the
1840s, by which time photography had become well-established at the hands of other, more leisureed, investigators. The chance to be counted among the ‘pre-inventors’ of photography thus passed him by, owing to the unfortunate necessity to earn his living – a disadvantage not suffered by financially independent Victorian gentlemen–scientists, such as Talbot and Herschel. Mercer later made significant inventions of toning procedures for cyanotypes, as we shall see in §4.4.2 and §8.4, but these were only published in an insubstantial form, and subsequently re-invented by others. If we are seeking to identify an unsung hero of early photography, a worthy candidate might well be John Mercer.\textsuperscript{114}

The light–induced decomposition of an organic salt of iron was first recorded in 1831 by Johann Wolfgang Döbereiner (1780–1849), who observed that irradiation of an aqueous solution of ferric oxalate by sunlight forms a precipitate of ferrous oxalate, which was shown to be identical with the mineral Humboldtite, and evolves a gas, which proved to be carbon dioxide.\textsuperscript{115} As we shall see in §3.5, the published report of Döbereiner’s finding acted as a spur to Herschel in expediting the publication of his own current photochemical investigations of platinum salts, but no connection was made at this time between the light-sensitivity of ferric oxalate and the well-known properties of Prussian blue. Such a connection could have hinted at the formation of the pigment as an alternative means for making images photographically.

### 2.3 The first silver photographs on paper

In 1834, William Henry Fox Talbot, the inventor of photography on paper, began his experiments with silver salts as light-sensitive imaging materials. He evinced no particular interest in Prussian blue, although he did once record in his notebooks its formation, chemically rather than photochemically, on a sheet of paper treated with hydrochloric acid and potassium ferrocyanide, owing to ferric iron impurity in the acid.\textsuperscript{116}

In January of 1839, stimulated by Talbot’s announcement of his invention of ‘Photogenic Drawing Paper’ based on silver chloride, Sir John Frederick William Herschel (1792–1871) took up the study of photographic phenomena. Within one week he had solved the problem of silver fixation by means of ‘Hypo’ – sodium thiosulphate. But then, in contrast to Talbot’s single-minded pursuit of the silver image, Herschel soon began to widen his investigations in the search for other viable photographic processes. The history of this quest, and the fascinating story of the interaction between these two gifted men and their peers,
has been unfolded with clarity and scholarship by Dr Larry Schaaf in his beautiful volume, *Out of the Shadows*, which provides a complete historical background to this episode, and is essential reading for anyone with an interest in the history of photography.\(^{117}\) I will therefore confine this account chiefly to the discovery of the cyanotype process, and to those aspects of it which have not already been described in detail.

### 2.4 Herschel’s research records

The primary sources for this account are Herschel’s handwritten memoranda, experimental notes and test prints, and his published scientific papers that sprang from them. For many years Herschel recorded his chemical experiments in a disciplined, linear chronology, using bound notebooks, now held in the Library of the Science Museum, London.\(^{118}\) Four of these cover the years 1815–1870, but there is a lacuna in the third volume. Between two successive experiment numbers, recorded and dated on the same page, there is an interval of four years, from August 1841 to January 1845. For this period, which saw some profound changes in his working life, Herschel adopted a different approach to his record-keeping habits. After August 1841, they became multistranded, employing a new format of unbound loose leaves, kept in separate envelopes titled by topic. This was a convenient way of coping with the diversity of different parallel lines of photochemical research that he was following concurrently – although it is possible, as pointed out by Larry Schaaf, that Herschel always intended to ‘write them up’ in his organised notebooks, but other concerns supervened.

Herschel’s loose-leaf records were sold at auction by Sotheby’s on 4 March 1958, and little thought of at the time, but the collector and photohistorian, Helmut Gernsheim, was shrewd enough to acquire them for his collection. The material was subsequently donated to the Harry Ransom Humanities Research Center of the University of Texas at Austin, which also has Gernsheim’s copy of the original Sotheby’s auction catalogue with his autographic annotation against the Herschel lot:

“This comprises a lot of scraps which other people would consign to the waste paper basket. The laboratory notebook contains no interesting data, thoughts or descriptions merely dry factual one line statements of the obscure substances tried; only the prints prepared with ferroprussiate of potash still show their image, those prepared with others are a blank.” \(^{119}\)
These original loose-leaf documents covering the crucial period of 1841–3 are held in the Herschel Collection of the manuscript archive of the HRHRC, where the present author had the pleasure and privilege of spending a month as Mellon Research Fellow in 1999. For brevity, these documents will be referred to henceforth as the ‘Memoranda’. The HRHRC also has 43 of Herschel’s specimen prints, fig. 2.2, which he consigned to the Royal Society to accompany the manuscript of his 1842 paper (§2.8).

The rest of Herschel’s experimental prints and tests described in the Memoranda are still on the UK side of the Atlantic, divided between the Museum of the History of Science at Oxford, the National Museum of Photography, Film & Television (now the National Science and Media Museum) at Bradford, and the Library of the Royal Society of London.

Fig. 2.2 Sheet of Herschel’s specimen prints 1842 in cyanotype, etc (Collection of the Humanities Research Center, University of Texas)

By February of 1840, Herschel’s Memoranda reveal that he had carried out nearly seven hundred photochemical experiments, using silver salts almost exclusively. There is a chronological list of ‘prepared papers’ in the Memoranda, in which each preparation of chemicals coated on paper that Herschel tested for light-sensitive behaviour, was allocated a sequential number. It will be convenient to refer to this as his ‘prepared paper number’. Most of these coated sheets were divided up into smaller pieces, and thereby sufficed for several different tests.
2.5 Anthotype and phytotype

In his quest for more colourful images, Herschel soon took leave of the brown pictures provided by silver, and in 1839 began experimenting with juices from the flowers of his own garden, such as red stock or poppy. He crushed their petals in alcohol, extracting the dyestuffs (anthocyanins) into solutions to be painted on paper. These dyed coatings would slowly bleach in sunlight, so exposure in contact with printed engravings directly yielded positive images in plant pigments which Herschel hoped would supply the primaries for a full colour printing system. He called this process anthotype (Greek: ανθος = 'flower') or sometimes phytotype (Greek: φυτον = 'plant'). But the printing was very slow, demanding protracted contact exposures to sunlight lasting for days or even weeks. Worse, the images proved ephemeral: there was – and still is – no means of 'fixation', because subsequent exposure to strong light inexorably bleaches them. It is remarkable that some of Herschel's specimens still survive today. Impermanence notwithstanding, the anthotype process was taken further by that gifted Scotswoman, Mary Somerville (née Fairfax, 1780–1872), and there is still a lively constituency of practitioners today in this environmentally-friendly print medium.

![Fig. 2.3 Sir John Herschel, anthotype from an engraving](Collection of the Humanities Research Center, University of Texas)

The spring weather of 1840 was remarkably brilliant, to the enduring benefit of the embryonic science of photography. Herschel had already
initiated a new series of exposure tests of ‘vegetable colours’, but this work was interrupted in March by the relocation of the family home from Slough in Buckinghamshire to Hawkhurst in Kent. Once resettled at Collingwood, Herschel resumed his experiments in August, but by then he frequently found the sun to be ‘pale’ or ‘desultory’, requiring long exposures for these very insensitive processes.\textsuperscript{125} He pursued them nonetheless, during the very poor summer of 1841 that followed.\textsuperscript{126} It seems plain from the nature of Herschel’s investigation of the bleaching of these coloured plant juices by light, that he was in pursuit of a direct positive–working colour photographic process, and he stated as much in one of his letters to Talbot,\textsuperscript{127} and in a letter to the 1841 Meeting of the British Association for the Advancement of Science, reporting on these experiments:

“... a circumstance which ... holds out no slight hope of a solution of the problem of a photographic representation of natural objects in their proper colours.” \textsuperscript{128}

The most important conclusion that Herschel was able to draw from his observations was that a dye tends to be selectively bleached by the light of its complementary colour, which was further evidence for the Grotthuss law of photochemical absorption (§3.6).

\section*{2.6 Discovery of cyanotype}

In the early spring of 1842, Herschel discontinued his tests of plant dyes which were proving rather unsatisfactory, in favour of further broadening his search for new photosensitive substances for his ‘non argentine photography’. His attention transferred from these rather evanescent organic dyes (now appropriately called anthocyanins), to deeply–coloured inorganic compounds. He was later to explain this shift of interest in a paper to the Royal Society, in the following chemically picturesque terms:

“The general instability of organic combinations might lead us to expect the occurrence of numerous and remarkable cases of this affection among bodies of that class, but among metallic and other elements inorganically arranged, instances enough have already appeared, and more are daily presenting themselves, to justify its extension to all cases in which chemical elements may be supposed combined with a certain degree of laxity, and so to speak in a state of tottering equilibrium.” \textsuperscript{129}

His awareness of these ‘lax’ inorganic compounds had been informed by earlier consultations with Dr Alfred Smee (1818–1877), Fig. 2. The important rôle played by this talented young physician and scientist in
enabling the discoveries that were to follow was first brought to our attention by Larry Schaaf.\textsuperscript{130}

Smee was well-grounded in chemistry, and his interests at the time lay in the exciting new sub-science of electrochemistry, which was then enjoying its golden era, following the invention in 1800 of the electric battery by Alessandro Volta (1745–1827), and the thrilling use made of it in 1807 by Sir Humphry Davy (1778–1829), who harnessed its electric power to “tear their elements asunder” and isolate the amazingly reactive alkali metals, potassium and sodium.

By 1840, the \textit{Experimental Researches on Electricity} by Michael Faraday (1791–1867), Davy’s assistant and successor at the Royal Institution, had established the quantitative basis for this new branch of science. The design of powerful batteries had been improving steadily at the hands of Wollaston, Daniell, and Grove; and Smee himself had introduced a further improvement in the construction of a large battery for his own electrochemical researches.\textsuperscript{131} The electrodeposition of metals, then called electrotyping, was becoming a craft industry, producing such curios as the copper-plated cucumber prepared by Smee, which was shown to Queen Victoria – whose enquiring finger promptly poked a hole in it. Like photography, electrotyping could enable the duplication of art works – though from moulds rather than negatives – so it was referred to at the time as ‘the sister art of heliography’.\textsuperscript{132}

\begin{figure}[h]
\centering
\includegraphics[width=0.5\textwidth]{fig24}
\caption{Dr. Alfred Smee}
\end{figure}

Smee also employed his battery as a novel means for preparing chemicals that had previously been rather inaccessible; one such substance was then variously referred to as the ‘ferrosesquicyanuret of potassium’ or ‘red ferrocyanate of potash’ or ‘red prussiate of potash’.\textsuperscript{133}
but we can now identify it by the modern name of potassium ferricyanide.\textsuperscript{134} Herschel was aware of Smee’s achievement, since the latter had read his paper before the Royal Society on 18 June 1840, and had subsequently published it in the \textit{Philosophical Magazine}.\textsuperscript{135} The chief outcome of this research was to make this interesting, bright–red, soluble, crystalline chemical much more readily available in a pure form, because previous methods of preparation, dating from the substance’s discovery by Leopold Gmelin in 1822,\textsuperscript{136} had usually resulted in a product that was contaminated by impurities.

In his 1840 paper, Smee described how he could prepare potassium ferricyanide from the commonplace and widely–available potassium ferrocyanide.\textsuperscript{137} He stated that this new technique of electrolytic oxidation could also be applied in principle to other analogous inorganic substances – a possibility that must have stimulated Herschel’s original enquiry of him for ‘deeply–coloured salts’.

\begin{figure}[h]
\centering
\includegraphics[width=\textwidth]{potassium_ferrocyanide_to_ferricyanide.png}
\caption{Oxidation of potassium ferrocyanide to ferricyanide}
\end{figure}

Shortly after his appointment as surgeon to the Bank of England, early in 1842, Smee sent Herschel a specimen of potassium ferricyanide. On 23 April 1842, Herschel made the following entry in his \textit{Memoranda}:

Non Argentine, Mineral substances (F$_3$/2CP) \textsuperscript{138}
Smee’s Red Ferrocyanate of Potash washed on paper gives it a fine pale green colour.
April 23. 1842.
The spectrum thrown on this paper acts slowly but about as fast as on Guiacum … When the paper is thrown onto water the impression becomes stronger, loses its Violet ruddiness & turns to a fine prussian blue … a wash of very dilute acid … immediately
developed a strong blue impression, having the above character. This paper will prove valuable. Try other metallo-cyanates of Bases.”

This is the first recorded observation of Prussian blue being formed for a photographic purpose by the action of light on potassium ferricyanide, so it represents the moment of discovery of the first cyanotype process, although this name (Greek: κυανός = ‘deep blue’) was not coined by Herschel until four months later. The significance of this observation impressed Herschel sufficiently to include it also in his general diary entry for 23 April 1842:

“Discovered the Photographic property of the Red Ferro sesquicyanuret of Potassm.”

‘Discovery’ certainly seems a more appropriate word than ‘invention’ to describe this moment of photographic innovation. But the next day Herschel was already seeking ways to improve this non-silver photographic process, and he began making images by its means, as is evident from the following entry in the Memoranda:

1. Pure water destroys the Dove color first & washes away the yellowish pink border. It also darkens the impression to a good blue
2. Dilute Sulc Acid develops a much stronger blue.
3. Weak sulphate of soda washes the superfluous salt well away with no injury to the blue wh is quite insoluble in neutral salts.
4. Very weak perchloride of Iron acidulated with S. Acid, develops a deep & most superb blue. But the ground also is somewhat blued. Tried it for copying engravings It does them very beautifully, but the copies are negative in the lights are blue the shades white. They are best fixed by very weak sulphuric acid – a barely perceptible acidulation – If Chlor Iron be added the ground gets blued.” [Underlining in original]

Can we detect in these words a hint of surprised disappointment that this process had proved to be negative-working? Although it would, therefore, be well-suited to making positive prints from camera negatives, Herschel’s preferred modus operandi at the time was to make photographic copies of ‘positive’ images, usually engravings, by means of positive-working processes such as the bleaching of dyes. The pictures resulting from a negative-working process would require a second
printing – or ‘re-transfer’ as he called it – to restore their correct tonality and handedness, and he realised that this would entail a loss of definition.

Fig. 2.6 Sir John Herschel, cyanotype (1842) from an engraving by H. Cook: Still in my Teens, published in Friendship’s Offering 1838. (Collection of the Humanities Research Center, University of Texas)

Herschel would soon devote considerable effort to devising a positive-working version of the Prussian blue process, in the attempt to circumvent what he saw as this disadvantage. But before that became possible, there was one other chemical ingredient, previously unknown to him, that was destined to be introduced into the process, with the consequence of greatly enhancing the sensitivity to light and the speed of printing in Prussian blue.

2.7 Invention of siderotype

The ‘list of prepared papers’ in the Memoranda shows that Herschel received a further sample of potassium ferricyanide from Smee on 27 April, and promptly employed it to make more Prussian blue ‘copies’ from engravings, one of which he sent to Smee. This brought an acknowledgement from Smee dated 10 May 1842, which reveals that he was already well aware that Prussian blue would result from the action of light on potassium ferricyanide, especially when mixed with a ferric salt:

“Allow me to return you my thanks for your beautiful and interesting photograph which I presume was executed with the red salt in conjunction with a persalt of iron as that compound...
invariably deposits Prussian Blue under the combined action of air and light.
I trust that by variety of the manipulation you will be enabled to adopt it to the camera.” 145
(italics in original)

Smee was no stranger to the newly-invented technology of photography; as early as May 1839, only a few months after Talbot’s first disclosure of his achievement, Smee published an account of ‘Photogenic Drawing’ in the Literary Gazette, in which his observations on the best proportions for the sensitizing chemicals and the choice of the paper were both perceptive and useful.146 In view of this prior photographic experience, and his awareness of the ferricyanide photochemistry implied in the quotation above, we might speculate why Smee had not employed potassium ferricyanide to make photograms at least; it appears that he very narrowly missed the distinction of himself becoming the inventor of the cyanotype process. It would, however, transpire that his hope it might be useful in the camera was unfounded. Had matters rested here, it is unlikely that Herschel’s discovery of the ‘proto-cyanotype’ process would have developed into an important invention – the commercially-viable blueprinting process – because potassium ferricyanide, by itself, is of very low sensitivity, and demands inconveniently lengthy exposures. But Smee’s letter of 10 May went on to suggest the key chemical that was to unlock an entire photographic treasure-trove for Herschel:

“There are two salts which of late have been used in Medicine having been vamped up by the Chemists and Druggists. The Ammonio Citrate and Ammonio Tartrate of Iron which are perfectly soluble and give very dark solutions. I mention them thinking it just barely possible that they may not have found their way into your laboratory and should my anticipation be correct it will afford me much pleasure to send some of each.” 147

This deferential tone is what we might expect from the 23-year-old Smee, a newly-elected Fellow of the Royal Society, addressing the 50-year-old Herschel, already one of the most distinguished elder statesmen of British science. Presumably, Smee did not realise that he was placing in Herschel’s hands the key to the best method for cyanotype and several other processes besides, but simply thought that the ‘dark solutions’ might lend themselves to bleaching by light. Although they were not difficult to prepare, the ‘Ammonio Citrate and Ammonio Tartrate of Iron’ were quite new substances on the chemical scene. Interest in them had
been stimulated by the well-appreciated pharmaceutical benefits of iron tonics, dating back to Bestuscheff’s ‘tincture’ (§2.2).

It is evident from his reply to Smee, that Herschel had had no prior knowledge of these salts, which is not surprising since they do not feature in the pharmacopoeias until after 1841.\textsuperscript{148} Then they were promoted by druggists as ‘chalybeate remedies’\textsuperscript{149} and, indeed, they are still valued as iron tonics today.\textsuperscript{150}

Finding the chemical ‘ammonio citrate of iron’ already on the pharmacy shelves, Herschel soon followed Smee’s recommendation to try it – photographically, rather than medicinally\textsuperscript{151} – and immediately discovered that it was highly sensitive to light. He successfully sun-printed it in a variety of ways, but his tests of the substances that he abbreviated as ‘ACI’ and ‘ATI’ are of uncertain date, because his \textit{Memoranda} relating to these experiments appear to have been written-up retrospectively. This was an uncharacteristic lapse for such an impeccable keeper of scientific records. Is it possible that the excitement of the discovery was so great as to distract him from a lifetime’s discipline of systematic note-keeping? Herschel’s letters to Smee are lost,\textsuperscript{152} but fortunately he made an approximate copy of his reply, ‘Substance of letter to Smee’ on 15 June 1842, which clearly displays his excitement and pleasure at the richness and variety of processes that his discovery of light-sensitivity in ‘ACI’ had made possible:

“I cannot help thanking you for your mention in one of your late notes to me of the Ammonio citrate and Ammonio tartrate of Iron as highly coloured salts. The former of these salts I have procured and examined, and it has furnished me with an infinity of \underline{beautiful photographic processes}, both in conjunction with your Ferrosesquicyanate and with other ingredients. I take the liberty to
enclose you a specimen or two, to appreciate which they should be wetted, laid on white paper and examined with a pretty strong magnifier. This process if you should happen to attend next Thursday’s meeting of the R.S. you will hear described under a name I have invented to give it in imitation of Mr. Talbot’s Calotype – *viz.* – Chrysotype – from the use of *Gold* as a stimulant to bring about the dormant picture which the action of light produces on paper prepared with this salt. It is one of the most striking and magical effects which has yet turned up in photography, the Calotype and *Argyrotyle* (*Daguerreotype*) themselves not excepted.”  

153 [Underlining in original]

Thanks to Smee, Herschel had been able to devise a faster cyanotype recipe, which has come down essentially unchanged to the present day. Moreover, his astute chemical reasoning quickly suggested ways of making images in noble metals, such as silver, gold, and mercury using the same iron salt. 154 Thus in 1842, just three years after the first public announcements of silver photography, came Herschel’s novel processes based on light-sensitive salts of iron, see Table 2.1. His collective name for these was *siderotype*, (*Greek:* σιδήρος = 'iron'; τυπος = 'wrought'). 155

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Inventor</th>
<th>Process name</th>
<th>Image Substance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1842</td>
<td>Herschel</td>
<td>Cyanotype</td>
<td>Prussian blue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1842</td>
<td>Herschel</td>
<td>Argentotype</td>
<td>Silver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1842</td>
<td>Herschel</td>
<td>Chrysotype</td>
<td>Gold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1842</td>
<td>Herschel</td>
<td>Kelainotype</td>
<td>Mercury</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1859</td>
<td>Poitevin</td>
<td>Ferrogalate</td>
<td>Iron–gall ink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1873</td>
<td>Willis</td>
<td>Platinotype</td>
<td>Platinum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1877</td>
<td>Pellet</td>
<td>Pellet print</td>
<td>Prussian blue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1889</td>
<td>Nicol</td>
<td>Kallitype</td>
<td>Silver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1889</td>
<td>Arndt</td>
<td>Van Dyke</td>
<td>Silver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1917</td>
<td>Willis</td>
<td>Palladiotype</td>
<td>Palladium</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2.1. Early Siderotype processes

The chrysotype process which so enthused Herschel, although strikingly coloured, never took its promised place in the photographic repertoire; far from rivalling Talbot’s Calotype in general practice, as Herschel had hoped, it was destined to be dismissed by all the major photographic authorities of the nineteenth century as impractical, unsatisfactory and obsolete. 159 However, Herschel’s original conviction
concerning the excellence of printing in gold has finally been vindicated by the writer in recent years.\textsuperscript{160}

The light-sensitivity of all the siderotype processes proved to be little greater than Talbot’s first silver process of ‘photogenic drawing’, so they were not seriously entertained as useful means for securing images in the camera, once the much faster calotype process discovered by Talbot in 1840 was in general use. Of all the sun’s light scattered by a photographic subject, only a small fraction (\textit{ca.} one hundredth to one thousandth) is captured by a camera lens and projected onto the photographically sensitized surface. It follows from the law of reciprocity that direct exposure of the same sensitized surface to the incident rays of the sun will take only about one hundredth to one thousandth of the camera exposure time, to provide a clear outline of any object placed upon it. Such ‘photograms’ are therefore much easier to make by direct contact than are camera photographs.\textsuperscript{161}

2.8 Publication of siderotype

Herschel submitted details of his new photographic discoveries in a second, long and important paper to the Royal Society,\textsuperscript{162} accompanied by 43 specimen sun-prints in his several processes, all made from engravings, see §2.4.\textsuperscript{163} His paper was entitled ‘On the Action of the Rays of the Solar Spectrum on Vegetable Colours, and on some new Photographic Processes’ and was accepted on the 15th of June 1842 for publication in the \textit{Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society}. Part of this paper was read by Herschel before the Society on the 16th of June, but it did not appear in print until September; it will be convenient to refer to this seminal work as ‘the 1842 Paper’.\textsuperscript{164} It was here that Herschel first publicly described the making of prints in Prussian blue from potassium ferricyanide alone, as follows:

“202. …A beautiful example of such deoxidising action on a non-argentine compound has lately occurred to me in the examination of that interesting salt, the ferrosesquicyanuret of potassium, described by Mr. Smee in the \textit{Philosophical magazine}, No.109, September 1840, and which he has shown how to manufacture in abundance and purity by voltaic action on the common, or yellow ferrocyanuret. …

203. Paper simply washed with a solution of this salt is highly sensitive to the action of light. Prussian blue is deposited ….. After half an hour or an hour’s exposure to sunshine, a very beautiful negative photograph is the result” \textsuperscript{165}
The relatively lengthy exposure needed here should be noted (indeed, Herschel’s ‘half an hour or an hour’ tends towards an optimistic underestimate); it contrasts with the very short exposures, of a few minutes only, which are all that is required for a contact print when ammonium ferric citrate is employed.

It can be inferred from the 1842 Paper that, by June, Herschel had also made cyanotypes (but not yet named them thus) by exposing a mixture of ammonium ferric citrate and potassium ferricyanide – the recipe that has endured as the standard practice until the present day:

"206. If in lieu of the perchloride of iron, we substitute a solution of that curious salt the ammonio-citrate of iron, the photographic effects are among the most various and remarkable that have yet offered themselves to our notice in this novel and fertile field of inquiry. The two solutions\[166] mix without causing any precipitate, and produce a liquid of a brown colour, which washed over paper is green (being strongly dichromatic). If this be done under the prism, the action of the spectrum is almost instantaneous, and most intense. A copious and richly coloured deposit of Prussian blue is formed over the blue, violet and extra-spectral rays." 167 [Italics in original]

Here the chronology of Herschel’s experimental Memoranda is once again anomalous, in that they do not record such a test being made until 10 August 1842. This may indicate another lapse brought on by the excitement of the work in hand, for there can be no doubt that Herschel had already made the first ‘standard cyanotypes’ in June.168 By this time, the serendipitous discovery had matured into a spirit of calculated invention using the ferric processes. Herschel made a simple experiment to show which of the two components was the more light-sensitive: by deliberately isolating the ammonium ferric citrate and exposing it alone, followed by development in a bath of potassium ferricyanide, Herschel proved that by far the greater part of the light-sensitivity could be attributed to the former iron salt, not the latter.

"210. It seems at first sight natural to refer these curious and complex changes to the instability of the cyanic compounds, and that this opinion is to a certain extent correct, is proved by the photographic impressions described in Arts. 204 and 209, where no iron is added beyond what exists in the ferrocyanic salts themselves. Nevertheless the following experiments abundantly prove that in several of the changes above described, the immediate action of the solar rays is not exerted on these salts, but on the iron contained in the ferruginous solution added to them, which it deoxidizes or otherwise alters, thereby presenting it to the
ferrocyanic salts in such a form as to precipitate the acids in combination with the peroxide or protoxide of iron, as the case may be. To make this evident all that is necessary is simply to leave out the ferrocyanate in the preparation of the paper, which thus becomes reduced to a simple washing over with the ammonio-citric solution.” [Italics in original]

Herschel’s understanding of the photochemical basis for the ‘deoxidising’ behaviour of ammonium ferric citrate enabled him to make reasoned applications of this chemical knowledge in several different ways, as exemplified by his chrysotype, argentotype and kelainotype processes. Herschel’s important observation of high sensitivity to light in ammonium ferric citrate (his “ferruginous solution” of Article 210) led to the invention of these new photographic processes (Articles 212 and 226). The Memoranda reveal that Prussian blue printing was totally eclipsed during the intervening month of July 1842 by Herschel’s endeavours – again employing the marvellously versatile ammonium ferric citrate – to make pictures in mercury and gold, whose striking beauty captured his undivided attention. His account in the 1842 Paper reveals a glimpse of the seductive delights of mercury prints which he called kelainotypes:

“229. … affords pictures of such force and depth of colour, such velvety richness of material, and such perfection of detail and preservation of the relative intensities of the light, as infinitely to surpass any photographic production I have yet seen, and which indeed it seems impossible to go beyond.”

Lest the reader should feel tempted by this eulogy to cast this book aside in favour of a search for mercury salts, it would be prudent to take note of Herschel’s next sentence:

“Most unfortunately, they cannot be preserved.”

The following week in August, however, saw Herschel’s return to printing in Prussian blue, with fresh endeavours to refine and perfect the processes. His chemical logic suggested that a complementary, positive-working system should be possible by employing, not the ferricyanide, but the commonplace ferrocyanide of potassium, in conjunction with ammonium ferric citrate. On 16 August 1842 he wrote the name ‘cyanotype’ in his Memoranda for the first time, to describe such a positive-working process, but the results that it yielded, as he later admitted in his paper of 1843, read to the Royal Society on 17th November 1842, usually fell far short of giving satisfaction:
“232. The positive cyanotype process described in Arts. 219, 220 of my papers, though beautiful in its effect (especially during the first few minutes of the appearance of the picture), is very precarious in its ultimate success … this process, though exceedingly easy in its manipulations, could not be recommended as practically useful.” 173

By the end of August he had accumulated sufficient new results to justify adding a substantial postscript to his 1842 Paper, which was still awaiting publication by the Royal Society. It is in this postscript, dated 29th August 1842, that the word ‘cyanotype’ appears in print for the first time, but by then Herschel expressed a preference for the name to be understood as embracing all the processes, both positive- and negative-working, which resulted in an image of Prussian blue:

“219. Cyanotype. – If a nomenclature of this kind be admitted (and it has some recommendations), the whole class of processes in which cyanogen in its combinations with iron performs a leading part, and in which the resulting pictures are blue, may be designated by this epithet.” 174

We can do no better than respect Herschel’s preference in our nomenclature today (contrary to the view of some bibliographers who take ‘cyanotype’ to mean only the positive-working process175) but the epithet should be qualified when necessary to make distinction between the different variations of cyanotype process. Herschel then goes on to make an excusable overstatement:

“The varieties of cyanotype processes seem to be innumerable, …”

From the observations in the 1842 Paper together with the notes in the Memoranda, we can distinguish no less than fifteen methods that Herschel had devised for making images in Prussian blue. Some of these will be considered more closely in §4.1.

Smee provides an illuminating postscript to this highly innovative episode in a letter dated 29th September 1842, which was evidently his reply to a letter from Herschel which is lost:

“The salts of iron to which you allude are neither children of mine by birth nor by adoption and the only circumstance which induced me to recommend them to your notice was their deep colour as perhaps you may recollect that a long time since you asked for specimens of any high coloured metallic salts not commonly met with. I know nothing about the salts further and had not the slightest idea that they could be used for Photographic purposes.
and did not even know the purpose for which you were likely to want dark coloured salts." 176

The implication of this response is that Herschel, who was scrupulous in acknowledging the priority of fellow scientists’ discoveries, must have enquired if Smee was the discoverer of ammonium ferric citrate and ammonium ferric tartrate, to determine if he should be accorded a ‘proprietorial acknowledgement’ or wished to make use of them photographically himself. Smee’s disavowal of any priority has a self-effacing tone, but one wonders if, perhaps, he knew more than he admitted there. Whatever the case, Smee deserves great credit for directing Herschel’s footsteps down such a fruitful path. Herschel’s original search for “dark coloured salts” had been founded, of course, on his hope that some of them might be susceptible to bleaching by light, and thus provide direct positive processes. In the event, the successful photochemistry proved to be quite the converse, but it is a mark of Herschel’s great qualities as a scientist that he was able to turn these unexpected serendipitous discoveries into good inventions.

2.9 Misapprehension of Herschel’s processes

Following the Royal Society’s publication of Herschel’s discoveries with iron–based photography, several early handbooks on the newly–invented photography republished their own accounts of his processes because the ordinary reader did not have ready access to the Philosophical Transactions. But, in the course of so doing, most of them managed to misrepresent the relative significance of his different cyanotype methods because, as we have seen, Herschel was not entirely explicit in his 1842 Paper. Thus, George Fisher’s important early manual Photogenic Manipulation of 1843 makes no mention of the highly effective negative–working process, but only describes the rather failure–prone positive–working process (see §4.1.4):

“This brush the paper with a solution of the ammonio–citrate of iron. This solution should be sufficiently strong to resemble sherry–wine in colour. Expose the paper in the usual way, and pass over it very sparingly and evenly, a wash of the common yellow ferro–cyanate of potass. As soon as the liquid is applied, the negative picture vanishes, and is replaced by a positive one...” 177

This same procedure is the only one described for cyanotype by W.H. Thornthwaite in his Photographic Manipulation of 1843.178 Robert Hunt, in the 5th edition of his Manual of Photography of 1857 likewise confines
his description of cyanotype to the positive–working process using potassium ferrocyanide,$^{179}$ whereas in the 3rd and 4th editions of 1853 and 1854 he had quoted all of Herschel’s writings in extenso. The Practical Manual of Photography of 1845 by “a practical chemist and photographer” does mention the negative process, but then goes on to complicate it by the process of bleaching with mercury salts, as in the curious ‘hydrargyrocyanotype’, §4.1.3.$^{180}$ As late as 1852, in his widely-referenced work, Photogenic Manipulation, Robert J. Bingham foregrounds only the positive cyanotype process.$^{181}$ The second edition in 1867 of the authoritative Dictionary of Photography by Thomas Sutton and George Dawson only describes three of the more fallible cyanotype processes: the very slow ‘proto-cyanotype’; the unreliable positive process; and the so-called ‘hydrargyrocyanotype’ using a mercury salt bleach.$^{182}$ Significant publications from the USA erred in a similar way: Henry Hunt Snelling’s well-known History and Practice of Photography of 1845 only mentions the positive process,$^{183}$ and S.D. Humphrey’s System of Photography of 1849 gives precedence to it over the other,$^{184}$ while John Towler’s Silver Sunbeam of 1864 surprisingly prescribes ferric chloride as the sensitizer for negative–working cyanotype.$^{185}$ These many unfortunate instances of misdirected practical instruction may well be responsible for the notable lack of take–up of Herschel’s best cyanotype process – the neglected negative–working one – over the three decades following his discovery.

Even that dignified periodical, The Athenæum, in presenting a synopsis of Herschel’s paper, had erred by describing the process as one of separate development, and went on to make confusion worse confounded by conflating both his cyanotype and chrysotype processes.$^{186}$ This called forth a lengthy corrective letter from Herschel himself a fortnight later,$^{187}$ but it seems to little avail.Remarkably similar misinterpretations of his 1842 paper persist even today: in 2007, the RPS journal The Photohistorian published a re-examination of Herschel’s experiments, which states that his preferred modus operandi for his negative–working cyanotype process consisted in coating the paper with ammonium ferric citrate solution alone, exposing it, then subsequently ‘developing’ the image with a solution of potassium ferricyanide.$^{188}$ To support this claim for ‘separate development’, the last sentence only of Herschel’s text in article 210 (see §2.8 above) is selectively quoted thus:
“...all that is necessary is *simply to leave out the ferrocyanate* in the preparation of the paper, which thus becomes reduced to a simple washing over with the ammonio-citric solution.”

The author then goes on to allege that:

"This critical statement, which Herschel takes the trouble to italicise, is the one either overlooked or dismissed by later historians." 189

On the contrary, "later historians" have considered all of Herschel's statements very carefully: while Article 210 does indeed report a rare occasion when he did not pre-mix the two ingredients, ammonium ferric citrate and potassium ferricyanide, Herschel's true intention becomes plain when one reads the text that the selective quotation was careful to omit – the beginning of Article 210, above. There he clearly states that he intended this as an experiment to show which of the two components contributes most to the photosensitivity of the mixture. He already knew that potassium ferricyanide was light-sensitive by itself (Articles 203 and 204), and that its admixture with ammonium ferric citrate was very sensitive (Articles 206 and 207). But by exposing ammonium ferric citrate first, then "developing" the result with potassium ferricyanide, he demonstrated that the former was by far the more light-sensitive of the two. In fact, Herschel describes his favoured practical method elsewhere in the same 1842 paper – in the Articles 206, 207 and 223:

"223. If paper be washed with a mixture of the solutions of ammonio-citrate of iron and ferrosesquicyanate of potash, so as to contain the two salts in about equal proportions, and being then impressed with a picture, be thrown into water and dried, a negative blue picture will be produced agreeably to what is stated in Art. 154."

The same formulation is given in his personal experimental *Memoranda* noting his formulae for cyanotype 'prepared papers', nos. 780, 784, and 793 (MSs at HRHRC, University of Texas at Austin), which he coated two months *after* writing the 1842 paper. From these sources it is plain that, to make his negative-working cyanotype papers, Herschel always preferred to pre-mix his solutions of ammonium ferric citrate and potassium ferricyanide, before coating his paper with the mixture, and exposing it. The economy of this procedure is obvious, and it results in a better quality of print.

This issue has been further obfuscated by authors citing the fact that Herschel adopted the procedure of separate exposure of ammonium ferric citrate alone, followed by "development", in the cases of his
positive-working cyanotype process and his chrysotype process. The former, which was never entirely successful, required development with potassium ferrocyanide solution; the latter with neutralised gold chloride (sodium tetrachloroaurate), which was very costly. In both these cases, pre-mixing the two chemicals was ruled out by the speedy decomposition of the mixed sensitiser before the paper could be coated and exposed. These processes should not be conflated with the negative-working cyanotype, which became the commercially successful blueprint process, and the version of cyanotype still popular today.

A proper study of all Herschel’s photographic writings – rather than a single, misleading and selective quotation – brings one inevitably to the unsurprising conclusion that the negative-working cyanotype procedure which he personally preferred was the same as that used ever since by almost everyone, including his own son Alexander. There is no case here for attempting to re-write this episode of photographic history, but regrettably this misrepresentation of what is now misleadingly being called ‘the Herschel process’ is becoming a ‘folk myth’ embedded in some of the recent popular beginners’ literature on cyanotype.190

2.10 An unaccountable omission

From our present vantage-point of chemical hindsight, we might, on the other hand, take the uncharitable view that a man of Herschel’s knowledge should have anticipated the photographic value of ‘salts of iron with the vegetable acids’, like ammonium ferric citrate, long before Smee pressed them upon him. Ten years earlier, while in Hamburg, Herschel had become aware of researches just published by Döbereiner,191 who had demonstrated in 1831 the decomposition by light of ferric oxalate, a compound similar to the citrate. It is a remarkable omission by Herschel in 1842, nowhere to have made any use of the photosensitivity of this substance, nor ever to have referred to it, or to its discoverer, Döbereiner.

Very much later, in 1864, on an occasion when Herschel was obliged to defend his priority over the invention of cyanotype, he showed by his retrospective comments on “…these ferruginous combinations with vegetable acids”, that he was well-acquainted with the ferric oxalate possibility, but contented himself with the dismissive observation that it “…differs only from the processes described in §218 of the paper above cited...by the substitution of the oxalic for the citric and
tartaric acids, which, from the habitues of that acid in general, might have been predicted.”  

It is nevertheless very surprising that an avid experimentalist like Herschel should not have tested the properties of ferric oxalate, of which he must have been aware in 1842. Had he done so, he might have devised a platinotype process thirty years earlier than its actual development by William Willis in 1873.

Even if Herschel’s sense of propriety forbade him from taking up the discovery of another scientist, we might at least have expected some citation or comment from him concerning the relevance of Döbereiner’s work on ferric oxalate. The author of the first manual on photographic processes, Robert Hunt (1807–1887), was well-acquainted with this photochemistry and was moved to comment tactfully in his 1844 edition on Herschel’s omission:

“So extensive have been the researches of the distinguished philosopher, whose labours I have so frequently quoted, particularly into the action of the sun’s rays on the salts of iron, that little can be added to his published information. It may not, however, be uninteresting to add a few brief remarks on some of the salts of iron, to which Sir John Herschel has not extended his observations, or at least which have not been recommended by him as photographic agents.”

Hunt offers no explanation for the lacuna in Herschel’s research, but goes on to describe his own experiments with ferric oxalate, which was to prove a very popular photosensitive salt, destined to be used successfully by several photographic innovators in the years to come (see §4.4.4).

A possible explanation for Herschel’s total silence on this subject may be that his highly-developed code of scientific ethics had been offended by earlier actions on the part of Döbereiner. In the ‘pre-photographic’ year of 1831, Herschel had discovered that a particular platinum salt solution was sensitive to light, and formed a white precipitate of ‘platinate of lime’ when illuminated. Upon hearing about Döbereiner’s parallel photochemical researches on iron salts, Herschel hastened to publish his platinum work in order to establish his priority in this area of photochemistry, and to announce his intention of continuing with an analysis to identify the product. Herschel’s result was quickly confirmed in Germany by repeating the experiment, and acknowledged with a declaration that there was no intention of further trespassing on Herschel’s field. Despite this disavowal, Döbereiner subsequently initiated and supervised a research project into the analysis of Herschel’s
‘platinate of lime’, in order to determine a formula for the photoproduct, which Döbereiner published in 1835, during Herschel’s sojourn in the Cape of Good Hope.\textsuperscript{198} While it was not in Herschel’s nature to harbour resentment, this action may have left him with a natural feeling of antipathy that he expressed only by completely shunning the work of his rival in photochemistry.

Without a close examination of Herschel’s experimental records in the \textit{Memoranda}, no-one can fully appreciate the multiplicity of intertwining threads of investigation that he was following simultaneously in 1842–3. Multitudes of domestic plants had been pressed into service for their coloured juices, and even dog’s urine and an ‘extract’ from a boa-constrictor! Salts of platinum, iridium, gold, mercury, iron, lead, silver and chromium all fell within the orbit of his experiments. Many of these led him up blind alleys; for instance, three pages of his cyanotype \textit{Memoranda}, which describe experiments following up the apparently promising results of adding ferric iodide to the cyanotype mixture, are struck through, endorsed with the later revocation in Herschel’s hand: “Hunting on a wrong scent”. Fruitless attempts to render permanent those exquisite kelainotype prints in mercury also accounted for a large portion of his efforts at this time, and in a letter to Talbot we can hear a hint of exasperation in his complaint about their evanescence:

“It has led me such a dance as I never before was led by any physical enquiry and I have not yet succeeded in reducing it to a definite and certainly successful process…”\textsuperscript{199}

Herschel directed much more of his endeavour towards perfecting a positive-working cyanotype process than he did to the negative-working counterpart. The latter had simply fallen into his hands with a minimum of experimentation, but the former was always his preferred objective, probably because he saw it as providing a blue primary for a direct colour photographic process;\textsuperscript{200} yet it proved so variable in quality and so difficult to fix, that he reached the verdict that it “could not be recommended as practically useful”. In an attempt to inhibit the spreading of the image substance, Herschel tried adding gum Arabic to his potassium ferrocyanide developer. Later, in order to achieve fixation without degrading the image, he enlisted the dangerous poison ‘corrosive sublimate’ (mercuric chloride), but both toxicity and cost militate against this as a practical process. It is remarkable that one or two surprisingly fine specimens of Herschel’s positive cyanotype still survive from 1842,
especially in the collection of the National Media Museum (previously the National Museum of Photography Film & Television) at Bradford.

It seems appropriate to end this tale of discovery and invention with a sobering reflection on the fickle character of Herschel’s scientific muse. By the autumn of 1842, he had performed more than a thousand photographic experiments, most of which proved ultimately fruitless; Herschel’s greatest and most enduring success, the negative–working cyanotype process, was actually accomplished with just three test-papers.201

2.11 Pursuit of photographic permanence

Following Anna Atkins’ monumental achievement to be described in §5.4, and the more modest endeavours of her peers during the 1850s, the cyanotype process fell into desuetude for about twenty years. During these two decades, photographic technology made enormous strides, but one of the most hotly debated issues was the impermanence of some images. Silver had revealed its chemical vulnerability early on, to the chagrin of Talbot, Henneman, and others who printed extensively in the medium. In 1855 the Royal Photographic Society set up its aptly-named ‘Fading Committee’ to investigate the deterioration of silver images.202 The Committee’s recommendation of gold toning as a partial remedy did much to extend the longevity of silver photographs made thereafter,203 but this measure was not universally successful in its application. The ‘Achilles’ heel’ of silver images lies in their susceptibility to sulphiding. The necessity for using sodium thiosulphate as the fixing agent (another of Herschel’s discoveries) in order to dissolve and remove the excess silver halide, could, if the thiosulphate was not fully washed out of the paper, lead to the eventual transformation of the silver image into silver sulphide. This greatly weakened the density of colour, especially in the early salted-paper process, which contained relatively low coating weights of silver.204

Alternatives to printing in silver were therefore keenly sought, and photographic innovation was spurred on in 1856 by the Duc de Luynes’ offer of substantial prizes for the invention of methods for making permanent prints. The Duke’s gold medal was awarded in 1859 to Alphonse Poitevin for his process of print-making by the photo-hardening of pigmented colloids such as gelatin.205 Here the maker is free to choose the most permanent pigments for the substance of the image, such as those known to painters for a millennium. One of these,
lampblack, bestowed its identity on this *carbon* process, as it was called. Following further refinement by Swan in 1864, it is still practised today. The process is labour-intensive and demands considerable skill in manipulating and transferring the pigmented gelatin tissues, but it still provides the only means for making truly permanent photographs in colour.

An alternative route to permanent monochrome prints lies in seeking for the image a metal more ‘noble’ – that is to say, more chemically resistant to attack – than silver. Gold and platinum share the metallic summit of the hierarchy of elemental chemical stability. Gold was tried with some success by Herschel, as has already been described, but his beautiful chrysotype process of 1842 proved too expensive and uncontrollable for general practice.\(^{206}\) Platinum printing remained intractable chemically until 1873, when William Willis began to work towards his goal of a viable platinotype process. With further refinement over the next twenty years, this was to become the premier medium for ‘fine-art photography’. By 1900, the walls of the photographic salons exhibited more platinotypes than any other process.\(^{207}\)

### 2.12 Misappropriation of cyanotype

It is still surprising today to see what little application the cyanotype process found in the thirty years following its invention; in explanation it has been argued in §2.9 that Herschel’s achievement was not well served by his bibliographers, most of whom only reported his unsatisfactory attempts at a positive-working process. In view of the enormous commercial importance of the negative-working medium later on for reprography, it is interesting to note that Herschel himself had demonstrated its usefulness for photocopying text. Herschel’s literary work included a translation in 1867 of a Schiller poem from German into Latin, the manuscript of which he copied in cyanotype, fig. 2.8.

Herschel’s son, Alexander, also used the process for copying his astronomical notes. The only other persons to have made significant use of the process over three decades appear to have been Anna Atkins and her circle of lady amateur botanists, as will be described in §5.4.
Fig. 2.8  Sir John Herschel, cyanotype copy of manuscript  
(courtesy of Dr. Larry J. Schaaf)
Despite their historic, but relatively private endeavours, the process became largely forgotten. Perhaps for this reason, we witness more than one instance of its spontaneous re-invention by others. In 1864, *The Photographic News* carried a report of “A process for obtaining proofs in Turnbull’s blue … by Professor Schwarz, of Breslau”,208 who thought that calico printers might avail themselves of it as a dyestuff, evidently unaware that Mercer had already done so two decades before. This brought forth a letter from Herschel himself in the following issue of *The Photographic News*, which the editor entitled “Sir J F W Herschel’s Cyanotype Process. – A Reclamation”. Herschel firmly pointed out that Schwarz’s process was essentially identical with the one described in his 1842 paper. Notwithstanding such sporadic revivals, and the endeavours of a few experimentalists such as Mercer and Carey Lea (see §4.4), there followed a period of disuse so prolonged that the readers of Herschel’s obituary in the *British Journal of Photography* of 19 May 1871 had to be reminded of these photographic achievements:

“In the course of his experiments he discovered several elegant processes possessing much interest, which, although lying dormant to a great extent at present, may yet be resuscitated...” 209

And resuscitated they were – but in a new guise: out of the rich legacy of unpatented processes left by Herschel, the cyanotype was seized upon commercially by Marion and Company of Paris. This company launched the so-called ‘Marion’s Ferro–prussiate Paper’ on the market in 1872,210 No doubt for proprietary business reasons they chose to re-brand the cyanotype, and the publicity heralding the appearance of this product made no hint of an acknowledgement to Herschel, nor intimated that there might have been any ‘prior art’.211 Unsurprisingly, no patent was granted, nor apparently even applied for; instead, the formula was kept a secret which appears never to have been disclosed, so it is still impossible to tell if “the ferro–prussiate method of M. Marion” actually contributed anything by way of an improvement on Herschel’s original formula. This commercial usurpation of an invention of thirty years standing, one that had originally been given freely to the world by its creator, excited indignation at the time in at least one commentator, the editor of *The Photographic News*. His remarks in the issue of 24 August 1877 merit quotation as a polemic which is still full of relevance today for those who practice ‘re-inventing’ the processes due to others:

It is not unusual, as every photographer knows, for a process to
remain *perdu* for some years, and then to get made known again with some mystery and circumstance. We see old friends revived in this way from time to time, and, like somebody whom we meet for the first time in a quaintly shaped hat or a different–coloured coat than usual, we fail to recognise him at the first moment of our rencontre. But it is only for an instant that the deception holds good, and the well known features are as apparent as ever as soon as we get on close terms again. The cyanotype process, as Sir John Herschel used to call it, is the latest attempt at “fraudulent enlistment,” and the circumstance that we have here to do with a genuine article, and not a spurious one, does not make the deception the less barefaced. The cyanotype process as practiced by Sir John Herschel is a very simple affair, and one that is found extremely useful for copying outline sketches or multiplying tracings, instead of using tracing–paper. Sir John Herschel employed it, as does Professor Herschel, of Newcastle, to the present day, for making copies of their calculations of astronomical tables, the characters or figures being produced in white upon a blue ground. The paper, ready prepared for use by draughtsmen or others, is to be purchased in Paris; and also, we believe, in this country, of Messrs. Marion, of Soho Square; but those who desire to make it for themselves can easily do so. Good, smooth paper is treated with

- Citrate of iron (or ammonio–citrate) ... 140 grains
- Red prussiate of potash .....................120 grains
- Dissolved together in two fluid ounces of water.”  

Having thus exposed Marion’s ‘secret’, the article then went on to describe its use. This little polemic is actually of great value in providing us with one of the earliest specifications of Herschel’s formula, other than those in his own *Memoranda*, and its implications will be discussed in §4.1 on the varieties of the process.

The advent of commercial blueprint paper, marketed by Marion and others, enabled the widespread use of the process for expedient copying of engineering drawings. In the USA, for instance, students of mechanical engineering at Massachusetts Institute of Technology were instructed in the use of the process as early as 1875, and they caused its introduction into many drawing offices. The first commercial blueprint machine, made by a Swiss company, was introduced into the USA at the Philadelphia Centennial Exposition of 1876. The American teachers of the process only acknowledged that it had been ‘originally introduced from France by Mr A L Holley’. The name of Herschel, by then, had been totally eclipsed.
Used in the Drawing Departments of the Leading Shipbuilders, Railways, Engineers, Contractors, Architects, and others.

**MARION’S**

**FERRO-PRUSSIATE PROCESS.**

*By this process Drawings, Patterns, Plans, etc., may be reproduced very quickly by simply using the prepared Paper, Light, and Water.*

_N.B._—Of all the various methods for reproducing Drawings, **MARION’S FERRO-PRUSSIATE PROCESS** is still the simplest and most practicable. In order to work it no complicated apparatus is necessary, nor does it require excessive care.

No dangerous acids or poisonous substances are used.

Another advantage is, that the process of printing can be watched without the aid of a Photometer.

After printing, simply washing in cold water is all that is necessary.

We would call attention to our new Paper, No. 515. This is made specially for workshops, etc., being stronger, thicker, and less costly than Paper No. 494. The prints obtained from this Paper are not quite so fine as from No. 494, but they are far superior to any made from Paper not specially manufactured for the Ferro-Prussiate Process.

No. 514 is a strong Paper. No. 494 gives best and clearest results.

MARION & CO., 22 & 23 Soho Square, London, W.

---

**Fig 2.9 Marion’s advertisement of 1885 for Ferro-prussiate paper**[^214]
3 The Molecular Basis of Blueprinting

“Stone walls do not a prison make,
Nor iron bars a cage”
Richard Lovelace (1618–1657)

The processes of cyanotype show a surprising range of behaviour that cannot be understood without some appreciation of the underlying chemistry. This need not make deeply technical demands on the reader nor require a formal scientific background – the sterner approach is confined to Appendices II and III, which are intended only for those readers who are comfortably fluent in the language and symbols of chemistry. In this short chapter, I shall try to provide an account that is accessible to the majority of nonspecialist readers, who may have only a slight acquaintance with chemical science, but are prepared to endure a little of its jargon – in return for one or two anecdotes.

3.1 Chemistry of Prussian blue

The chemical identity of Prussian blue is ferric ferrocyanide.\(^\text{215}\) Among the many compounds of iron known to chemistry, Prussian blue is quite unusual in containing the element combined in two different states of oxidation: both as ‘ferric’ iron and ‘ferrous’ iron.\(^\text{216}\) Intense colour is a quintessential property of this mixed state of oxidation, and it is seen in a number of other such iron compounds.\(^\text{217}\) The deep-blue colour is directly attributable to the absorption of energy, in the form of red light, by electrons ‘hopping’ easily from the ferrous to the ferric iron.\(^\text{218}\) The removal of red from the spectrum of white light leaves us with a sensation of the complementary colour, blue, generally called ‘cyan’ in modern colour language.

The simple experiment of preparing Prussian blue in a test-tube is visually astonishing, and has long been the basis for tricks of parlour magic and ‘sympathetic inks’ for secret writing. Two dilute water solutions are required, each of them unremarkable in appearance: one, of a ferric salt (it matters not whether it is the sulphate, nitrate, or chloride) is pale yellow; the other, of potassium ferrocyanide, is colourless. On mixing the two solutions, an inky liquid of the deepest blue is instantly formed, from which a dark blue precipitate slowly separates:

\[
\text{ferric cation} + \text{ferrocyanide anion} \rightarrow \text{ferric ferrocyanide}
\]
Performance of this dramatic reaction was part of the stock–in–trade for the public lecture–demonstrations of celebrated nineteenth–century chemists such as Michael Faraday. The wonder of carrying out this experiment has been beautifully captured in a fine, but anonymous nineteenth–century painting in the collection of Alfred Bader, who identifies the demonstrator of the reaction as William Thomas Brande (1788–1866), while a youthful Michael Faraday looks on. Bader points out that, in the copy of Brande’s seminal *Manual of Chemistry* once owned by Faraday, there are extensive annotations in Faraday’s hand on the subject of Prussian blue, which evidently engaged his attention for some years.

![Fig 3.1 Thomas Phillips, Preparation of Prussian blue (Collection of Alfred Bader)](image)

The compounds of the Prussian blue family all have a similar structure in which there are two different types of environment for the iron atoms; one of them is distinguished by cyanide groups strongly–bound through their carbon atoms. Since there are also two possible oxidation states for the iron in each type of environment, we therefore have a total of four possibilities when combining ferric or ferrous salts with a ferricyanide or a ferrocyanide, and the properties of the resulting substances are
summarised in Table 3.1. Note how the other three compounds are all readily transformed into Prussian blue, which is by far the most stable product of the four.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reactant</th>
<th>Ferricyanides</th>
<th>Ferrocyanides</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ferric salts</td>
<td>Ferric ferricyanide Prussian yellow (or Berlin brown) Soluble; a powerful oxidant, easily oxidises water, and paper etc., being reduced via green intermediates (Berlin green) to Prussian blue</td>
<td>Ferric ferrocyanide Prussian blue (or Berlin blue) Highly insoluble; most intensely coloured, and most stable of all four possible products in this table, to which the others revert</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ferrous salts</td>
<td>Ferrous ferricyanide A highly unstable substance that instantly reverts by electron transfer to ferric ferrocyanide, Prussian blue which, formed this way, is often called Turnbull’s blue after its manufacturer</td>
<td>Ferrous ferrocyanide Prussian white (also Everitt’s salt\textsuperscript{222} or Williamson’s salt\textsuperscript{223} or Berlin white) Insoluble and colourless, but readily oxidised by air (and other oxidants) to Prussian blue</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 3.1. Varieties of complex iron cyanides**

Because negative-working cyanotypes are usually formed by the reaction of a ferrous salt (resulting from the decomposition of ferric salts by light) with a ferricyanide, a common error in all older published accounts of the cyanotype process is to describe the resulting pigment, Turnbull’s blue, as ferrous ferricyanide, and this misconception even persists among some antagonists today.\textsuperscript{224} Modern chemical research of the last 30 years has conclusively shown this to be wrong (see Appendix II.4); when formed, ferrous ferricyanide rearranges ‘instantly’ by transferring an electron between its two types of iron to give ferric ferrocyanide, Prussian blue:

\[
\text{ferrous cation} + \text{ferricyanide anion} \rightarrow [\text{ferrous ferricyanide} \text{ – unstable}] \\
\rightarrow \text{ferric ferrocyanide (Prussian blue)}
\]

However, the early experimentalists may be forgiven for thinking that Turnbull’s blue was different from Prussian blue, because the appearance of its hue often suggests so, for reasons to be described below.
The colourless substance, ferrous ferrocyanide, or Prussian white, will be important to our considerations later, because it is formed directly in one variant of commercial blueprint paper. Prussian white is also the product of the fading of Prussian blue by light; its formation accounts for the tonal reversal that the cyanotype image undergoes upon extended exposure, where the paling of the shadow areas is called ‘solarisation’ by photographers. However, it should be understood that this fading transformation is not brought about solely by light; the chemical reduction of Prussian blue to Prussian white must be accompanied by a corresponding oxidation of something else:

\[
\text{light + Prussian blue + reductant } \rightarrow \text{ Prussian white + oxidation products}
\]

but what reductant exactly is oxidised is an open, and very important question, which will be addressed later. Prussian white is unstable in air and is slowly oxidized by oxygen back to Prussian blue:

\[
\text{Prussian white + oxygen + water } \rightarrow \text{ Prussian blue + hydroxide ions}
\]

If this were all that there is to say about the chemistry of Prussian blue, my task would have been simple. But nature at the molecular level is seldom unsophisticated, and sometimes ‘imperfect’. In fact, there exist several ‘Prussian blues’, all of them in essence ferric ferrocyanide, but each having an individual composition depending on its precise method of preparation.\(^{225}\) The analytical complexity and intractability of this ‘substance’ has engaged – and frustrated – chemists for no less than two centuries,\(^ {226}\) but only in the late 20\(^{th}\) century did a clear understanding begin to emerge, thanks to the powerful instrumental techniques of modern chemical research. The structural details are set out in Appendix II, but for a general discussion can be summarised as follows.

The formulae for Prussian Blue are usually stated to range from an ‘insoluble’ Prussian blue,\(^ {227}\) to the so-called ‘soluble’ Prussian blue,\(^ {228}\) which also contains potassium ions.\(^ {229}\) The latter is a serious misnomer: in fact, all forms of Prussian blue are highly insoluble in water. The apparent ‘solubility’ in the latter case is an illusion created by the ease with which this solid may be dispersed in water as minute particles, called nanoparticles, which form a blue suspension giving the appearance of a true solution. Chemists call this process peptization,\(^ {230}\) and the resulting suspension of the nanoparticles or colloid is known as a sol which is fine enough to pass through a filter paper.\(^ {231}\) The ease of
peptizing ‘soluble’ Prussian blue is responsible for some of the problems that beset the making and conservation of cyanotypes.

The Prussian blue pigment of commerce, which is manufactured globally on a scale of 50,000 tonnes per year, is now prepared via Prussian white by a method which ensures that a substance is obtained in which ammonium ions replace potassium. This variety has a brighter colour and is more resistant to peptization and destruction by alkalies.

3.2 Molecular structure of Prussian blue

Many of the remarkable properties and present-day uses of Prussian blue can be understood in terms of the three-dimensional structure of the solid at the atomic level – its “molecular architecture”. This structure is so simple and (ideally) regular, that visualizing it should present no difficulty even to non-chemists. Imagine a cubic scaffolding: iron atoms (Fe) are located at the joints, alternately ferric ($Fe^{3+}$) and ferrous ($Fe^{2+}$), the cyanide groups ($-C≡N$) form the rods that connect them, with their carbon atoms adjacent to the ferrous ions, and nitrogen atoms to the ferric ions. In one direction, the structure runs like this:

```
- N≡C-Fe-C≡N-Fe-N≡C-Fe-C≡N-Fe-N≡C-Fe-C≡N-Fe-
```

and likewise in two other mutually perpendicular directions. For a representation of the three-dimensional structure, see Figure 3.1. Note how spacious this arrangement is: not close-packed as are many simple crystalline solids. Throughout this open lattice we can see tunnels running in three perpendicular directions, and a large void within each cube, which can accommodate molecules of water, for example, or metal ions, and which allow Prussian blue to act as a kind of chemical host. In the case of ‘soluble’ Prussian blue, half of these spaces are occupied by potassium ions. The incorporation of varying amounts of water and other ions into the voids in this lattice accounts for some of the variations observed in the formulae, and the puzzlement of early analytical chemists.

The other cause of variability in the composition of Prussian blue is the presence of defects in the lattice; that is, departures from symmetrical regularity due to the absence of a proportion of the ferrocyanide groups. The formula of the ‘insoluble’ variety is explained by a lattice that has one quarter of its ferrocyanide groups missing, and
water molecules in their place. In the language of the crystallographer, the lattice is said to have ‘systematic vacancies’.

![The idealised crystal lattice of Prussian blue](image)

**Fig. 3.2** The idealised crystal lattice of Prussian blue

The formula recently found for Turnbull’s blue implies that in its lattice one third of the ferrocyanide groups are missing, and replaced by water molecules and anions. This is nominally, at least, the form of Prussian blue formed in the cyanotype process; it will be seen later that the possibility of a defect lattice which can act as host to anions is of great significance to its light-stability.

### 3.3 Prussian blue for ion exchange

The open structure of the Prussian blue lattice gives it a porous quality that explains why the substance is a very useful ‘chemical sponge’ for soaking up and trapping cations similar to potassium, such as those of the metals caesium and thallium.²³⁴ Prussian blue itself is non-toxic, unreactive and tasteless, and can be safely eaten in gram quantities without harmful effects,²³⁵ and its insolubility ensures it is excreted
easily, making it a valuable antidote to poisoning by these heavy metals, from which it has been used successfully to detoxify both animals and humans.

As an example of the ability of the microporous Prussian blue lattice to act as host for relatively large amounts of impurity ions, it was put to good use for ‘locking up’ some of the radioactive fallout, in the form of the radioisotope caesium–137, that was deposited on the uplands of North Wales, Cumbria and Scotland following the disastrous Chernobyl reactor explosion of April 1986.²³⁶

Tests were conducted to see if this contamination could be countered by spreading Prussian blue on the contaminated soil of the pastures, thus inhibiting the uptake of caesium by growing grass which, in turn, would prevent its ingestion by the animals grazing the slopes, but it was found more effective to feed the Prussian blue directly to the affected sheep, and thus avoid turning the green hills of Britain to navy blue!²³⁷ The effects of Chernobyl lingered on. In 1992, it was discovered that migrant herds of reindeer in Norway had also absorbed caesium–137 from this disaster, because they graze on lichens and are particularly partial to mushrooms, which both concentrate the caesium. The livelihood of their Sámi herders was in jeopardy,²³⁸ so Prussian blue was added to the ‘salt licks’ that these nomadic animals are so fond of, with beneficial effects for the migrant herds.²³⁹ Prussian blue continues to be used to detoxify
the livestock in the Chernobyl–contaminated regions of Belarus, Russia and Ukraine, and has saved their agricultural industries of milk and meat production from enormous losses.

In Germany, appropriately, the benefits of feeding Prussian blue to radioactively–contaminated pigs has also been amply demonstrated in a recent scientific study.\textsuperscript{240} Caesium–137 is also used in radiotherapy to treat certain cancers, so there are substantial quantities of this radioisotope in specialist medical facilities worldwide. Acknowledging the risk that these stocks could be abused by terrorists to make a radiological “dirty bomb”, the Federal Drug Administration in the USA has recently licensed the use of Prussian blue as a safe antidote to Cs\textsuperscript{137} contamination in humans.\textsuperscript{241}

Poisoning of humans by salts of the scarce heavy–metal, thallium (which resembles lead), is fortunately not frequent, but in the mid–20th Century, it enjoyed a spell of notoriety as a subtle toxin: its unusual symptoms could be mistaken for diseases such as encephalitis or epilepsy, but incidentally the victim’s hair dropped out, so sudden alopecia offered a clue.\textsuperscript{242} (Its use as a depilatory, however, declined in the 1930s.) This highly toxic metal is a favourite of poisoners who happen to be both chemically erudite and homicidally inclined; their hope is that its unfamiliar toxicology may help them evade detection. Thallium(I) sulphate is colourless, odourless, tasteless, and sufficiently water–soluble to be administered easily to an unsuspecting victim. The symptoms do not appear for several days, but a dose of a gram or so is usually fatal, because the body cannot get rid of the element, which mimics potassium but blocks its vital enzymic action, especially in the brain.

Thallium was used quite extensively by the secret police of the late Saddam Hussein’s regime in Iraq for disposing of senior political dissidents. A useful trick was to administer the dose just before the victim was allowed to leave the country, so he died abroad. The substance was readily available in the Middle East, where it was commonly employed to destroy rats and cockroaches, so accidental poisoning was also common. Fortunately – if the cause of the poisoning is correctly diagnosed – there is an antidote which has saved many lives: Prussian blue.\textsuperscript{243} The thallium(I) cation can enter the Prussian blue lattice in place of potassium. There it becomes trapped, and can be safely excreted by the body. Prussian blue was therefore put forward by German
pharmacologist, Horst Heydlauf of Karlsruhe, as the preferred antidote for thallium poisoning, and its value has since been amply confirmed.\textsuperscript{244}

These two instances of the ability of Prussian blue to act as a ‘prison’ for chemical poisons are not just irrelevant digressions to the present work. Later in §8, we shall consider methods of toning the cyanotype image, among which are processes using salts of lead and thallium. Lead resembles thallium quite closely, and its ability to cause a shift in the colour of Prussian blue may probably be attributed to its incorporation within the lattice, as just described. As we shall see in §9 on the vulnerability of cyanotypes and in Appendix III, the fading of Prussian blue in the light may also be greatly promoted by the presence of impurities trapped within it.

3.4 Prussian blue for electrochromic displays

Over the last decade, Prussian blue has attracted an enormous amount of research interest from electrochemists because it can be commercially exploited as an electrochromic display; that is, a solid–state device whose colour can be changed by varying the electric potential applied to it. As the voltage across a Prussian white electrode is raised, and negatively–charged electrons are abstracted from it, the colour passes through a spectacular, reversible sequence: white, blue, green, and finally yellow:

\[
\text{ferrous ferrocyanide} \rightarrow \text{ferric ferrocyanide} \rightarrow \text{ferric ferricyanide}
\]

white \hspace{1cm} blue \hspace{1cm} (green) \hspace{1cm} yellow

a beautiful visual demonstration of the increasing oxidation states of the two types of iron atom that are summarised in Table 3.1.\textsuperscript{245}

3.5 Chemical history of siderotype

The cyanotype process is just one member of a whole class of alternative photographic printing processes which all share a common type of light–sensitive component: the ferric salts of certain organic substances, which were appropriately called ‘vegetable acids’ by Herschel, owing to their widespread natural occurrence within the plant kingdom. However, the discovery of this light–sensitivity in organic iron salts considerably pre–dates its photographic uses, as we have seen in §2.2.

The action of light on ferric salts of some organic acids produces ferrous salts by promoting an internal oxidation–reduction reaction.\textsuperscript{246} All the iron imaging systems have this same basis; the key compound is usually a ferric salt of citric, tartaric, or oxalic acid.\textsuperscript{247} For simplicity in
our brief excursion into the chemical formulae, we will take the last-named as our example: ferric oxalate, which contains iron(III), Fe³⁺, and oxalate, C₂O₄²⁻, chemically bound together. Under the influence of ultraviolet light, this salt undergoes the reaction first observed by Döbereiner in 1831, as described in §2.2. Iron(III) reacts with oxalate ions to form iron(II) and carbon dioxide gas – a process which is expressed symbolically by the following chemical equation (the only equation, I promise, that readers will encounter, unless they venture into the depths of Appendices II and III):

\[
\text{UV light} + 2\text{Fe}^{3+} + \text{C}_2\text{O}_4^{2-} \rightarrow 2\text{Fe}^{2+} + 2\text{CO}_2
\]

UV light + ferric ions + oxalate ions → ferrous ions + carbon dioxide

Note how two negative charges (which are carried by electrons) have been transferred from oxalate to two ferric ions, reducing them to ferrous ions.

This light-induced change occurs in the dry, solid ferric oxalate, and in related compounds such as ammonium ferric oxalate and ammonium ferric citrate; but it is only accompanied by a slight colour change from pale yellow-green to pale yellow-brown; moreover this change is temporary, because the iron(II) is slowly re-oxidised back to iron(III) by oxygen in the air. In order to make a permanent photograph, the iron(II) which is formed by the action of light must be immediately reacted to produce a more visible and enduring substance for the image. Chemically, iron(II) is a reducing agent, because it readily gives up an electron and reverts to iron(III); so one option is to use it to reduce the compounds of a ‘noble’ metal, such as platinum, palladium, silver or gold, to the metallic state:

ferrous ions + platinum salts → ferric ions + platinum black

Reactions of this type provide the basis for the well-known platinotype, palladiotype, argyrotype and chrysotype processes.²⁴⁸

3.6 Photochemical principles

Photochemical theory had its beginnings in 1818 with the fairly self-evident Grotthuss–Draper Law: only light absorbed by a substance can induce a chemical change within it. Light is energy. Across the visible spectrum, going from red to blue, the intrinsic energy of light nearly doubles. When a molecule absorbs visible light, which is one of the causes of colour, its internal energy is increased, and it is said to be lifted
into an ‘excited’ state. Sooner or later, this excess energy is transformed and lost, so that the molecule returns to its normal or ‘ground’ state – a process that is appropriately called ‘relaxation’. The manner of the transformation of the absorbed energy, however, can be various, and it depends on the lifetime of the excited state and other factors. The least interesting, and most common process is ‘thermal relaxation’, that is the dissipation of the excess energy as heat – embodied in more agitated motion of the molecules. In some spectacular instances, however, part of the excess energy may be re-emitted as light, giving us the attractive and useful luminescent phenomena, called fluorescence and phosphorescence, depending on whether the excited state is short- or long-lived, respectively. Most importantly for our purposes, the excess energy may be directed to bring about a chemical reaction if the molecular circumstances are favourable. It should come as no surprise that a molecule in an excited state is capable of more vigorous chemical reactions than when it is in its ground state. Ultra-violet light is often required to supply sufficient energy for such chemical transformations.

There is an equivalence between the quantity of light energy absorbed and the amount of substance that is chemically transformed, both of which are measurable, and may be related by an elementary principle of quantum theory, as it applies to photochemical changes.\textsuperscript{249} This principle, which constitutes the second law of photochemistry, dates from ca 1912 and is usually referred to as the Stark–Einstein Law.\textsuperscript{250} It is easily appreciated without invoking much jargon, and the non-technical reader should readily see that it amounts to nothing more than a statement of ‘good book-keeping’ at the molecular level. The Stark–Einstein Law effectively requires that: \textbf{for each molecule of the substance to be transformed, one photon must be absorbed.}\textsuperscript{251} (A photon is the fundamental, indivisible particle or ‘quantum’ of light.)

From this basis, a calculation may be performed assuming the most favourable circumstances (see Appendix III), which yields an estimate for the maximum light sensitivity of any ‘proto-photographic’ material – no matter what its detailed photochemistry.\textsuperscript{252} This limiting sensitivity is a maximum in the near ultraviolet and blue regions of the spectrum, over a wavelength range of about 300–400 nm (known as UVA). Unsurprisingly, the sensitivity turns out to be very low, requiring a radiant energy density of about 34 J/m\textsuperscript{2} (Joules per square meter) to form a just-perceptible image. On a scale familiar to photographers, the ‘speed’ of such a material can be rated approximately at 10\textsuperscript{−5} ISO (arithmetic);\textsuperscript{253} that is,
one ten-millionth of the speed of an ordinary camera film of 100 ISO (arithmetic).

According to the Bunsen–Roscoe Law of Reciprocity – the third law of photochemistry – **photographic exposure is defined as the product of light intensity and time**. We may write our minimum ‘proto-photographic’ exposure as 34 W s/m² (Watt–seconds per square meter),\(^{254}\) in order to calculate the approximate duration of exposure to sunlight. The tropical sun at its zenith delivers an energy flux at the Earth’s surface with an intensity of about 900 W/m² (Watts per square meter), but only about 7% of this total is ‘actinic’ light – UVA and blue – able to bring about photochemical change, amounting to \(\sim 63 \text{ W/m}^2\), maximum. Taking account of the average angle of elevation of the sun, the average UVA irradiance will be about 30 to 40 W/m², comparable with an exposure for one second to form a just-perceptible image. Since the exposure scale for a proto-photographic process such as cyanotype is 7 to 8 ‘stops’ between ‘just perceptible’ and maximum density (a factor of 128 to 256), we see that the exposure needed to fully darken the unobscured sensitized paper should be in the order of 2 to 4 minutes, for a ‘proto-photographic’ process in average sunlight. This theoretically predicted exposure is in agreement with all experience.

### 3.7 Chemistry of blueprinting

In the negative-working cyanotype process, the iron(II) photo-product is reacted with ferricyanide to yield Prussian (alias Turnbull’s) blue:

\[
\text{ferrous ions} + \text{ferricyanide ions} \rightarrow \text{Prussian blue}
\]

This reaction entails a switch in the oxidation states of the two types of iron, as indicated in Table 3.1: the intermediate ferrous ferricyanide is highly unstable and transforms very rapidly to ferric ferrocyanide.

If the light–sensitive iron(III) salt is present in excess, and the exposure is prolonged sufficiently, the photochemistry proceeds one stage further: some of the Prussian blue (ferric ferrocyanide) is further reduced to Prussian white (ferrous ferrocyanide), and the deep blue image begins to pale in its regions of greatest exposure.

\[
\text{light} + \text{Prussian blue} + \text{ferrous ions} \rightarrow \text{Prussian white} + \text{ferric ions}
\]

This tonal reversal is the phenomenon of ‘solarisation’ first observed and named by Herschel. It is actually desirable for making a print-out image, because it can ultimately yield a higher maximum density: the
self-masking action by the Prussian blue in the shadow regions of a printed-out image is diminished by the reversal to white, which allows the ingress of more light and formation of more (white) product. After the exposure, the Prussian white so formed is oxidised back to Prussian blue, either slowly by the oxygen of the air, or more rapidly by including a bath of an oxidising agent, such as hydrogen peroxide or a dichromate, in the wet-processing sequence:

\[
\text{Prussian white + hydrogen peroxide} \rightarrow \text{Prussian blue + hydroxide ions}
\]

When pure Prussian blue absorbs light, the excited state quickly loses its excess energy by thermal relaxation only, and returns to the ground state unaltered (apart from a slight warming of the substance). However, if there is an oxidisable impurity in intimate contact with the Prussian blue – for instance, trapped in its lattice – then the excited state may have time to accept an electron and undergo chemical reduction to Prussian white. This photoreduction underlies Herschel's observation of bleaching Prussian blue (§4.1.6) and is the reason why cyanotypes tend to fade in the light; the phenomenon is central to the problems of conserving cyanotypes, and will be fully discussed in §9.1 and Appendix III.9.
4 Historical Variations on Cyanotype

"The Artists go on boldly, and are not afraid to be Chemists, the Chemists gain courage and long to be Artists."

The Athenæum 1858

This chapter reviews some of the many variations on a cyanotype theme which have been used at various stages in photographic history to arrive at images in Prussian blue, including the employment of glass, plastic and fabrics as alternatives to paper for the substrate of the cyanotype. The retrospective application of image-toning chemistry to convert the Prussian blue into differently coloured substances will be largely deferred until §8, which is devoted to the various methods of ‘toning’ cyanotypes.

4.1 Herschel’s formulae

From Herschel’s observations in his 1842 paper together with the notes in his Memoranda, we can distinguish at least fifteen variations on his photochemical theme for making images in Prussian blue, but only the most significant will be considered here. As we shall see, subsequent experimenters have re-invented several of these, or played further variations upon them.

4.1.1 Proto-cyanotype

This name is newly coined here to distinguish the method of cyanotype that has emerged from the historical evidence presented in §2.6 as the very first method discovered by Herschel to provide prints in Prussian blue. This was simply the exposure of a coating of potassium ferricyanide alone. The concentration of the solution to be spread on the paper should be lower than saturation (which is 33% w/v at room temperature), say 10% to 16%, otherwise undesirable crystallization may occur on the surface before the solution is absorbed by the fibres. This is the simplest cyanotype method of all, and is capable of producing a well-graduated, clean, negative-working print of a somewhat greenish-blue (23C7 to 23E7), but of rather low maximum density, because it does not undergo tonal reversal (‘solarisation’), and is therefore self-masking during exposure. The chief disadvantage of this simple method is the very long exposure required – in the order of one or two hours to bright sunlight – because potassium ferricyanide is intrinsically not very sensitive to light.
Experimenters are also advised that perceptible amounts of deadly poisonous hydrogen cyanide and cyanogen gases are released during the exposure of this substance, which should not, therefore, be carried out in a confined space.\textsuperscript{256} (The same warning does not apply to the much faster processes of cyanotype using ammonium ferric citrate or oxalate.)

Herschel noted that greater 'speed' and higher densities can be obtained by developing the image in a bath of ferric chloride or nitrate solution, but this invariably causes blue fog in the highlights.\textsuperscript{257} These are probably the reasons why Herschel appears to have abandoned the method soon after he discovered it, in favour of the much faster sensitiser which also incorporated ammonium ferric citrate provided by Alfred Smee. However, the use of potassium ferricyanide by itself continued to be recommended for several years as 'one of the best methods', by authorities such as Robert Hunt\textsuperscript{258} and Golding Bird:

"This easily prepared paper affords a ready and excellent means for copying ferns, sea-weeds, lace-work, engravings, &c., but is not sufficiently delicate for the camera."\textsuperscript{259}

Bird's popular text, \textit{The Elements of Natural Philosophy}, in its second and later editions, is thought to have provided an accessible instruction manual for many early practitioners of the cyanotype process.\textsuperscript{260} There is at least one important album containing cyanotypes and their original botanical specimens, dating from 1843, which appears to have been printed by this simple means, as will be described in §5.7.

A similar proto-cyanotype procedure was devised in 1864 by Professor Gintl of Prague, who sensitized paper with potassium ferricyanide in conjunction with gelatin and exposed it to achieve selective photohardening of the colloid (see §4.10), the soluble portions of which were washed away by water before the image was developed in Prussian blue by means of a bath of ferric chloride.\textsuperscript{261}

The 'proto-cyanotype' method was still being published in the 1867 edition of the influential \textit{Dictionary of Photography},\textsuperscript{262} but by the time of the first 'revival' of cyanotype towards the end of the nineteenth century, the method using potassium ferricyanide alone had disappeared entirely from the manuals and encyclopaedias. Very recently the colloid photohardening capability of ferricyanide has been revived by Jim Patterson as a means of making pigmented gelatin prints by the so-called 'Carbon' process, without having to employ the carcinogenic, and widely banned dichromate substances, which many are now seeking to avoid.\textsuperscript{263}
4.1.2 Negative–working cyanotype

In Herschel’s ‘standard’ negative–working cyanotype process, iron(II) is generated photochemically from ammonium iron(III) citrate, and reacts with the potassium ferricyanide in the sensitizer to form Prussian blue in proportion to the light that has fallen; i.e. it is a Turnbull’s blue process (§3.1) and the potassium ferricyanide is usually in excess over the iron(II), so the product may be of the so–called ‘soluble’ variety. A recipe for this negative–working cyanotype process can be found in every photographic text that touches on alternative processes, and many of these claim to be quoting Herschel’s original formula, but they never support this by citing any reference. The reason for their omission is simple: nowhere in Herschel’s published work does he specify the concentrations and relative proportions of the solutions of potassium ferricyanide and ammonium ferric citrate that he used for this cyanotype process. This information can only be found in the Memoranda, as is clear in the following entry:

“Photography
FerroSesquiCyan. P Cyanogen Iron
Aug 13/42. Mixed sol of F_{3/2}CP and Amm^0 Citr of Iron as in Paper 780 ie. equal parts of sat^d sol of F_{3/2}CP and ACI 1/11 (1 salt + 10 water). The properties of this paper are singularly complex & interesting.”

Herschel’s use of a saturated solution of potassium ferricyanide (ca. 33% w/v) and the rather dilute solution of ammonium ferric citrate (ca. 9% w/v) are surprising. He goes on to describe in detail his observations of the effects of exposing this sensitizer to light; in particular, his attention was caught by the tonal reversal of the image as the exposure progressed – a phenomenon for which he promptly coined the term ‘solarising’:

“A. It first darkens to a dull bluish grey the original hue of the paper being green–yellow. The darkening reaches a maximum in about 30 or 40 seconds in good sun (the paper is very sensitive), – It then whitens again – to a pale greenish–grey. Hence a picture withdrawn at various stages of exposure presents several aspects.
1st If not long exposed the margin is dark and the picture negative in a bluish or lead grey.
2nd If very long exposed the picture is positive the parts where the light has acted being actually paler than the original formed tint. This I call over–sunning or solarising.
3rd If the exposure be not so prolonged as to “solarise” it the picture is very remarkable. It is positive, but in 3 tints the ground being the original greenish–yellow. – the full lights being the
aforesaid solarised white – a very pale greenish–grey. – The half lights are darker than the ground but contrast sufficiently with it in colour to relieve the lights on the one hand and to stand off from the ground on the other.

B. When the picture so produced is thrown into whater [sic] it gradually changes to a fine Prussian Blue Negative Photograph, & the process of the change is highly curious as to Pictorial effect. Especially if a solarised Photogr be used.– The white faces take by degrees a leaden hue & the change is like the effect of the “dissolving views.” 266 [Underlining in original]

It is clear from his 1842 paper that Herschel had a correct chemical understanding of the cause of his ‘solarisation’; a footnote to §207 reads:

“The whitening is very obviously due to the deoxidation of the precipitated Prussian blue and the formation of the proto–ferrocyanuret of iron; the resumption of colour in the shade, to the re–oxidisement of the compound, which is well known to absorb oxygen from the air with avidity. Simple Prussian blue, however, is not whitened by the violet rays. Its state must be peculiar.” 267

On 16 August 1842, Herschel modified the proportions of mixing his solutions of ammonium ferric citrate to potassium ferricyanide from 1 : 1 to 5 : 3, respectively, but there is no record of his making further changes after that. It is puzzling that the proportions and concentrations he had then arrived at still differ considerably from those that were subsequently recalled and publicised by his son, Professor Alexander Stewart Herschel (1836–1907), in the 1870s as representing his father’s working recipe.268

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Formulation</th>
<th>Ammonium Ferric Citrate % w/v</th>
<th>Potassium Ferricyanide % w/v</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Herschel ‘proto’</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>ca 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Herschel original</td>
<td>4.7</td>
<td>16.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Herschel modified</td>
<td>6.6</td>
<td>12.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alexander Herschel</td>
<td>14.7</td>
<td>12.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Later C19th average</td>
<td>ca 10 (brown salt)</td>
<td>ca 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Usual C20th average</td>
<td>ca 13 (green salt)</td>
<td>ca 6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4.1 Early cyanotype formulations (final concentrations)

The processing of an exposed negative cyanotype could not be simpler: ‘fixation’ of the image is most easily accomplished by washing in water, because the excess sensitizer and other photoproducts are entirely
soluble. This is one of the strongest recommendations for the cyanotype, since it meets an ideal that Herschel had always sought in his processes; it offers a considerable advantage over the practice necessary in silver photography, where the insoluble silver halide requires a fixing agent, sodium thiosulphate, for its removal, and residues of thiosulphate can lead to deterioration of the silver image, as many early photographers, including Talbot, found to their cost.\textsuperscript{269}

4.1.3 Hydrargyro–cyanotype

This cumbersome name appears only in Herschel’s \textit{Memoranda}, but the 1842 Paper carries an account of the phenomenon in Article 223, which was republished by Hunt and others,\textsuperscript{270} and goes as follows. A cyanotype is made and processed in the usual way from ammonium ferric citrate and potassium ferricyanide by Herschel’s ‘Method (a)’. This is then coated with a solution of mercurous nitrate;\textsuperscript{271} within a period of a few hours the blue image disappears and the blank paper is washed and dried. On heating strongly with a flat-iron – but not so much as to cause scorching of the paper – a brown image becomes visible. This tends to fade slowly in the dark over a matter of days, but may be regenerated again by further heating. We can only conjecture what chemistry may be involved here, for the observations deserve further scientific investigation; the reversibility of the phenomenon may be a consequence of the mercury(I) being trapped in the Prussian blue lattice in the same way as thallium(I) is known to be, and then reducing the substance to Prussian white. The effect of heat may be to cause decomposition of the mercury ions to mercury metal, which in a finely divided state would appear brown. I have repeated and confirmed this curious process, but cannot recommend it generally owing to the high toxic hazard presented by the mercury salts, especially when heated.

4.1.4 Positive–working cyanotype

In the positive–working cyanotype process, the Prussian blue image is meant to be formed in inverse proportion to the illumination, by the ferric ions derived from the \textit{unchanged} ammonium ferric citrate sensitizer reacting with potassium ferrocyanide, which is applied in solution after the exposure. This procedure introduces an inherent and rather intractable problem: the lighter regions of the image, which have received the most exposure, contain much ferrous iron that also reacts with the applied ferrocyanide to give the insoluble product, ferrous ferrocyanide or Prussian white. Now this substance does not remain white for very
long, being readily oxidised by the air to Prussian blue, so it must be removed in order to fix the positive image. Any treatment intended to achieve this is likely also to remove the Prussian blue image itself, which explains why Herschel – and everyone who has followed him – found the positive–working version of the process so much more difficult to carry out satisfactorily, and virtually impossible to perfect. Herschel’s first recourse was to include gum Arabic in the developer to increase its viscosity, but this did not fully answer the problem. Had he included it in the sensitizer, as Pellet subsequently did (see below) he would have met with more success. His second attempted solution was to include mercury(II) chloride, ‘corrosive sublimate’ in the sensitizer in order that the image, after development with a coating of gum and potassium ferrocyanide, would be fixed without any washing at all:

“All the care that is required is, that the film of liquid be very thinly, evenly, and above all, quickly spread. Being then allowed to dry in the dark, it rarely fails to produce a good picture. And what is very remarkable, it is ipso facto fixed as soon as dry, so at least as not to be injured by exposure to common day-light, immediately; and after a few days’ keeping it becomes entirely so, and will bear strong lights uninjured.”

In spite of Herschel’s claim for the success of this procedure it cannot be recommended, in view of the very high toxicity (and expense) of mercury(II) chloride. Even today this chemistry is somewhat obscure. Herschel offered no rationalization, but it is known that mercury(II) has an enormous affinity for cyanide, forming a very stable complex; its likely effect is to destroy the Prussian white in the highlight areas, which cannot then revert to blue.

4.1.5 Anachronistic ‘Herschelotype’
A curious inversion of the foregoing process was proposed in 2007 as a practical alternative method for negative–working cyanotype: to expose ammonium ferric citrate alone, then develop it in potassium ferrocyanide solution to form an invisible negative image in Prussian white, which then slowly re–oxidizes in air to Prussian blue, so providing a negative–working process overall. This procedure may sound plausible but, as we have just seen in §4.1.4, it has an obvious problem: a strong positive–working image in Prussian blue is also formed immediately by the ferrocyanide reacting with residual iron(III) in the unreduced sensitizer, and this initial blue image must be completely and quickly dispersed – by scrubbing it away, according to the author – before the Prussian white
negative image becomes oxidized by air to Prussian blue. It seems very improbable that this procedure could be employed successfully for making prints of any size and quality; no specimens have been offered for inspection. The author goes on to announce, rather stridently:

"This new process, as the inventor, I'm attributing to Herschel and call it the "Herschelotype"." 274

Retrospectively to enlist the name of Sir John Herschel for this unworkable and falsely-claimed "new process" is a clumsy misappropriation that insults his memory. It is presumptuous to assume this 'right of naming' because Herschel never attempted to use this process, nor did he employ potassium ferrocyanide in the negative-working/reoxidation manner. He did, of course, attempt to use ferrocyanide development in the contrary sense, as a positive-working process, but rarely with much success (§4.1.4). Moreover, the process described is in no way new, and any modern claim to be its inventor is empty. The inclusion of potassium ferrocyanide in negative-working cyanotype was, in fact, widely patented in the USA and UK in the 1930s, and employed commercially for the production of very fast blueprint papers of the ‘Blue Layer’ type as described in §4.12. The only difference was that the potassium ferrocyanide was more conveniently and economically incorporated in the sensitized coating, rather than used as a developer bath.

4.1.6 Light–bleaching of Prussian blue
Herschel discovered that there is yet another way of obtaining a positive-working image in Prussian blue; namely, to cause the image-forming light to bleach a uniform ground of prepared Prussian blue, by promoting its reduction to Prussian white in the presence of certain oxidisable substances (the function of which he may not have been aware).
Unfortunately, such images cannot be fixed because there is no good way of removing the Prussian white without damaging the Prussian blue, as in the case above, so the picture quite rapidly reverts to its original uniform deep-blue ground under the effect of aerial reoxidation. Herschel was quite taken with this process, nonetheless, to the extent that he described it in a letter to the readers of The Athenæum, in preference to his negative-working process, as follows:

“Mix together equal parts of the solution of the above-named salt [ammonio-citrate of iron], and of a saturated solution of, not the ferrosesquicyanate of potash (as stated in the Athenæum), but the common yellow ferrocyanate, or as it is called, prussiate of potash.
The result is a very black ink, which, washed over paper, gives it a deep violet-purple colour, and is remarkably sensitive to light – whitening rapidly, and giving positive pictures – the only defect of which (and it is a fatal one for use) is their want of durability, as they fade with darkness in a few hours. And what is very singular, the same paper is again and again susceptible of receiving another and another picture, which die away in like manner without any possibility, so far as I have yet discovered, of arresting them.” (italics in original)

The reported reversibility of this phenomenon is most striking, and it is given further consideration in Appendix III.9 and §9.1 on experiments on the fading of cyanotypes by light. This formulation is, in fact, a very early precursor of the ‘blue layer’ type of blueprint paper that was developed as late as the 1940s (see §4.12) using potassium ferrocyanide instead of ferricyanide. But the fact that Herschel was using brown ammonium ferric citrate meant that free ferric iron caused the formation of much Prussian blue immediately, which could not be removed and enable the use of the paper in a negative–working mode, through the intermediate formation of Prussian white, which reoxidised to Prussian blue. Herschel’s description implies that his chemicals must have been rather impure; when this combination is made with modern reagents, one does not get ‘a very black ink’, only a greenish coloration. Had Herschel’s chemical been of a higher purity (the green variety of ammonium ferric citrate rather than the brown), the benefits of using potassium ferrocyanide might have been discovered much earlier.

4.2 Pellet’s process

Thirty-five years had to elapse following Herschel’s experiments on the positive–working cyanotype process before it was commercially exploited and gained some acceptance in practice. It was promoted by the carbohydrate chemist Henri Pellet, who obtained a British patent in 1877 for a process that bears his name. It was also patented in France in 1877, and in the USA in 1881, under the names of Cyanofer and Papier Commoferrique. The new feature that Pellet introduced to solve the problem of fixing the positive–working process was based on earlier observations by Alphonse Poitevin in 1863, that ferric salts cause gum and similar colloids to harden and become insoluble in water, whereas ferrous salts do not.

Pellet included ferric chloride and gum Arabic in the sensitizer layer, in order to harden it and protect the Prussian blue image formed in the
unexposed regions upon development. In the exposed regions, there were two consequences of the light-induced reduction of iron(III) to iron(II): the gum became re-solubilised and, on development in potassium ferrocyanide, insoluble Prussian white was formed, which could be readily wiped off, thus fixing the image without much disturbing the Prussian blue. Pellet’s successful positive cyanotypes were exhibited in the 1878 International Exhibition held in Paris, and apparently excited the admiration of J M Eder. Pellet’s patents, however, are framed in such vague ‘catch-all’ language that it is not possible to extract from them a clear working method – doubtless, just as he intended. Solutions of many types and compositions are cited as examples. Lietze’s Manual sets out an abridged version of Pellet’s US Patent of 1881; the following brief quotation will convey a taste of its wholly ambiguous style:

“After exposure, it is passed through a bath of yellow prussiate (ferrocyanide of potassium), the bath being concentrated, or dilute, neutral, slightly acid, or slightly alkaline, hot, or cold.”

Given information of this opacity, it comes as no surprise that, at the end of his transcription, Lietze is moved to observe:

“The author has tried Pellet’s process, several times ... without succeeding in producing good prints. The background was always more or less colored.”

Pellet is said to have received much benefit and distinction from his process at the time, but his commercial paper met with varying approbation because the processing was quite complicated and not a little uncertain in its outcome. In addition to Lietze, other contemporary authors have reported on its unsatisfactory performance. By 1943, the process was deemed to be defunct.

In contrast to Pellet’s obfuscated patent specification, two clearly-formulated, but slightly different, versions of Herschel’s positive-working process were subsequently published in many manuals. It should be noted that these recipes are given according to the ‘old fashioned’ method for making up solutions (see Appendix III), but are here converted into metric units.

The first was published by Giuseppe Pizzighelli and Ludwig von Itterheim in 1881. Three stock solutions are required:

A. Gum Arabic: 20 g in 100 cc of water
B. Ammonium ferric citrate: 50 g in 100 cc of water
C. Ferric chloride: 50 g in 100 cc of water.
These three solutions are mixed in order, in the volume ratios:

\[ A : B : C = 20 : 8 : 5 \]

Regarding the coating, the published accounts differ significantly in their advice: the mixture becomes very viscous after a few minutes, in which condition, one source says, it is suitable for coating the paper; however, some accounts assert the contrary and recommend immediate coating before it thickens. Yet another description states that the thick cloudy mixture eventually becomes clear and liquid again, and that this is the time when it is ready for use.

After exposure (which is markedly shorter than for the conventional cyanotype) the image is developed by a solution of potassium ferrocyanide: 20 g in 100 cc of water, which may be brushed on. It is next washed in water and the soluble gum is removed by a soft brush. Finally it is cleared in a solution of dilute hydrochloric acid, washed again and dried.\(^{286}\)

The second process is often attributed to Colonel James Waterhouse,\(^{287}\) but he, in turn, acknowledges that the method was recommended by Fisch.\(^{288}\) According to Duchochois,\(^{289}\) the formula is substantially that devised by Poitevin, with the addition of gum Arabic, according to Pellet's suggestion. Three stock solutions are again combined at the time of coating (the quantities below have been scaled to make them directly comparable with the method described above):

A. Gum Arabic: 26 g in 100 cc of water
B. Tartaric acid: 27 g in 100 cc of water
C. Ferric chloride: 100 g in 100 cc of water\(^{290}\)

These three solutions are mixed in order, in the volume ratios:

\[ A : B : C = 13 : 3 : 2 \]

The mixture is set aside in the dark for 24 hours then diluted with distilled water to a hydrometer reading of specific gravity 1.100, when it is ready for coating. The processing procedure is identical to that given above.

Under the direction of Waterhouse, both these procedures were tested and compared by a Mr Pope in the Survey of India Photographic Office, Calcutta, in 1887–8. In the climate of that country, they found that paper sensitized by the second method had the better keeping properties. The process was quite extensively used in Waterhouse’s office for duplicating maps in the the Survey of India.\(^{291}\) The process was much less common than blueprint, and since it called for greater skill, it tended to be confined to the hands of professional blueprinters.\(^{292}\)
4.3 Survey of negative–working formulae

As was seen in Table 4.1, Herschel’s two recipes for negative cyanotype in his *Memoranda* differ from the proportions that his son Alexander recalled in the 1870s, and these differ again from the proportions that are commonly claimed to be Herschel’s by the principal manuals on the subject. In the absence of further information to resolve this disparity, I felt it necessary to investigate all four formulations in the experimental investigations described in §9.1.

The only significant chemical advance in the entire history of the cyanotype process was brought about by the preparation of an alternative form of ammonium ferric citrate in 1897 by Eduard Valenta (1857–1937). This new substance is green and somewhat acidic, in contrast to the brown, and basic form of ammonium ferric citrate which had been used hitherto; it was claimed that the green form provided a sensitizer eight times faster than the brown. However, the apparent speed depends on the criterion for its assessment; there is less speed difference in the mid–tones than in the shadows where solarisation has an effect. A comparison of the two substances is summarized in Table 4.2.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Brown Salt</th>
<th>Green Salt</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First preparation</td>
<td>ca. 1840</td>
<td>Valenta 1897</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iron content</td>
<td>19% – 28%</td>
<td>14% – 18%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nature of salt</td>
<td>Basic</td>
<td>Acidic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speed of printing</td>
<td>Slow</td>
<td><em>ca</em> 1 stop faster in midtones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reversal or ‘solarization’</td>
<td>Relatively slight</td>
<td>Stronger effect: higher Dmax</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edge etch effect</td>
<td>Distinctive</td>
<td>Absent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colour of image</td>
<td>Dull blue</td>
<td>Brighter blue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Light fading of image</td>
<td>Fairly resistant</td>
<td>More susceptible</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4.2 Comparison of green and brown ammonium ferric citrate as cyanotype sensitizers

The sources of the green salt were limited at first to a few chemical manufacturers in Germany, but it soon became available in the USA, and after 1900 the majority of cyanotypes were probably made by its means. The chemical implications of this discovery are examined in more detail in Appendix III.5. Most 20th century formulations of cyanotype recommend the green form of the salt in preference to the brown.
I have compared the formulae in about sixty published recipes for the cyanotype process, by converting the various archaic expressions for solution strengths into a single system of units: the concentrations of potassium ferricyanide and ammonium ferric citrate are expressed as ‘weight per cent volume’ (\% w/v – see Appendix IV) in the final, mixed sensitizer solution, thereby avoiding the problem of comparing recipes where the two stock solutions are not mixed in equal amounts. The results of this survey take account of the introduction of green ammonium ferric citrate in 1897, and are conveniently displayed in graphical form in the scatter chart, Figure 4.1, which conveys some impression of the range of different proportions that have been recommended over 150 years.

**Fig 4.1 Compositions of historical cyanotype sensitizers**

(\% w/v in final mixed sensitizer)
Apart from three wild ‘outliers’, the recipes using brown ammonium ferric citrate are grouped around average final concentrations of 10% for the brown ammonium ferric citrate and 8% for the potassium ferricyanide. The recipes using the green salt are clustered around final averages of 13% for the green ammonium ferric citrate and 6% for the potassium ferricyanide.

As can be seen from the range of concentrations in the chart, the process appears to work satisfactorily almost regardless of the proportions chosen; presumably there is little difference to the visible outcome – at least so far as these many practitioners were able to judge. This is not particularly surprising when it is realised what a small proportion of the sensitizer originally applied to the paper actually remains as Prussian blue in the final image (see Appendix III).

The flexibility in the formulae using the brown ammonium ferric citrate is born out by the report of Channing Whitaker in 1883, who tested sensitizer solutions with a wide range of final compositions, having the concentration ratio of ammonium ferric citrate to potassium ferricyanide varying from 2% : 20% to 20% : 2%, respectively. On the basis of his results, Whitaker settled on an optimum ratio of 15% : 10%. He remarks that ‘the same blue results with any good proportions of the chemicals named.’ According to Whitaker, excess of the citrate speeds printing but shortens the storage life of the coated paper; excess of the ferricyanide provides a finer quality but greatly lengthens the exposure time (due, as we now know, to the ‘internal filter effect’). It is convenient to mix equal volumes of the two stock solutions; so it was often recommended that the average concentrations of these should be made up as follows:

- 20% w/v for brown ammonium ferric citrate, and
- 16% w/v for potassium ferricyanide;

or

- 26% w/v for green ammonium ferric citrate, and
- 12% w/v for potassium ferricyanide.

The differing ratios of the two components reflect the different iron contents of brown and green forms of ammonium ferric citrate, which are further discussed in Appendix III.4.

Further practical details are given in §7.1, where it is pointed out that a modern reappraisal by Christina Z. Anderson of the classic cyanotype process, using contemporary papers, now favours rather more dilute sensitizers than those described above, to obtain the best image quality.
4.4 Modifications of the cyanotype sensitizer

4.4.1 Robert Hunt’s ‘chromo–cyanotype’

In 1844, Robert Hunt (1807–1887) published a paper entitled ‘Chromo–Cyanotype, a new Photographic Process’. Hunt had been studying the light sensitivity of potassium dichromate, and had already devised several photographic processes based upon it, such as the chromatype, in which it was mixed with copper sulphate. The chromo–cyanotype sensitizer was a mixture of potassium dichromate and potassium ferrocyanide; depending on the developing agent, which could be either ferrous sulphate or ferric sulphate, a positive- or a negative-working image, respectively, was obtained, the latter being of rather stronger quality. Hunt found this difficult to explain at the time, and it may be significant that he made no further mention of this process in his subsequent Manual of 1853. It is now known that potassium dichromate rapidly oxidises potassium ferrocyanide to the ferricyanide; if the effect of light is to cause the photoreduction of this back to the ferrocyanide, possibly assisted by a chromium(IV) or (V) species which would be present, the development phenomena reported by Hunt become comprehensible. A number of cyanotypes feature among Hunt’s early photographic specimens which were re-examined in 1890, when his widow sent a parcel of them to John Spiller.

4.4.2 John Mercer’s ‘chromatic photographs’

John Mercer (1791–1866) was a self-taught colour chemist and calico-printer of Manchester, and is remembered today for inventing in 1850 the process to which his name has been given – that of mercerization, the strengthening and shrinking of cotton by treatment with caustic alkali. I have already noted in §2.2 that he has the distinction of being the earliest observer (in 1828) of the photochemical formation of Prussian blue; but he did not follow up this discovery until 1847, when he evolved the following method for obtaining negative cyanotypes:

“I found that if paper or cotton cloth is smeared with a solution of pernitrate or persulphate of iron with certain quantities of oxalic and tartaric acids, dried in the dark, then exposed to the light (solar), and immediately dipped in solution of red prussiate containing a little free sulphuric acid (preferably free from yellow prussiate), where the light has caused deoxidation, the blue is fixed, and where the peroxide remains unchanged there is no colour. The cloth or paper must be washed immediately in water containing a little sulphuric acid, and afterwards in pure water. The picture is a reverse blue print.”
Mercer’s business commitments allowed him little time for progressing these experiments until 1854, when he began to produce striking, richly-coloured prints on paper, and cotton fabrics especially, which were exhibited at the annual meeting of the British Association for the Advancement of Science, in Leeds in 1858.\textsuperscript{306} The short note in the *Transactions* describing this lecture seems to be the entire extent of Mercer’s publication of his work,\textsuperscript{307} but fortunately Parnell’s biography of Mercer contains details of his formulae,\textsuperscript{308} taken from Mercer’s own notebooks and memoranda.

His preferred process was based on a cyanotype formulation of a singular kind, that seems not to have been employed by anyone else previously – or, indeed, since.\textsuperscript{309} His sensitizer was a solution of ferric...
oxalate, prepared by the oxidation of freshly precipitated ferrous oxalate by nitric acid in the presence of excess oxalic acid. He does not explain his choice of this troublesome preparation, rather than using the universally available ammonium ferric citrate, but it must have been due to his particular interest in printing on textiles rather than on paper. He had already shown that ferric oxalate is a good mordant for dyeing wool and cotton and had introduced its use into his own dyeworks; whereas the citrate is ineffective in not being absorbed by the cellulose fibres.

Following the light exposure, he would sometimes treat the product directly with potassium ferricyanide solution to obtain a cyanotype as described above; but Mercer also adopted another unique procedure: fixation in a bath of sodium arsenate. This disagreeably toxic substance does not appear to have caused him any problems (it was then commonly employed by calico-printers) but it can hardly be recommended for general use today. Its effect is to convert both iron(II) and iron(III) oxalates into the corresponding arsenates, which are insoluble in water and photoinactive, but soluble in acids; thus the image in iron(II) is ‘fixed’, and then it may finally be ‘brought up’ by treatment with an acidified solution of potassium ferricyanide, which dissolves the iron(III) arsenate and converts the iron(II) arsenate into Prussian blue. If this procedure seems convoluted, it cannot be denied that it yielded fine permanent cyanotype images on calico and mercerised cotton, which survive well from 1857 to the present in the Mercer archive of Lancashire County. 

4.4.3 Charles Burnett’s ‘cobalt cyanotype’

Charles John Burnett (1820–1907) is an equivocal figure in the history of photographic processes. His publications attest an eclectic interest in photoactive substances of all kinds, but it is sometimes hard to discriminate in his writings between the results of genuine experiment and the speculations of an inventive mind. As far as contributing to the cyanotype process goes, there is clear evidence that he exhibited a ‘Photograph of Sea–weed’ in Glasgow in September, 1855; the catalogue carries this description, originally contained in a letter from Burnett to William Church:

“Printed in natural colour, by process discovered in March last; paper prepared by ferricyanide[^2] of potassium, development by nitrate of cobalt solution.”
Burnett describes his experiments in more detail in Photographic Notes of 1857, but is obliged there to admit that the ‘cobalt process’ prints, although remarkably beautiful initially, suffered a ‘very marked deterioration’ within a few months.

Another innovation suggested by Burnett in this article is the use of sodium nitroprusside instead of potassium ferricyanide for forming the pigment. Despite the differing names these are very similar compounds as may be seen from the formulae. Burnett states that this salt “by itself gives a blue and white picture” and when mixed with ammonium ferric oxalate the resulting sensitizer yields a “dull green” image. The present writer has confirmed these claims but my investigation found a number of disadvantages – such as crystallization and very slow printing – which do not recommend these as viable printing procedures, especially in view of the toxicity and expense of sodium nitroprusside. Apparently Burnett exhibited prints made by these methods in 1859 at the London Photographic Society. However in 1899 a US patent claimed that soluble nitroprussides could be combined with ammonium ferric citrate to give sensitizers yielding brown or black images – a surprising colour. This is still an area with potential for some experimentation.

4.4.4 Other iron(II) sensitizers
Several alternatives to ammonium ferric citrate as the light-sensitive component of the cyanotype have been suggested over the years. Ammonium ferric tartrate was first tried by Herschel, who called it “ammonio-tartrate of iron” or “ATI” in his memoranda, but he used it principally for his “breath print” process in silver and for attempting to make images in mercury – his unsuccessful kelainotype process. The corresponding potassium ferric citrate salt was re-introduced in 1892 by an author who admitted that he had not read Herschel’s work. No particular benefit has been claimed to result from the use of ferri-tartrates, and they are rather uncommon and ill-characterised chemicals.

In 1900 the brothers Lumiére found that ferric sucrate, made from cane sugar, is light-sensitive and has good keeping properties; a paper coated with this salt and exposed in the usual manner could be developed as a negative or positive cyanotype in potassium ferricyanide or ferrocyanide solutions. This process does not seem to have been followed up.
Valenta, in 1917, reported the preparation of ammonium ferric glycolate, and found that paper sensitized with a mixture of this and potassium ferricyanide yielded prints of a

“...fine intense indigo–blue colour, such as are not yielded with ferric ammonium citrate. But unfortunately the sensitized paper has exceedingly poor keeping quality, fogging in the course of a day or two in the dark ... It was not found possible to avoid this drawback by addition of oxidising substances to the sensitizer.” 320

The likelihood is that the quality of paper at that time may well have been inferior, and impurities may have been responsible for the reported rapid degradation. In view of this possibility, this novel photosensitive salt, and the cyanotypes that it furnishes, would seem to deserve re-examination.

The use of ferric oxalate as a cyanotype sensitizer has already been mentioned in §4.4.2, and will arise again in §4.4.5, but this salt is highly variable in its properties and composition, and is troublesome to obtain; a much better alternative is the well–characterised substance, ammonium ferric oxalate, which can be widely purchased and does offer some real advantages over the traditional citrate, as will be described separately in §7.2.4. The use of ammonium ferric oxalate for ‘pictorial’ quality cyanotype sensitizers has been proposed in the past (§2.9), but when mixed with potassium ferricyanide, the sparingly soluble salt, potassium ferric oxalate, tends to crystallise out,321 ruining the coat of sensitizer. The only procedure suggested to counter this was the wasteful one in which the ‘potential’ image was formed in ammonium ferric oxalate by itself, and then after exposure developed in a separate bath of potassium ferricyanide solution. Hermann Halleur in _The Art of Photography_ of 1854 described this negative–working cyanotype, and recommended exposing “oxalate of sesqui–oxide of iron and ammonia” (i.e. ammonium ferric oxalate) alone, then developing it by brushing over a solution of potassium ferricyanide.322 Matthew Carey Lea used this method of making cyanotypes to avoid the crystallization problem, and described it to the Annual Meeting of the British Association in 1863.323 Although this method was also advocated with enthusiasm in an annual editorial review by Traill–Taylor in 1889,324 it never passed into general practice, probably because the development bath rapidly becomes contaminated in use with excess sensitizer and precipitated Prussian blue, which will stain the print – this is clearly uneconomic in view of the price of potassium ferricyanide. In 1921 the claims of a German patent that ammonium ferric
oxalate could be employed in the sensitizer in place of the citrate were tested experimentally by Valenta, who came to the conclusion that the claims were unjustified and it was inferior because of the crystallization problem. However, it will be shown in §7.3 how ammonium ferric oxalate can be used in a modern improved cyanotype process.

A related variant to this is the employment of the unusual cation in guanidinium ferrioxalate for the cyanotype sensitizer. A US patent of 1941 claimed that this sensitizer had a better shelf life, but it does not seem to have been taken up for cyanotype, although it has been employed recently for an iron–silver process. From time to time a number of additives have been suggested to improve the performance of the traditional sensitizer, but these proposals are rarely accompanied by direct experimental comparisons to demonstrate their putative benefits. However, in 1955 Hnatek published a detailed investigation of the enhancement of the sensitivity of brown ammonium ferric citrate by the addition of carboxylic acids. He found that oxalic or tartaric acids increased the sensitivity and printing range considerably, but that citric or acetic acids had no significant effect. Most acids will assist clearing because a low pH prevents hydrolysis of the iron(III) to its insoluble yellow hydrated oxide. Moreover the light sensitivity of ammonium ferric citrate has been found to pass through a maximum at pH 3 to 4. The presence of a small amount of dichromate assists sensitizer stability and shelf–life by preventing premature formation of Prussian blue. Many of these findings probably stem from endeavours to improve the characteristics of commercial blueprint papers which will be considered later in §4.11.

4.4.5 Terry King’s ‘cyanotype rex’
In 2004 the then Chairman of the Historical Group of the Royal Photographic Society, the late Terry King, announced his ‘Cyanotype Rex’ process which claimed “modern improvements” both on the traditional cyanotype and the New cyanotype of 1995 described in §7.3. The first of these improvements was the use of ferric oxalate, rather than ammonium ferric citrate or ammonium ferric oxalate, as the sensitizer. The author seemed unaware that ferric oxalate had been employed by Mercer in the 1850s (§4.4.2) and that its use for negative-working cyanotype was also clearly described in the British Journal of Photography of 1874; moreover, ferric oxalate eventually became a common ingredient in the many patented blueprint formulations of the 1930s.
However, the availability of ferric oxalate today is very limited: its preparation is beset with uncertainty over the nature and purity of the product and, owing to this variability of the substance's composition, few fine chemicals houses will stock it at an acceptable price. Ferric oxalate is a polymorphic and notoriously 'ill-characterised' compound, reluctant to dissolve in water, unstable when persuaded to, and it gives a solution that is limited in shelf-life and unreliable in practice. Its present-day use for alternative printing processes is further disadvantaged by its monopolistic price, which is many times that of pure ammonium ferric oxalate, the preferred, commercially-available photosensitive salt.

King's second improvement was to adopt the misapprehended procedure attributed to Herschel, discussed above in §2.9, of exposing the ferric oxalate sensitizer coating alone, then applying the potassium ferricyanide in a separate development bath. The serious print-maker will find this method to be both expensive and wasteful, as mentioned in §4.4.5, because the ferricyanide developer bath soon accumulates a staining impurity of Prussian blue, which causes a rapid fall-off in the quality of successive prints put through it, and it must therefore be frequently replaced. A litre of 10% potassium ferricyanide solution may cost over £5.

The third “improvement” offered by the ‘Cyanotype Rex’ process is stated thus:

“Where traditional cyanotypes can prove difficult to tone, the Cyanotype Rex tones beautifully in alkaline solutions of varying strength...”

It has long been recognised that the destruction of Prussian blue by alkalies is far from “difficult”, so there seems to be little novelty in this “improvement”. The well-known historical toning procedures for cyanotypes are described in detail in §8.

King’s policy of ‘separate development’ can, however, justly claim one advantage: an increase in printing speed. In a conventional mixed cyanotype sensitizer the ferricyanide ion inevitably absorbs some of the actinic blue and UVA light non-productively, owing to its strong absorption band peaking at 420 nm, which thereby lowers the sensitivity (Appendix III.2). By placing the ferricyanide entirely in a development bath, this ‘internal filter effect’, as it is known, is eliminated, with a consequent restoration of speed amounting to about two or three stops (4–8x) at most. This was hailed as a “huge improvement in speed” for the
Cyanotype Rex process, which was said to provide “viable camera-speed photography” – a claim that calls for careful examination. Where Maunder and King claim in their articles to have achieved:

“...exposure times well down to a minute.”
“...exposures cut down to a few seconds or minutes.”

it transpires that they are being economical with the truth. They do not make it clear that these times refer to contact exposures, which require roughly a hundredth of the in-camera exposure time – see §4.6. Contact exposures of a minute agree with the theoretical calculations of §3.6, and with the experience of anyone who has made a new cyanotype (§7.3), which takes about one or two minute’s exposure to the sun for a photogram (in contrast to the traditional sensitizer formula, which may take 10–20 minutes). In-camera exposure of the new cyanotype sensitizer is found to take a few hours at f/3.5 to produce a negative having a realistic density range, according to the tests shown below in §4.6.

King’s publication in the BJP does not disclose the camera exposure of his 10x8 inch test negative, but it is believed to have been in the order of an hour at maximum lens aperture, which suggests that there is actually little point in trying to produce cyanotype negatives in the camera. An hour is hardly a useful exposure duration for portraiture, living people, or subjects in any state of motion, so the claim that these processes are “viable in-camera technologies” that will “revolutionise photography” is an absurd exaggeration. The only evidence adduced to support Maunder’s optimistic assertion that:

“In camera exposures of around a minute appear achievable.”

is his deceptive camera negative consisting of a pale blue sky, with silhouetted plants and windowframe, exposed for 5 minutes at f/2.8. Careful inspection suggests that this is about 4 or 5 stops underexposed, so the proper exposure for this negative should be 2–3 hours, consistent with the calculations above.

Finally we note King’s announcement that he applied the philosophical working method that he called “retro-invention” to discover the advantages of using ammonium ferric oxalate in the process he named ‘Cyanotype Rex (2)’. As we saw in §4.4.4, this was first published by Hermann Halleur just 160 years ago: “retro–invented” indeed!
4.4.6 Cyanotype using uranium and vanadium salts
Among the many variations suggested for the cyanotype process, one which has receded into obsolescence, probably for safety reasons, is the addition of uranium(VI) salts to the sensitizer.\textsuperscript{340} This was claimed to enhance sensitivity, and to speed up printing by catalysing the photoreduction of iron(III) to iron(II). Tests by this author have shown that addition of uranyl nitrate at the 1% to 2% level to both ferrioxalate and ferricitrate sensitizers does indeed increase speed of printing by about one stop (a factor of 2x) but further increases in the uranium concentration bring little additional advantage, so its use is not worth the toxic risk.\textsuperscript{341} Another cyanotype additive for which a 4x speed increase was claimed is vanadium pentoxide, as described in a 1924 US patent.\textsuperscript{342}

A form of so-called ‘uranium cyanotype’ (a serious misnomer) or, more accurately, ‘uranotype’ should also be mentioned here, in which the sensitizer consists entirely of a uranium(VI) salt, which is transformed by light to uranium(IV). Treatment after exposure in a development bath of potassium ferricyanide yields an image in red uranyl ferrocyanide, a process which was originated by Burnett.\textsuperscript{343} Examples of contemporary users in the 21\textsuperscript{st} century include alternative process artists Robert W. Schramm,\textsuperscript{344} Bob Kiss,\textsuperscript{345} and the late Blake Ferris (Fig. 4.3).\textsuperscript{346}
The rich red colour and relative stability of uranyl ferrocyanide have also suggested the use of this substance as a toner of silver–gelatin materials,\textsuperscript{347} and of platinotypes, where the action is catalytic.\textsuperscript{348} By treating an uncleared platinum print, which still contains iron(III), with this toner, the two pigments, uranyl ferrocyanide and Prussian blue, one red and one blue, are formed simultaneously, and the mixtures of them can therefore produce a whole gamut of unattractive false colours superimposed upon the long–suffering platinum image.\textsuperscript{349}

4.5 Cyanotype diapositives on glass and film

From the end of the 19\textsuperscript{th} century, when the ‘magic lantern’ enjoyed great popularity, it is not surprising to find published instructions for the making of cyanotypes on glass slides. According to one account, the procedure is simply to coat a glass plate with gelatin and, when dry, immerse it in a conventional cyanotype sensitiser.\textsuperscript{350} A more detailed procedure starts with old, unused (and probably fogged) silver–gelatin plates and describes how the silver salts are first removed by a thiosulphate fixer bath, and the gelatin layer then hardened by chrome alum. If the plates already have a silver image, they can be cleaned by a ferricyanide/thiosulphate bath (‘Farmer’s Reducer’). After washing, the hardened gelatin–coated plate is soaked in a conventional cyanotype sensitiser for several hours, then carefully wiped and dried. Exposure and processing is similar to that of a conventional paper cyanotype. The transparencies are said “to show remarkably fine detail when compared with an ordinary blueprint.” \textsuperscript{351} George Brown, in his treatise on \textit{Ferric and Heliographic Processes}, also gives detailed instructions for making cyanotype transparencies on glass and translucent paper. He prefers iodine cyanide to Farmer’s reducer for removing old silver images from spoiled lantern plates. He also provides a recipe for making transparencies using collodion, instead of gelatin, as the binder vehicle for the iron sensitiser.\textsuperscript{352} The problem of coating glass to make it receptive to aqueous sensitizers has recently been addressed by Bill Winkler using some modern chemistry – an amino–alkoxysilane to bind to the glass surface, and mediate a coating of PVA and organic hydrophilic colloid such as starch which can absorb the sensitiser.\textsuperscript{353} Winkler uses the method for platinum–palladium printing, but it should be adaptable to cyanotype, provided it is non–alkaline.

If a flexible substrate (plastic film) is acceptable, rather than a rigid one (glass), then the transparency films intended for making digital
negatives (e.g. those from Pictorico or PermaJet) will be found to take aqueous iron–based sensitizer solutions very well, and the zeolyte coating holds the image nanoparticles without 'bleeding'. Diapositive contact prints have been made by the author on Pictorico OHP transparency film coated with new cyanotype sensitizer.

Tonalities are very good, the only problem is in laying down the coat evenly: the usual glass rod coater is unsuitable, suffering intolerable friction on the ceramic–treated surface of the film. A squeegee or foam brush is better, and a straight Teflon (PTFE) rod makes an acceptable coating instrument for Pictorico – smooth and clean with no friction, although its hydrophobic nature is a disadvantage.\footnote{354}

![Fig. 4.4 Mike Ware cyanotype diapositive coated on Pictorico film](image)

There is one consequence of using plastic film as a substrate for alternative printing whose possible importance remains to be tested: the plastic film is presumably much more dimensionally stable than cellulose paper under wet processing – so it might prove a useful substrate for those who favour multiple coating and developing for their image–making, as in 3–colour processes. If it works for new cyanotype, there is no reason why it should not also work for platinum, palladium and other siderotype processes. It also has the advantage that this substrate can be
used 'out of the box' with no pretreatment at all, because it does not contain any alkaline buffer.

### 4.6 Cyanotype negatives made in camera

Of all the incident light scattered by a photographic subject, only a small fraction is captured by a camera lens and then projected onto the photographically sensitized surface. It can be calculated by geometrical optics that this fraction of captured light produces an intensity at the focal plane in the order of one hundredth to one thousandth that of the light incident upon the subject, depending on the lens aperture; it then follows, assuming that the law of reciprocity holds good, that an in-camera exposure will take about one hundred to one thousand times longer than the direct contact exposure to the sun's rays needed for the same sensitized surface, see Appendix III.2.

The necessary in-camera exposure time is proportional to the square of the lens 'aperture' (f/stop number) – this will not surprise anyone who understands the physical principles of photography. The light intensity for in-camera exposure is given by the Standard Camera Image Illumination Equation, also known as the Jones–Condit Equation, which connects subject luminance with image forming illumination at the camera focal plane, details of which can be found in standard texts.\(^{355}\) An estimate of the ratio of exposure times, in-camera : contact exposure, can be calculated by rearranging the Jones–Condit equation and entering plausible numerical values for various camera and lens parameters, to get the constant of proportionality. The desired ratio is then found to be given approximately by \(5 \times \text{the square of the 'aperture' (or f/stop).}\)

Here is a table for this ratio:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>f/stop (A)</th>
<th>2.8</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5.6</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>11</th>
<th>16</th>
<th>etc</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ratio (5A(^2))</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>160</td>
<td>320</td>
<td>640</td>
<td>1280</td>
<td>etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(This is for a lens focussed at infinity. If focussed for 1:1 reproduction, multiply the ratios by 4. NB this is only 'order-of-magnitude' calculation – maybe good to a factor of two or three either way.)

In-camera cyanotype photographs as described by King in §4.4.5, therefore require exposures in the order of hours, and are consequently more difficult to make and more limited in application than photograms or prints by direct contact.\(^{356}\) Moreover, cyanotype negatives can only produce very dingy positive images when printed with the alternative printing processes, which are only sensitive to UVA: the lack of contrast is due to the fact that the negative is blue, and therefore has low optical
density in the operative region of the spectrum. The tonal rendering is also unbalanced, since the spectral response of the original sensitizer is almost entirely confined to the ultraviolet and blue wavelengths, so objects like green foliage do not register in the negative, see Fig. 4.5.

An alternative to trying to print such cyanotype negatives was devised in 2002 by Dr. John Beaver who used the digital manipulation of scanning the cyanotype negative and then inverting it tonally in Photoshop, to produce the ‘mysterious, primitive’ images that can be seen on his web pages.357 This procedure was later adopted by J.E. Piper, with the results that can be seen on the Alternative Photography website.358

Fig. 4.5 Mike Ware, New Cyanotype negative 6x9 cm on Pictorico made with an in-camera exposure of 5 hours at f/3.5

The question is sometimes raised, especially by newcomers to alternative processes, whether it is possible to make cyanotype negatives in a pinhole camera. The feasibility of this is easily assessed by estimating a rough figure for the duration of the exposure, assuming the most favourable conditions. The aperture, A, or "f/stop number" of a pinhole camera is the ratio of the “focal length”, f, (the distance from pinhole to film) to the diameter, d, of the pinhole: \( A = \frac{f}{d} \). For most pinhole cameras, values of A will fall in the region of 100 to 1000; a value of 200 will be assumed here, for convenience in the arithmetic.

It is further assumed that the New Cyanotype sensitizer (§7.4) would be used because it is 4 to 8 times faster than the Traditional formula. It has been found that a camera image can just be obtained on a New Cyanotype sensitizer at a lens aperture of \( A = 4 \) ("f/4") with a sunny exposure of an hour as minimum – whereas the traditional formula takes a day. Exposure is proportional to \( A^2 \), so, for an aperture of \( A = 200 \) and assuming the Bunsen–Roscoe law of reciprocity holds (§3.6), the
exposure duration would have to be at least \((200/4)^2 = 2500\) hours. Given about 8 hours of sun per day in an ideal sunny climate, this amounts to an exposure of about one year. But that is to ignore the phenomenon of reciprocity failure, which would, in all likelihood, ensure that no image at all is ever formed. It also ignores the probability of the sensitizer becoming chemically fogged. Even assuming the most favourable scenario then, the conclusion is clear: it won’t work! This conclusion has recently received some experimental support – of a negative kind.\(^{359}\) The only image that might be obtained in this way would be of the sun’s disc itself, which is sufficiently intense to produce, in a day, a streak across the sensitized paper.

### 4.7 Printing cyanotypes by projection

A related optical question which is commonly raised is the feasibility of projection printing onto cyanotype paper using a photographic enlarger. Obviously conventional enlargers will not do because the light source contains little or no UV, and even if the tungsten bulb is replaced with a UVA light source, the thick condenser lenses and enlarger lens will normally attenuate this considerably. It is possible that cyanotypes may be made by projection using the kind of ‘solar enlarger’ once employed commercially for making enlarged Platinotypes, because the two processes have comparable sensitivity, but this technology is cumbersome – requiring a heliostat to keep tracking the sun – and the exposures will be long – in the order of hours. Enlargement onto the platinotype process – which is comparable in speed to cyanotype – has been investigated in modern times by Greta Glaser, who found that exposures of two hours provided only moderate image densities.

Recently it has been demonstrated that a powerful and efficient LED light source can enable A4 sized enlargements from 35 mm film negatives to be printed directly onto the more sensitive ‘blue layer’ cyanotype paper (§4.12) with surprisingly short exposures of only 20 minutes. Since there can be little or no UV light emitted by the light source, it seems likely that the absence of an ‘internal filter effect’ in the sensitizer due to the use of ferrocyanide, rather than the usual ferricyanide which absorbs at 420 nm (Appendix III.2), provides a greater sensitivity for this type of paper to the blue region of the spectrum.\(^{360}\)
4.8 Cyanotypes on ceramics

The use of cyanotype on ceramic substrates evokes reminiscences of the attractive and celebrated blue Delftware. Regrettably this procedure is limited by the fact that if Prussian blue is fired under a glaze it will decompose thermally around 200°C, with the evolution of poisonous cyanogen and hydrogen cyanide gases, destroying the blue and leaving only weak brown 'iron earth' coloured images (iron oxides). However, the sensitizer is easily imbibed into a bisque–fired ceramic surface, such as possessed by unglazed tile bodies. This is still very absorbent and needs its porosity to be restricted with a sizing agent, such as gelatin.

Dutch designer and artist Sarah van Gameren of Studio Glithero in North London has succeeded in making plant photograms in cyanotype on tiles and effectively clearing and sealing the image surface for permanence, possibly with an acrylic varnish. The Studio has devised means to shape their botanical specimens onto the curved surfaces of earthenware, so they can also offer uniquely decorated blueware vases and lampshades.

Fig. 4.6 Blueware vases by Studio Glithero

It is worth warning that cyanotype does not work on plaster surfaces treated with 'gesso' which contains chalk – calcium carbonate – an
alkaline substance very hostile to cyanotypes, which are destroyed by alkali (§9.2). The inappropriateness of this substrate for cyanotype is also the reason why Prussian blue pigment was not used by artists for fresco painting.

4.9 Cyanotypes on fabrics and textiles

One of the earliest commercial uses found for Prussian blue itself was for dyeing all kinds of traditional fabrics – cotton, linen, silk and wool – in a range of shades of blue, controlled by the details of the process. In the industrial practice of the nineteenth-century, two baths were generally used: the first was a solution of a ferric salt, usually the nitrate or chloride, which mordanted strongly to the fibres of the fabric, then, after rinsing, it was followed by an acidic bath of potassium ferrocyanide, which formed the Prussian blue pigment \textit{in situ}.\textsuperscript{363}

Of all the possible methods of printing photographic images, the iron-based processes would seem to be the best-suited for delicate textiles, because they do not employ a sizing agent or binder medium such as gelatin or gum, that would stiffen the flexibility and spoil the ‘drape’ of the fabric. I have already described (§4.4.2) how John Mercer discovered at an early stage that textiles can be impregnated with cyanotype sensitizers to receive decorative photographs or photograms. The process was popular,\textsuperscript{364} and continues to be used successfully by many present-day practitioners, such as the British textile artists Wendy Wilson Barbara Jones and Ruth Brown, the quilter Cathy Corbishley Michel, and the American artist and designer, Jan Arnow.\textsuperscript{365} Wilson has found that the mordanting of sensitizer to cotton and silk fibres appears to be better with ferrioxalate, rather than with ferricitrate sensitizers.\textsuperscript{366}

In the past, a bath of potassium dichromate was commonly recommended as part of the wet-processing of fabric cyanotypes, both for development (reoxidation), and reputedly for improving the light-fastness of the image. Dichromate could act either by destroying those potential reducing agents that would assist fading, or possibly by incorporating itself into the Prussian blue. However, the toxic, allergenic and carcinogenic hazards now recognised in dichromates make this practice particularly inadvisable for prints on fabrics, which may come into contact with human skin. There is at least one well-documented case-history of an artist working with cyanotype on textiles who suffered considerable ill-health as a direct consequence of using dichromate baths.\textsuperscript{367}
The process of making cyanotypes on fabrics to provide photographic decoration for quilt-covers and cushions became quite popular in North America in the period 1880–1920, and even built up to a minor industry, as is evidenced by at least one commercial catalogue, from the Nashua Pillow Company of New Hampshire, which offered for sale several cushion covers illustrated with cyanotype scenes of natural beauty or national and patriotic significance. The catalogue proudly declares that:

“There is no happier combination of ornamentation and usefulness for the Home Beautiful, than a Blue Print Sofa Pillow Top.” 368

Fig. 4.7 Cyanotype quilt 1902.
(Collection of Alstead Historical Society, New Hampshire, USA)
The Nashua Pillow Company also offered a service for transferring the customer’s own negatives into cyanotype prints on prepared fabric. The assertion is made in this catalogue that, in terms of brilliance and permanence, the cyanotype prints on cloth were superior to those on paper, although it is hard to understand the basis of this claim. A fine specimen of this genre, which is probably one of the Nashua Pillow Company’s products, can be seen in the collection of the National Gallery of Canada: a cushion cover bearing twelve cyanotypes of unidentified coastal landscapes. The rediscovery of other specimens of the Nashua Pillow Company’s products has been recently reported. The company also offered its sensitized blueprint cloth for sale in 1900, under the registered trade mark of ‘Silkdown’, at 75 cents per square yard.

The tradition of fabric printing in cyanotype was continued in the USA by Barbara Hewitt, a specialist supplier of sensitized textiles who founded with her husband, John Basye, the Californian company of Blueprints–Printables in 1983, and published an attractive craft handbook on the subject of Blueprints on Fabric. On their retirement, the company was carried on by Linda Stemer of Vashon Island WA, as Blueprints on Fabric and it continues to supply this market in the USA today. In the UK, Ruth Brown was also inspired by Barbara Hewitt’s artistic enterprise with textiles, and founded her own cyanotype fabric printing business, Stone Creek Textiles, at Sunk Island, Yorkshire, publishing her own useful contemporary handbook on the subject. The history of the application of cyanotype to fabrics has recently been reviewed in the Journal of the Surface Design Association. The modern use of cyanotype for illustrated quilt–making has been reviewed by Dr. Cathy Corbishley Michel at a recent seminar of the British Quilt Study Group. In addition to historic examples, and her own work on depicting the historical record photographs of polar exploration, Michel highlights the work of several contemporay quilters and textile artists using the medium, including Tafi Brown and Barbara Hewitt in the USA, and Ruth Brown, Pauline Burbidge, Linda Barlow, and Dorothy Stapleton in the UK. Shih Wei Chieh in Taiwan has used a laser to project a cyanotype image onto delicate fabrics, avoiding any compression by contact; see §6.4.4

4.10 Gel lithography: ‘true–to–scale’ process

The invention of this photomechanical process for offset duplication of plans and drawings has been attributed to A. Tellkampf and A. Traube, who obtained a German patent in 1905. However, Nadeau in his
Encyclopedia cites evidence that the idea was conceived by Félix J. Dorel of England in 1900 who licensed the secret process in 1904,\textsuperscript{377} and later re-patented it in the USA.\textsuperscript{378} The explanation for its alternative name ‘the true-to-scale process’ is that no wet-baths were involved in processing the reprographic image, so there was no dimensional change in the paper substrate, and copies of exactly the original size were obtained – a characteristic of great importance for the accurate reproduction of scale drawings, without the necessity to annotate them with dimensions. Shrinkage of prints during wet processing had previously been one of the chief difficulties besetting the photo-printer.

Gel lithography was also variously known in its hey-day by several proprietary names: Lithoprint, Ferro-gelatine, Fotol, Ordoverax, Velograph or Fulgur printing. The method took an over-exposed, but unprocessed negative blueprint image as its source, which was lightly squeegeed into contact with a matrix of moist gelatine, known as a “graph”, containing a ferrous salt. Diffusion of excess potassium ferricyanide out of the lightly-exposed and unexposed regions of the cyanotype (the image shadows) formed Prussian blue in the gelatin matrix, with the effect of hardening it locally (see §4.1.1), where it became receptive to a greasy lithographers’ ink, which was still repelled by the moisture in the unhardened regions of the gelatin. After a minute or so, the cyanotype was peeled off and the jelly surface inked with a roller. About 25 positive copies of the original image could be ‘pulled’, using little pressure, from the jelly, which was re-inked between each.\textsuperscript{379} There are a number of fine points of detail to observe in formulating the gelatine mass and the cyanotype paper if best results are to be obtained.\textsuperscript{380} This first successful ‘dry copying’ process became the preferred method for reproducing engineering drawings and it was a major reprographic process until the 1950s,\textsuperscript{381} but then rendered obsolete by the advent of diazo and electrostatic reprographic methods.

As it was originally formulated, the process is only suitable for line drawings and cannot adequately reproduce the continuous tonal gradation of a photograph, in the way the collotype process, for example, can. However, a number of modifications were introduced, using a half-tone screen to enable pictorial matter to be reproduced by either positive- or negative-working processes,\textsuperscript{382} and most recently Roger Farnham of Glasgow has created very effective halftone gel-lithographic prints by adding a grain screen to the image in Photoshop.\textsuperscript{383}
A similar principle of colloid hardening by the diffusion of ferric salts underlies the ‘Iron–Ozobrome Process’, which also takes a cyanotype as its starting point. This is first hydrolysed by a dilute sodium hydroxide bath to ferric hydroxide, then squeegeed into contact with a carbon tissue which has been immersed in a bath of dilute sulphuric acid and formaldehyde. Over a period of about an hour the ferric ions in the cyanotype are rendered soluble by the acid and diffuse into and harden the gelatin of the carbon tissue in the shadow regions of the image, so providing a positive-working process. After separation, the carbon tissue can be developed in the usual way. Another variation is to coat the ferric hydroxide image with pigmented gelatin, and when dry, to immerse in the acid/formaldehyde bath, then develop with warm water.

4.11 Commercial blueprint papers

The great majority of commercial blueprint papers were made for plan-copying – i.e. ‘line’ work – which naturally calls for contrasty characteristics rather different from those desirable in papers intended for continuous-tone pictorial purposes. The reader is referred to §5.11 for an account of the high quality cyanotype papers that were used for illustrative and documentary picture-making ca, 1894, notably from the A.S. Aloe Company.

Commercial blueprint papers intended for plan-copying will now be considered only in outline, but insofar as they did find some pictorial use, it will be appropriate to summarise the history of their development. Actual samples of the original “Reliance” brand of ‘blue process papers’ manufactured and marketed by the Schindler Brothers of New York,
dating from 1891, have recently been rediscovered by Adrienne Lundgren and Katherine Mintie in the archives of the Library of Congress, providing information on paper weights and formulae.\textsuperscript{386}

The paramount considerations for blueprint copying were expediency in exposure and processing, high contrast, and good shelf-life. The properties of an ideal copying paper were described as follows:\textsuperscript{387}

1. It should be as sensitive as possible, being fast enough to print by electric arc light, or mercury vapour lamp, within a few seconds.
2. The contrast should be high, ‘line’ images with an intense blue, and whites that clear rapidly in the wet processing, which was usually carried out in a continuously–operating machine.
3. The blue colour should retain its quality even when over–exposed.
4. There must be no ‘bleeding’ of colour from the exposed portions into the unexposed white lines, even when paper is over–exposed.
5. The paper should remain stable on long storage, for two or three months, without the unexposed portions developing blue pigment.

In practice, using the customary formulations, these requirements proved to be mutually conflicting. The ferricyanide component absorbs blue and ultra–violet light strongly, but contributes little itself to the light–sensitivity, and therefore acts as an ‘internal filter’, attenuating the printing light to no good effect. In order to achieve high speed (criterion 1) the ferricyanide concentration must be kept low, with the result that the maximum intensity of blue (criterion 2) is limited. Necessarily, it follows that the light–sensitive component, ferricitrate or ferrioxalate, will be present in great excess over the ferricyanide; with the undesirable consequence that even slight over–exposure will generate excess ferrous iron, which washes over into the unexposed portions causing ‘bleeding’ (criterion 4), and in the exposed regions it adversely affects the quality of the colour, giving it a greyish cast, called ‘burning out’ (criterion 3). In order to improve the keeping and washing properties of the paper (criterion 5), substances such as alkali metal oxalates, citrates and phosphates were added to the sensitizer mixture, but their presence diminished the sensitivity (criterion 1) and degraded the intensity and quality of the colour (criteria 2 and 3).

As a result, the sensitizers employed for early copying papers embodied a compromise between these conflicting requirements; they were only capable of relatively low maximum density – just a mid–blue sufficing for plan blueprints. In view of this lack of density and the high
contrast, photography texts often warned the amateur against the use of commercial copying paper for pictorial purposes.

The formulations used by early manufacturers of blueprint paper were generally withheld as commercial secrets, and even today they are reluctant to release explicit recipes. Fortunately, there are at least two published accounts of early formulae that are readily accessible: by Robert E. Kwech, a chemist of the Huey Blue Printing Company of Chicago, and by K Willcock.

The paper employed for coating had a high proportion of rag stock, usually between 50% and 100%, and was surface-sized with ‘animal glue’ or gelatin, but not highly calendered. Kwech describes manufacturers of the time (1924) adopting four varieties of blue-printing formulae, depending on the speed of the final product, which he designates as ‘Regular’, ‘X’, ‘XX’, and ‘XXX’, requiring relative exposures of 4 minutes, 2 minutes, 45 seconds and 15 seconds to bright sunlight. The sensitizers for these are summarised in Table 4.3 which gives both the proportions of the various stock solutions that were taken, and the resulting final concentrations (as % w/v) of the ingredients in the mixed sensitizer.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Solute</th>
<th>Parts by volume (final % w/v) concentration</th>
<th>Regular</th>
<th>Paper X</th>
<th>Grade XX</th>
<th>XXX</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ammonium ferric citrate</td>
<td>26%</td>
<td>4 parts (16)</td>
<td>4 parts (11.6)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3 parts (10.4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ammonium ferric citrate</td>
<td>16%</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>4 parts (6.4)</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sodium ferric oxalate</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3 parts (3.3)</td>
<td>4 parts (4)</td>
<td>1 part (1.3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ammonium ferric oxalate</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1 part (1.3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ferric chloride</td>
<td>7%</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0.5part (0.35)</td>
<td>1 part (0.93)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Citric acid</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0.5part (0.6)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxalic acid</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0.5part (0.5)</td>
<td>1 part (1.3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potassium ferricyanide</td>
<td>16%</td>
<td>2.5parts (6.2)</td>
<td>1.5part (2.7)</td>
<td>1 part (1.6)</td>
<td>0.5part (1.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exposure to bright sunlight</td>
<td>4 mins</td>
<td>2 mins</td>
<td>45 secs</td>
<td>15 secs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4.3 Commercial blueprint sensitizers – Kwech’s formulae
The ‘Regular’ solution was claimed to be Herschel’s, and deemed most satisfactory for photographic purposes. The faster papers were intended for continuous printing in arc–light machines, and were suitable only for line subjects. The recipes for these tend to be more dilute, (the concentration of ferricyanide has to be very low – about 1 to 2% – to minimise the internal filter effect) and to contain some ferric ammonium oxalate (which is more light–sensitive than the citrate), and even some ferric chloride.

The complexity of these recipes is almost Byzantine, and it is hard to credit that the formulations have actually been optimized by testing all the variables. The use of citric acid as a ‘clearing agent’ will be noted; the implications of this for image fading will be discussed later. In 1935, K Willcock published three recipes for blueprint sensitizer solutions suitable for a commercial coating machine: ‘Herschel’s’, a ‘medium–rapid’, and an ‘ultra–rapid’ formula; these were reprinted by Neblette in the 4th edition of his treatise in 1942. They differ in some respects from Kwech’s formulae, in containing gum Arabic, and may be compared in Table 4.4 where the concentrations have been converted to the percentages of the components present in the final mixed solutions.

The faster the blueprint paper, the worse were its keeping properties. There is an extensive patent literature, claiming a variety of improvements to blueprint papers, which has been summarised by Kosar, whose monograph should be consulted for a full list of references. The criteria for such improvements were usually dictated by commercial factors, such as the shelf–life of the paper, speed of exposure, or expediency of wet–processing, rather than by consideration of its pictorial qualities.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Component</th>
<th>Herschel</th>
<th>Rapid</th>
<th>Ultra–rapid</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ammonium ferric citrate</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>4.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ammonium ferric oxalate</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sodium ferric oxalate</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>3.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ferric oxalate</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>0.16</td>
<td>0.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gum Arabic</td>
<td>1.9</td>
<td>1.9</td>
<td>1.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potassium ferricyanide</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>2.3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4.4 Commercial blueprint sensitizers – Willcock’s formulae
(Figures are % w/v in final mixed sensitizer)
Processing of commercial papers usually entailed ‘development’ in a dilute (ca. 7%) dichromate bath rather than just pure water,\textsuperscript{392} to re-oxidise any solarized Prussian white rapidly back to Prussian blue, and possibly to improve the light-fastness of the image (see Chapter 7). A preferable oxidant, which was marketed under a proprietary name as a blueprint ‘developer’, was urea peroxide;\textsuperscript{393} it has none of the toxic disadvantages of dichromate, and in solid form is more convenient to distribute than hydrogen peroxide solution, which may also be used, but there are serious safety reservations about the storage of such organic peroxides, which present an explosion hazard.

4.12 Type B blueprint papers–Blue Layer

By 1930, the patent specifications then current imply that ammonium ferric citrate had been displaced almost entirely from the commercial formulae by ammonium ferric oxalate, in the interests of faster printing. Around the mid-1930s, however, the manufacture of blueprint paper saw the introduction of a significantly different way of formulating the sensitizers, involving the addition of potassium ferrocyanide. This reacts with the ferrous iron generated by light to yield Prussian white, which can subsequently be readily oxidized to Prussian blue by the ‘developer’ in the wet processing sequence. For further discussion of the chemistry of this process see Appendix III.

It was noted earlier (§2.9, §4.1.4) that potassium ferrocyanide had been first employed by Herschel (with ammonium ferric citrate), in the hope that it would furnish a positive-working process. Superficially this appeared to be the case, because Herschel’s chemicals were of low purity, and mixing them resulted in the formation of a significant amount of Prussian blue, which was at first bleached by light to give a positive image. However, the major portion of the reactants still constituted a negative-working sensitiser producing Prussian white which oxidised to Prussian blue, so the exposure overall presented the rather puzzling observation of an image, initially positive, but gradually fading and being replaced by a more permanent negative one.

In modern times, the use of potassium ferrocyanide was first suggested by Kwech in 1931 as a ‘pre-development’ bath which followed the exposure, in order to eliminate ‘bleeding’.\textsuperscript{394} Later it was found that potassium ferrocyanide could be successfully incorporated into the sensitiser itself.\textsuperscript{395} The replacement of some or all of the potassium ferricyanide by ferrocyanide in the customary formulation brought
benefits in printing speed and the suppression of ‘bleeding’, for reasons that are explained in Appendix III, but it also imparted a blue colour to the coating, which tended to leave a stain of Prussian blue in the unexposed highlight regions after processing, unless suitable agents were added to improve the ‘wash–out’. One such agent, whose use was patented by Jahoda in 1950, is sodium hexametaphosphate, and the following is one of his formulations which made use of it.

In 120 cc of water at room temperature, dissolve, in order:
- 2.5 g sodium hexametaphosphate
- 4.5 g potassium oxalate
- 20 g ammonium ferric oxalate
- 5 g potassium ferrocyanide

This provides a ‘B-Type’ layer of fast printing speed. Although the sensitizer solution as made appears dark blue, the concentration of Prussian blue is very low, and when spread on paper it leaves only a sky-blue layer. However, the presence of potassium ions in this sensitizer tends to cause crystallization in the coating even at these relatively low concentrations, and substitution of ammonium salts is recommended. So, by the 1940s, the formulae for commercial blueprint papers had diverged into two main families, called ‘yellow layer’ and ‘blue layer’ papers, whose characteristics are summarized in Table 4.5.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Yellow Layer paper</th>
<th>Blue layer papers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Components</td>
<td>Ferrioxalate and Ferricyanide</td>
<td>Ferrioxalate + Ferrocyanide B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ferrooxalate + Ferricyanide C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Types</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>B, C, mixed AB, AC, BC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colour (unexposed)</td>
<td>Yellow</td>
<td>Blue (B, C, BC)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Green (AB, AC)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speed</td>
<td>Variable to High</td>
<td>Very High (B, C)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Variable (AB, AC)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contrast</td>
<td>Very High</td>
<td>Medium to Low</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>No latitude</td>
<td>Wider latitude</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max Density</td>
<td>Low to medium</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bleeding</td>
<td>Susceptible</td>
<td>Absent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Burnout</td>
<td>Susceptible</td>
<td>Absent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Washout</td>
<td>Clear easily</td>
<td>Problematic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Good whites</td>
<td>Tend to blue highlights</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purpose</td>
<td>Line work</td>
<td>Mixed subjects, Pictorial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Printout</td>
<td>Negative, reversing shadow exposures</td>
<td>Positive, changing to negative in processing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4.5 Characteristics of two types of commercial blueprint paper
The ‘blue layer’ types of paper were favoured for copying pencil and ink originals, or thick and thin lines, to register which a lower contrast was desirable. A paper of this type, the Huey Company’s No. 347–6, was adopted by Heron as a medium suitable for printing continuous tone photographic negatives.\(^{399}\) It provided an excellent rich blue with a very high \(D_{\text{max}}\) and a well-separated tonal scale similar to a Grade 1 silver-gelatin paper.\(^{400}\)

Commercial manufacture of blueprint paper ceased in the UK in the 1960s, but production continued in the USA, where there had been much more widespread investment in commercial processing machines. In 1964, the Andrews Paper and Chemical Company, the principal suppliers of the raw materials and chemicals to the coating industry, listed 30 US companies as manufacturing blueprint paper.\(^{401}\) But by the early 1970s the annual output figures had been showing a steady decline for several years, and 1972 was the last year that blueprint paper featured separately in the annual statistics of the reprographic industry products in the USA, at which time there were still 18 firms coating and marketing the product.\(^{402}\) Surprisingly, a relatively small amount continues to be manufactured in the USA today,\(^{403}\) and there is at least one retail supplier of ready-made blueprint paper and sensitized fabrics for recreational and educational purposes.\(^{404}\)

### 4.13 Type AB blueprint paper

The type AB sensitizer recipe has been recently reviewed by contemporary practitioner David Knierim:\(^{405}\) his criteria for a desirable cyanotype paper were speed and good storage characteristics without any toxic dichromate added, so making it suitable for popular use by children, e.g. on summer camp activities. For this type AB sensitizer Knierim used three stock solutions, which are described below with his permission. He believes that at least the first two could probably be combined and stored, and possibly all three; shelf life of the coated paper has not yet been fully tested experimentally, but is at least two weeks.

**Solution 1** (contains everything except the iron salts):

In 91 ml of warm water, dissolve in this order:

- 3.0 g sodium hexametaphosphate
- 2.4 g tetrasodium EDTA (0.06M)
- 2.8 g ammonium oxalate monohydrate (0.20M)
- 0.5 g oxalic acid dihydrate (0.04M)
Solution 2:

In 34 ml water dissolve 26 g ammonium ferric oxalate trihydrate

Solution 3:

In 48 ml water dissolve:

- 10.1 g potassium ferrocyanide trihydrate (0.4M)
- 2.1 g potassium ferricyanide (0.1M)

The solutions are mixed in this order:

- 6.8 ml solution 1
- 1.2 ml solution 2
- 2.0 ml solution 3

10 ml of the final sensitizer will coat about 8 sheets of 10"x8" paper using a glass rod or tube as spreader.
5 Studies in Blue 1842–2013

“Quiénes gritaron de alegria
Cuando nació el color azul?”
(“Who shouted with glee
when the colour blue was born?”)
Pablo Neruda (1904–1973)
Book of Quotations

The first cyanotypes in 1842 were not derived from camera negatives in any way – they were Herschel’s cyanotype copies, sun-printed from paper prints of steel engravings. The next cyanotype oeuvre historically was the archive of botanical photograms by Anna Atkins. It was not until the 1870s that cyanotype began to find employment for printing images that were fully photographic in origin, in the sense that they were made from silver negatives that had been obtained in a camera. This chapter will trace an outline history of the documentary and artistic uses of the process, from its beginnings up to the present day.

5.1 Herschel’s use of engravings

Sir John Herschel produced very few photographs compared with his colleague in photographic innovation, Henry Talbot, and the images that Herschel did make were obtained by contact–printing engravings rather than silver–based camera negatives. The latter were still quite troublesome to prepare in 1842, notwithstanding the great advance in speed represented by Talbot’s recently patented Calotype process.

Most (and possibly all) of the printed pictures that Herschel pressed into service, commencing in January 1839, were small, high–quality steel engraving prints supplied by one of his brothers–in–law, Peter Stewart, who was a printer. The craft of engraving on hardened steel plates was of relatively recent invention, having been patented in 1819. It rapidly gained commercial success because the long life of the steel plate meant that large editions of 10,000 or more could be pulled from it, unlike engravings on copper, which were limited to a hundred or two only, before the plate became too worn. Some artists responded with indignation at this extent of the proliferation of their work, feeling that it was cheapened thereby.

From the very beginnings of his photographic researches, Herschel had always displayed a preference for employing these ready–made
positive images on paper; as early as 30 January 1839, his notebook records his first accomplishment of a ‘transfer from a print’ by a silver halide process. But he immediately recognised the two disadvantages of this procedure: it gives rise to images that are always spatially reversed, because the image transfer has to be formed face-to-face; the picture is usually tonally reversed too, because the majority of useful photographic processes are intrinsically negative-working.

Herschel was thus obliged to carry out a second derivative printing, which he called a ‘re-transfer’ or ‘re-reversal’, in order to restore his reversed negative to a correct positive image. It might be noted, in passing, that Herschel was the first to apply the words negative and positive in the photographic context, presumably because his mathematically-trained mind immediately saw that their phenomenology parallels the behaviour of the integers -1 and +1, respectively, under the operation of multiplication.

Herschel expressed a particular concern to achieve a high degree of definition and translucency in his ‘first transfers’ (which today we would call inter-negatives) so that positive prints made from them should not be too deficient in detail. In his unpublished 1839 paper he observed:

“To operate a second transfer, or, by a double inversion to reproduce the original effect, is a matter of infinitely greater difficulty, and one in which I have only recently ascertained the cause of former failures and the remedy to be applied. In consequence, the specimens produced will be found somewhat inferior in points of sharpness, and are by no means to be taken as favourable instances.”

In his 1840 paper, Herschel set out the criteria that must be observed for achieving a good result in this respect; foremost among them was the application of sufficient pressure to ensure extremely close contact of the sensitized paper with the original, but the quality of the paper itself was also important, and he found that a double negative, carefully aligned, resulted in a better print.

The alternative to this procedure of ‘re-transfer’ was to devise direct positive-working processes, but these had the disadvantage of producing a spatially reversed, positive image, unless the chirality were corrected by printing through the verso of the original. From a paper diaphane this results in such a severe loss of definition that it was generally unacceptable. The use of engravings as source images may also have imposed some limitations on Herschel’s technical assessment of his
process’s quality, which he did not fully appreciate in those early days of photography.\textsuperscript{416} It is true that ‘line’ originals provide a good test of spatial resolution but, having effectively only two densities, of ‘black’ and ‘white’, they are not capable of disclosing the ability of a process to reproduce continuous tonal gradation, because they lack the subtly-modulated optical densities of a photographic negative. A well-printed steel engraving provides a suitable source for making striking and attractive photographic copies, even via processes of very high contrast with no capability for rendering intermediate tones. This may be one reason why the cyanotype process, as developed by Herschel, later acquired a reputation for rather poor tonal separation, and was not highly regarded by most photographers as a satisfactory pictorial medium.

5.2 Identifying the sources of engravings

Herschel only selected engravings with no printing on the verso as diaphanes, and he often rendered them more translucent by treatment with wax, oil, or varnish. Included in the \textit{Memoranda} is a document headed \textit{List of Engravings, & how rendered Transparent} consisting of 24 numbered titles, often abbreviated, of the original pictures; a summary of this list, together with some additional titles mentioned by Herschel elsewhere in his \textit{Memoranda}, is given in Table 5.1. The Herschel archive at the Museum of the History of Science in Oxford holds most (53) of the actual engravings that Herschel used as diaphanes; some of these show clear evidence of having been treated with substances to render them semi-transparent.

It is regrettable that, when preparing his diaphanes, Herschel invariably trimmed off the title together with the names of the engraver and the original artist, which were usually printed below the picture.\textsuperscript{417} He did not annotate the resulting test prints with their appropriate titles, which to him would have seemed superfluous, but he did usually inscribe his ‘prepared paper number’ on the \textit{verso}. At several places in his personal \textit{Memoranda} he refers to pictorial test prints by their subject titles alone. Clearly, the purposes of photohistorical research would benefit from the identification of the pictures to which the titles refer; the assignment of an image to each title would provide a correlation between the actual specimen prints which have come down to us, and the \textit{Memoranda} in which Herschel described their preparation and subsequent distribution to friends, colleagues and institutions.
This assignment is obscured by the rather non-specific, romantic nature of most of the titles quoted in Herschel’s ‘List of Engravings’, such as Still in my Teens, Youth & Beauty, and The Countess; none of which, per se, can be attributed with certainty to any particular image. The key to discovering the original source, in which many of these engravings were first published, was provided by just two of Herschel’s titles, which refer to depictions of identifiable ladies of the time, namely, Mrs. L. Stanhope and Mrs. Sheridan.

![Image of Mrs. Stanhope](image_url)

**Fig. 5.1 Sir John Herschel, Cyanotype (1842) "Mrs Stanhope"** from an engraving by Charles Rolls (1836): The Honourable Mrs Leicester Stanhope, published in Friendship's Offering 1836. (Collection of the Harry Ransom Center, University of Texas, Austin)
I am indebted to Dr Sara Stevenson, former Chief Curator of Photographs at the Scottish National Portrait Gallery, for her invaluable help in searching for and identifying these two engravings. An engraving entitled *The Honourable Mrs. Leicester Stanhope* (Fig. 5.1) is listed in the *Art Libraries Association Portrait Index* as having been first published in the 1836 issue of *Friendship’s Offering*, which was one of the many Victorian presentation annuals, or illustrated 'gift books': anthologies of verses, stories, and essays. The particular *raison d’être* of these publications was to provide a vehicle for the new craft of fine steel engraving, and they became very popular as Christmas presents with the genteel classes during the second quarter of the nineteenth century.

*Mrs. Sheridan* proved harder to identify uniquely, because engravings of several notable ladies of that name are on record. But in searching among these, Dr Sara Stevenson found that the *British Museum Catalogue of Engraved British Portraits* lists an engraving of Lady Louisa Henrietta Wyatt (née Sheridan) ‘standing, playing the harp’, (Fig. 5.2) and this too had been published as a plate in *Friendship’s Offering* for 1838.

---

**Fig. 5.2** Sir John Herschel, Cyanotype (1842) "Miss Sheridan" from an engraving by H. Cook (1838): *Miss Louisa H. Sheridan* (Collection of the Museum of the History of Science, Oxford)
A standing lady harpist happens to be one of Herschel’s best-known, but hitherto unidentified, test images; he reproduced it extensively in several processes, including cyanotype.\textsuperscript{423} The dimensions quoted for the images agreed to within a millimeter with those of Herschel’s test prints in the Oxford archive, and, on consulting copies of the annual \textit{Friendship’s Offering} for 1836 and 1838,\textsuperscript{424} I found the original engravings and Herschel’s cyanotypes to be perfect positive-negative pairs.

\textit{Friendship’s Offering} having been identified as the source of two of Herschel’s diaphanes, the \textit{List of Embellishments} in every issue of this annual between 1824 and 1844 was examined for other titles that might coincide with the titles in the \textit{List of Engravings}. Of the 30 titles used by Herschel, 19 were found to correspond with engravings from this publication, although in a few cases it transpired that Herschel had invented his own titles, quite different to those published for the image; this only became apparent, of course, when the images themselves were identified as described below.

Table 5.1 summarises the titles and sources of these engravings. Herschel’s numbered \textit{List of Engravings and how rendered Transparent} from his \textit{Memoranda} in HRHRC constitute numbers 1 to 24 in the following Table, but his details of rendering them transparent have been omitted. The seven remaining unnumbered titles occur elsewhere in Herschel’s \textit{Memoranda}, especially in the ‘Lists of Specimens’ sent to various people. Titles in parentheses are alternative versions used by Herschel. Tentative identifications are prefaced with ‘?’ The references refer to the year, plate number, and opposite page of \textit{Friendship’s Offering} where the engraving was originally published.

When the original engraving diaphane also exists in the Oxford Herschel archive it is denoted by *, which assists the attribution in spite of Herschel’s changed titles. It is also significant that the publishers of \textit{Friendship’s Offering}, Smith, Elder and Company, of 65 Cornhill, London, had the same address as Peter Stewart, Herschel’s brother-in-law printer, who had furnished him with a number of engravings in 1839. Stewart’s working address is revealed in a note left by Herschel giving directions for the safe return of his prints via this person.\textsuperscript{425} Since Peter Stewart would have been able to supply loose specimens of the engravings, there is no need for us to suppose that Herschel had descended to mutilating bound copies of these ‘friendship books’!
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No</th>
<th>Herschel's Title</th>
<th>Published Title</th>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Pl.</th>
<th>P.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Wise Men. Rembrandt</td>
<td>Halt of the Caravan* ?</td>
<td>1831</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>305</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Mrs L. Stanhope</td>
<td>The Honourable Mrs Leicester Stanhope</td>
<td>1836</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Bridal Morn</td>
<td>The Bridal Morn</td>
<td>1837</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Still in my teens</td>
<td>Still in my Teens</td>
<td>1838</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Early Morning</td>
<td>Early Morning*</td>
<td>1837</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Orpheus</td>
<td>unidentified</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Infant Lyra</td>
<td>Lyra*</td>
<td>1830</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Lady with flowers</td>
<td>Mine Own* ?</td>
<td>1830</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>The Countess</td>
<td>The Countess*</td>
<td>1836</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Royal Prisoner</td>
<td>The Royal Prisoner*</td>
<td>1839</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>325</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Old barns &amp;c.</td>
<td>unidentified</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Mrs. Sheridan</td>
<td>Miss Louisa H. Sheridan</td>
<td>1838</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Opening the Chest</td>
<td>The Co–heiresses</td>
<td>1840</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Scene in Italy</td>
<td>A Scene in Italy*</td>
<td>1839</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>289</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Torcello</td>
<td>Torcello</td>
<td>1838</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Burghersh Family</td>
<td>The Children of Lady Burghersh</td>
<td>1840</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>252</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Frescatura</td>
<td>The Festival* ?</td>
<td>1836</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Youth &amp; Beauty</td>
<td>Youth and Beauty</td>
<td>1838</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Amazons Basso relievo</td>
<td>unidentified</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Hercules &amp; Lion Basso R</td>
<td>unidentified</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Schooner</td>
<td>unidentified</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>Roman Lady</td>
<td>[may be ‘Donna Elena’]</td>
<td>1837</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>Poetry</td>
<td>Poesie* ?</td>
<td>1831</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>373</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>Boy &amp; Lyre</td>
<td>unidentified</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Rosolia</td>
<td>Rosolia</td>
<td>1837</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Helena</td>
<td>Donna Elena*</td>
<td>1837</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lady &amp; Lute</td>
<td>The Lady of the Palace*</td>
<td>1830</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Letter of Bad News</td>
<td>Reading the News</td>
<td>1830</td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Reading the Letter)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Biancha</td>
<td>Bianca Vanezzi</td>
<td>1834</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Italian Lady</td>
<td>The Gondola* ?</td>
<td>1834</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>325</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Square–rigged ship</td>
<td>unidentified</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 5.1 Herschel's titles for diaphanes, and when published
All the engravings in *Friendships’ Offering* from 1824 to 1844 were also compared for matches to the 53 cropped engravings in the Herschel archive at Oxford. Of these, 28 were so identified.

Some of the remaining engravings were also used as diaphanes by Herschel, but were never explicitly referred to by him in the *Memoranda*; two have been identified by Simcock as originating from a part–work of 1831 depicting Edinburgh: *Modern Athens! Displayed in a series of Views.* These were used by Herschel for some of his earliest test prints that are still extant; one, an engraving of the Edinburgh Royal Exchange by W. Watkins, is the diaphane for what is believed to be Herschel’s oldest surviving dated photograph, a hypo–fixed silver print dated 7 February 1839.

It is possible that the remaining Herschel diaphanes may be found in other gift books published by Smith, Elder and Company, who employed Peter Stewart’s services. Of the remaining engravings in the Oxford archive, there are no specimen prints by Herschel known as yet.

### 5.3 Herschel’s cyanotype tests

Many cyanotypes still survive that were made by Herschel according to the procedures described in his 1842 Paper and the *Memoranda* at the HRHRC. The majority of these specimens is divided between the collections of the Museum of the History of Science, in Oxford, and the National Museum of Photography, Film & Television, (now the National Media Museum) in Bradford; two are in the Library of the Royal Society, London; eleven are in the collection of HRHRC at Texas, and isolated specimens exist in a number of other collections in the USA: the J Paul Getty Museum, the University of Princeton, and the Smithsonian Institute.

In 1965, the Oxford archive was given prominence by R S Schultze in a publication setting out the broad structure of the collection and making some specific points of interest in relation to the several processes that Herschel had tested in the early 1840s. In his paper, Schultze raised some unanswered questions relating to the cyanotype processes designated (a) (b) and (c) by Herschel, which can now be resolved by reference to the *Memoranda*, which were not available to Schultze at the time of his research. In 1989, the year which was taken to mark the sesquicentenary of the announcement of the invention of photography, to celebrate Herschel’s contribution to this discovery, an exhibition at Oxford was curated by A V Simcock, whose accompanying monograph
nicely illustrates and elaborates the relationships between the processes that may be found in this archive.\textsuperscript{431}

Among the HRHRC \textit{Memoranda} there are several lists of titles of test specimens, with other details of process, which Herschel had sent to various interested friends and colleagues, including one addressed to Julia Margaret Cameron, which contained a number of cyanotypes as may be seen below in the transcript of Table 5.2.

List of Photographs sent to Mrs. Cameron. Aug 22/42

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Process Details</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Burghersh Fam</td>
<td>+ Red Stock</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Royal Prisoner</td>
<td>+ Do.</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Pompeii</td>
<td>+ Do.</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Mrs. L. Stanhope</td>
<td>+ Do.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>In my teens</td>
<td>+ Papaver Hybridana</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>N\textsuperscript{o}. 1216</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Helena</td>
<td>+ N\textsuperscript{o}. 1182</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Do.</td>
<td>+ N\textsuperscript{o}. 1202. Violet</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Do.</td>
<td>+ Sparaxis Alk. 1153</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Pompeii</td>
<td>- Cyanotype (a) F\textsuperscript{3/2}</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Mrs. Sheridan</td>
<td>- Do. (a)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Rosolia</td>
<td>+ Do. Deep blue vary (b)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Ships</td>
<td>- Do. (a) light blue</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>In my teens</td>
<td>- Do. (a) dark blue</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Rosolia</td>
<td>+ Do. (c) before fixing</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>In my teens</td>
<td>+ Do. (c) purple half fixed</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Ships</td>
<td>+ Guiacum green</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Helena</td>
<td>- Chrysotype (thin)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Burghersh fam</td>
<td>- Do. Bwpon</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Mrs. L. Stanhope</td>
<td>725. Mercury</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>My Teens</td>
<td>750. Do.</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Scene.....</td>
<td>721. fixed 1\textsuperscript{1/2} by Chrom</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>Specimens of Mr Collen’s</td>
<td>Talbot’s Calotype</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>portraits</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>Calotype.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\textbf{Table 5.2. Specimens sent by Herschel to Julia Margaret Cameron 1842}

Herschel first met Mrs. Cameron in 1836 at the Cape of Good Hope, during his stay from 1834 to 1838 for the purposes of astronomical
research. It was in a sense prophetic that he should subsequently send her specimens of the new photography in 1842, for this was a pursuit that she was destined to take up herself twenty-one years later, and then with most memorable effect. She first photographed her mentor Herschel in 1867. In her unfinished manuscript *Annals from my Glass House*, Mrs Cameron refers to him as follows:

“...I photographed my illustrious and revered as well as beloved friend, Sir John Herschel. He was to me as a Teacher and High Priest. From my earliest girlhood I had loved and honoured him, and it was after a friendship of 31 years’ duration that the high task of giving his portrait to the nation was allotted to me. He had corresponded with me when the art was in its first infancy in the days of Talbot-type and autotype. I was then residing in Calcutta, and scientific discoveries sent to that then benighted land were water to the parched lips of the starved, to say nothing of the blessing of friendship so faithfully evinced.”

Mrs. Cameron’s reference to the ‘autotype’ is an error; the process was not Herschel’s, nor was it introduced until 1864. She may possibly have meant amphitype, or even cyanotype. The following Table 5.3 is a transcript of a list of specimens, sent by Herschel to Robert Hunt in 1842, which also contains references to the cyanotype processes designated as (a), (b), and (c). All three of Herschel’s cyanotype processes are exemplified here in specimens numbered 7, 8, 9, and 10, and it is interesting to use this information to identify their nature and thus answer the question raised thirty years ago by Schultze. The fact that one specimen of type (a), no. 7, is listed as a negative image, is strong evidence that (a) can therefore be identified as Herschel’s negative-working cyanotype process. If (a) had been a positive-working process, this image would have to have been made from a negative of the original engraving – a singularly pointless exercise.

The fact that no. 8, which is also of type (a), is listed as a positive, presents no problem, however, because the latter could well have been printed from a negative of the original image – what Herschel referred to as a ‘re-transfer’. In support of this hypothesis, in the Oxford archive there is a high-quality brown reversed negative print of ‘Lady and Lute’ (presumably made by a silver process) which has been rendered highly translucent for just this purpose by waxing. In his exhibition, Simcock displayed one of these negatives.
Photography
Specimens Distributed.
List of Photographs sent to Mr. Hunt Oct 2/42

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Title 1</th>
<th>+</th>
<th>Title 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Orpheus</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>Senecio Splendens.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Royal Prisoner</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>Papaver hybridium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Opening the Chest</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>Red Stock.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Rosolia</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Italian Landsc</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>&gt; Chrysotype</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>MRS. L. Stanhope</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>MRS. Sheridan</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Chrysotype Cyanotype (a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Lady &amp; Lute</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>D0. (a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Rosolia</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>Cyanotype (b) deep blue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>D0.</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>Cyanotype (c) purple</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>D0.</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>N0. 725. Aug 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>MRS. L. Stanhope</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>N0. 750 Aug 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>In my teens</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>Thermocyanotype</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Rosolia</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>758. Oct 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>on blue wove Post NB</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

15 Specimen of + Cyanotype paper

Table 5.3 Specimens sent by Herschel to Hunt 1842

Most of Herschel’s specimens are inscribed on the verso, in his own hand, with his prepared paper number, so the original light-sensitive coating may be identified with reference to the list of prepared papers in the Memoranda at HRHRC. It is more difficult, however, to discover how they were processed after exposure, because one sheet of prepared paper might suffice to provide ten or twenty smaller ‘squares’ which could be used for different tests.

For one of the listed specimens sent to Hunt, no. 10, it is possible to go further and make a unique identification with an existing positive cyanotype of ‘Rosolia’ held in the collection of the NMPFT. This print is reproduced in Schaaf’s book; it bears the number 10 at the top left hand corner of the recto, which is further annotated at the bottom in ink in Herschel’s hand: ‘Positive Cyanotype. Aug 17 1842. JFWH.’ On the verso, is pencilled the prepared paper number ‘724’, which we find from the Memoranda corresponds to a coating of ammonium ferric citrate. The chirality of ‘Rosolia’ in specimen number 10 is reversed, i.e. it is the
mirror image of the original engraving, so we may infer that it was derived directly by one printing from the original, and that type (c) was therefore one of Herschel’s positive–working cyanotype processes. Even the paper is identified by Herschel’s annotation ‘yell. w. post’ as yellow wove post. The image colour, however, is not purple, as stated in the list, but blue. This does not present a serious objection because Herschel states subsequently that he observed the colour of type (c) to change from purple to greenish–blue. This does not resolve the difference between positive–working methods (b) and (c) however. A clue to this comes from another list, of specimens sent to the Royal Society in 1842, of which the following Table 5.4 is a partial transcript.

Photography Lists of Specimens distributed
List of 4 additional sheets exhibited to RS. Nov/42

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nos.</th>
<th>Specimen</th>
<th>Process Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Mrs Stanhope</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Rosolia</td>
<td>- Chrysotype</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>Italian Landscape</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>Lute Playing Lady</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Royal Captive</td>
<td>+ Cyanotype + process</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>Helena</td>
<td>+ Let go on and half fixed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>Still in my teens</td>
<td>- Negative Cyano–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>Mrs Stanhope</td>
<td>- (type. ACI + F_{3/2}CP.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>Rosolia</td>
<td>+ Cyanotype + process</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>Mrs Stanhope</td>
<td>+ with corrosive subl. Nov. 1842.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>Lady &amp; Lute</td>
<td>+ Retransfer. Negative Cyanotype.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>Rosolia</td>
<td>+ Cyanotype, no corr. subl. arrested by water (b.w.p.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>Thermocyanotype</td>
<td>- (Countess) 3rd revival</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>Ital. Landscape</td>
<td>- 758 one of the finest but 3/4 faded.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>ACI + Pict...[??]</td>
<td>+ NS. ACI on both sides of paper.–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Mrs Stanhope. very intense.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>Rosolia</td>
<td>(ACI + N[Hg]) + Pict...[??] + water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>made fine [?] cut out. + O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>No 758. In my teens</td>
<td>best specimen Iridescent – greatly faded</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>Italian Landscape</td>
<td>+ Cyanotype very intense,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Water + Perchlor Iron to fix yellow border</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 5.4. Specimens sent by Herschel to the Royal Society in 1842
Although no (a), (b), (c) notation is used here, Herschel does distinguish between three cyanotype processes: negative working; positive-working ‘half-fixed, without corrosive sublimate’, and positive-working fixed with corrosive sublimate.

These specimens still exist intact: among the items in the Herschel archive at HRHRC are seven sheets of Herschel test prints, six containing six mounted specimens each, and one seven. Of these 43 varied experimental tests, some are now completely blank (especially those derived from mercury), but others are obviously surviving cyanotype and chrysotype images. The specimens are numbered and can be correlated exactly with Herschel’s lists of specimens sent to the Royal Society in 1842, of which the contents of the fourth, fifth, and sixth sheets are transcribed in Table 5.4. Examples may be identified among them of negative-working cyanotypes (Nos 22, 24, 26) and positive working cyanotypes (Nos 20, 25, 27, 28, 30) as listed in the HRHRC photography collections database.

I have attempted to estimate from the data in the Memoranda how many cyanotypes, in all, may have been made by Herschel. In the case of the standard negative-working cyanotype there are only three prepared papers to consider, and this is how Herschel described them in his list:

“780 Aug 10 10 AmmO Citr I + 10F⁵/₂CP no precip greenish paper 20 grs [?] covers 3 squares
784 Aug 11 F³CP²₀ + AmoCitr³₀ + Tinct. Turmeric 10 on yell wove post. the turmeric proved of no value.
793 Aug 16 (30F³/₂CP + 50ACI) exceedingly sensitive when wet browns very rapidly in O this quantity did 18 squares 90 grs did 20 squares = 4½ per square”

The most likely interpretation of a ‘square’ is that it was of a size suited to printing Herschel’s smaller diaphanes, and is therefore well represented by the specimens that are most commonly found in the archives. These are of fairly consistent dimensions, on average about 120 x 95 mm, bearing images about 100 x 80 mm.

The numerals in Herschel’s notes, transcribed above, must define the relative quantities of the ingredients – but they raise the question: what units was he using for his measurements? The only plausible interpretation is that these numbers denote drops of liquid (or minims in apothecaries’ measure – see Appendix IV) taken from his stock solutions, whose concentrations are specified elsewhere. This assumption is
confirmed by the *Memoranda* entry dated 29 October 1842, where Herschel refers explicitly to his “method of drops”. With this interpretation and the knowledge that one minim of water weighs approximately one grain, or 0.059 grams, we can calculate the ‘coating weight’ of Herschel’s sensitizers and see if the result is consistent with experience.\(^4\) If the three coated papers cited above are the only ones that Herschel prepared with this formulation – and there is no indication in his memoranda of any others – it follows that the total number of negative cyanotype specimens that he could have made was about 34. His positive-working cyanotype tests may well have been more numerous than this, but the variability of the process and its frequent failure to yield a satisfactory image leave much uncertainty concerning the number of such specimens that we can expect to find. The Herschel archive at the National Media Museum has 16 from one sheet, which all bear the annotation of ‘prepared paper number’ 724, which consisted of a coating of ammonium ferric citrate alone. After exposure, these must have been treated with potassium ferrocyanide solution, and many of them bear Herschel’s rather cryptic annotation ‘yop’ or possibly ‘yoss’, which could refer to this substance – ‘yellow prussiate of potash’.

### 5.4 Cyanotypes of British algae by Anna Atkins

The first application of Herschel’s cyanotype process for an illustrative purpose was begun in 1843 by an amateur lady botanist called Anna Atkins (1799 –1871), Fig. 5.4. For the benefit of readers who may not be acquainted with her life and work, the facts will now be briefly summarised here, but with the proviso that this terse account is no substitute for Schaaf’s deeply-researched and beautifully illustrated books referenced in §5.5.

Anna Children was born in 1799 in Tonbridge, Kent, the only child of Hester Anne and John George Children (1777–1852), a distinguished scientist who was elected to Fellowship of the Royal Society in 1807 and later became its Secretary. Anna’s mother died within a year of the child’s birth, and perhaps partly to compensate for her loss, the bond between father and daughter always remained close. Their relationship also encompassed a publishing collaboration when Anna’s considerable talent
for draughtsmanship enabled her to undertake the illustration of her father’s translation of a seminal work on the taxonomy of seashells.\textsuperscript{442} Thus Anna was, as Schaaf describes:

“...brought into touch with most of the tight-knit British scientific community of the early part of the nineteenth century.” \textsuperscript{443}

In 1825, Anna married John Pelly Atkins, a man of property, who fostered her interests in botanical collecting and illustration. In 1830 the couple, who remained childless, moved to Halstead, near Sevenoaks in Kent, where they were joined in 1840 by Anna’s father, following his retirement from a lifetime’s career as Keeper of Zoology at the British Museum. His proximity undoubtedly continued to provide an important channel of communication between Anna and the scientific world, which at that time seldom welcomed women wholeheartedly into its ranks. Children, as a member of the Royal Society’s Committee on Publications, had been at the centre of things during the announcement of photography, and he had been in the chair at the meeting of the Society in February 1839 to which Talbot disclosed his method for making photogenic drawings. From the outset, Anna showed great interest in this innovation – to the extent that in 1841 she was presented by her father with an early Ross camera, although no camera photographs by her are presently known. Anna’s husband was also a friend of Talbot, sharing a
common interest in transport engineering, so she could not have failed to be aware of the early use of Talbot’s photogenic drawing process for making botanical photograms, such as that illustrated in facsimile in the popular periodical *The Mirror* of 1839.444

In 1840 the Herschel family also moved residence to Kent, taking a house in Hawkhurst, only about 30 miles away from the Atkins; the Herschel daughters were friendly towards Anna, whom they regarded as an aunt. When Sir John’s 1842 paper was published, containing details of his cyanotype processes, a copy was sent directly to John Children, but it is likely that Anna, as a frequent visitor to the Herschel household, also acquired experience of the process by more direct and less formal means. Anna must have quickly realised that cyanotype offered a method for botanical illustration by photography which was altogether more expeditious and inexpensive than Talbot’s silver halide processes; she was not then to know that it would also prove more permanent.

No evidence has yet come to light to tell us precisely the method or formula that Anna adopted to make her cyanotypes, but from their appearance (the colour is usually in the range 21E7–22D7) and the productivity of her work (as we shall see, her edition of *British Algae* alone demanded the hand-printing of over 5000 cyanotypes), it seems likely that she used Herschel’s rapid, standard negative-working Method (a). The means to carry out this process would not, for her, have been hard to come by: her father had constructed several powerful galvanic batteries for the purposes of electrochemical research, with which he could have prepared the necessary potassium ferricyanide from readily available potassium ferrocyanide, using Smee’s electrolytic method. Ammonium ferric citrate was growing in popularity as a pharmaceutical preparation by then, and was available at most druggist’s. A suitable fine paper, Whatman’s Turkey Mill, which had already been used extensively by Talbot for silver images, was widely marketed as a superior writing paper; and, of course, the processing of the cyanotypes needed nothing more than pure water, which the well at Halstead could supply in abundance.

By 1843, Anna had set to work on the production of her monumental hand-printed publication, *British Algae: Cyanotype Impressions*, which she intended as a supplement to the treatise on seaweeds by Hervey, which was not illustrated.445 Anna’s work consists of negative cyanotypes printed directly from diaphanes of the seaweeds themselves, dried and pressed, but usually unsupported. Each is labelled with its Latin
name or Linnaen binomial, written in Anna’s hand on a translucent slip, and the illustrations are preceded by a title page, a dedication of the work to her father, a list of contents, and a handwritten prefatory note, which with modest anonymity, is signed ‘A. A.’ Herein she explained her intention:

“The difficulty of making accurate drawings of objects as minute as many of the Algae and Confervae, has induced me to avail myself of Sir John Herschel’s beautiful process of Cyanotype, to obtain impressions of the plants themselves, which I have much pleasure in offering to my botanical friends.” 446

Fig. 5.5 Anna Atkins *Photographs of British Algae*

Anna issued the work as a privately-distributed part-book over the decade 1843–53. Each of the soft-bound sewn fascicles contained about twelve plates at first, but this number increased considerably with the later parts, and there were twelve parts issued in all, making an approximate total of 420 plates or more for the final work, although this number varies in the known copies, partly due to Anna’s retrospective issues of ‘improved’ prints of certain specimens. It was her intention that the entire work should be bound into three volumes. The size of the
edition is uncertain but was at least 14 complete known copies, and may have been 18 to 20 to judge by various incomplete holdings and parts widely dispersed. By 1985, Schaaf had identified a probable 12 known copies, in varying states of completion, and he listed their original provenance, and their current whereabouts in his seminal publication described in §5.5. 447

Anna Atkins distributed more than a dozen copies of the first fascicle of her *British Algae* in October of 1843, whereas the first part of Talbot’s *Pencil of Nature*, illustrated with silver salted-paper prints, was not published until June 1844. *British Algae* therefore takes precedence in the claim to be the first photographically illustrated book, 448 albeit a privately-published one, and earns Anna Atkins a permanent place of honour among the pioneers of publishing. Anna’s ‘herbarium’, the collection of dried, pressed botanical specimens, or *exsiccati*, that she had been amassing and using since 1830, containing many of her diaphanes, was finally presented to the British Museum in 1865.

Notable among the recipients of Anna’s part-work was Robert Hunt, who reported favourably upon this use of the cyanotype process in his early (1848) review of progress in the new photography:

“They are so exceedingly simple, the results are so certain, the delineations so perfect, and the general character so interesting, that they recommend themselves particularly to ladies, and to those travellers who, although not able to bestow much attention or time on the subject, desire to obtain accurate representations of the botany of a district. We have seen specimens of the British Algae executed by a lady, by the Cyanotype process, that are remarkable for the extreme fidelity with which even the most attenuated tendrils of the marine plants are copied.” 449

Hunt’s compliment is double-edged in being tainted with a patronising implication that this was a process for women and therefore, dilettantes. Henry Fox Talbot was also on Anna Atkins’ distribution list, and much later in 1864, he commented approvingly on the permanence of the process, having by then suffered grievously from the impermanence of many of his own silver images:

“Moreover, we know that some photographic processes are permanent; for instance, the cyanotype of Sir J. Herschel, by which process a lady, some years ago, photographed the entire series of British sea-weeds, and most kindly and liberally distributed the copies to persons interested in botany and photography. The whole of these prints remain unaltered after the lapse of several years.” 450
These words, published in *The British Journal of Photography*, were read two decades later by the Scottish photohistorian and book collector, William Lang, who was then President of Glasgow Photographic Association. Lang was a compulsive book collector – he described it as an "incurable disease" – and was spurred on to seek a copy of this remarkable botanical work, although he was not even aware of the identity of its author. After a search lasting several years, he eventually acquired, in 1888, the complete set bound in two volumes that Anna Atkins had originally given to Robert Hunt. Lang proudly displayed and lectured upon his acquisition on several occasions. Although he only knew the work was by "A.A.", a curator at the British Museum identified the "lady" for him as Anna Atkins. Lang even made his own cyanotypes as frontispieces to the issue of the *Journal of the Philosophical Society of Glasgow* where he published an account of his treasured possession.

![Fig. 5.6 Cyanotype frontispiece by William Lang](image)

It is indeed fortunate that we have Lang's clear description of this copy, because it disappeared entirely in 1910, following the auction of his library, and only re-emerged for sale at Sotheby's on 10 May 1990, realising £229,250. The anonymous vendor was said to have acquired it at a car boot sale in 1987. Following a further re-sale at Christie's in 2004, this copy was acquired for the Burlington Collection at Chatsworth House in Derbyshire.
There appear to be nine substantially complete copies of *British Algae* now known in British collections and institutions: at Chatsworth, the Royal Society, Lacock Abbey, the British Library, the Horniman Museum of London, the Linnean Society, the British Museum, the Royal Botanic Gardens at Edinburgh, and the Art Gallery and Museum at Kelvingrove in Glasgow.

In 1992 a previously uncatalogued copy of *British Algae* was recognised at the Jardin des Plantes Muséum, Paris; this event was echoed in 2016 when another copy was discovered in a sparsely catalogued botanical library at the Université de Montréal, Canada. Two copies are known in the USA; one at the Detroit Institute of Arts; the other, Sir John Herschel’s personal copy, was sold at auction by Sotheby’s of London in 1985 for £48,400, and was acquired for the collection of the New York Public Library. The entire set of images in this item may now be freely browsed and viewed online, courtesy of the Digital Collections of the NYPL.

The exciting discovery in 1995 of a thirteenth intact copy was made by David Park of Bonham’s auction house, London, when he recognised the work among the uncatalogued contents of the small library of the Natural History Museum of Eton College. This fine copy, having 411 plates, bound in three volumes, was sold at auction by Bonhams for £130,000 in 1996 and was granted a licence to be exported to the collection of Tel Aviv Museum, where it now represents one of the great achievements of early British photography. The attention of the popular media was briefly attracted by this significant sale of a hitherto unrecorded treasure, so Anna Atkins’ achievement was finally celebrated in the British press, 144 years after its completion.

5.5 Recent scholarship on Anna Atkins

The full significance of Anna Atkins’ contribution to early photography and the history of book illustration was not brought to public light until 1985, as a result of the researches of the American photohistorian, Dr Larry J. Schaaf, while he was Carnegie Trust Fellow in the Department of Art History at St. Andrews University, Scotland. Schaaf unfolded the history of Anna Atkins’s singular achievement in his beautiful book *Sun Gardens: Victorian Photograms by Anna Atkins*, his comprehensive and beguiling account of a most important, but previously uncelebrated, woman in the history of early photographic endeavour. Additionally, Dr.
Schaaf was able to curate an Exhibition of the same name at St Andrews in 1988, which travelled to Edinburgh and Glasgow, see Fig. 5.3.

Fig. 5.3 Catalogue of exhibition curated by Dr Larry J. Schaaf in 1988

Thirty years later, in 2018, Dr Schaaf has revisited this field of his scholarship in order to compile a fresh edition of his seminal work of 1985. The new publication was timed to coincide with the 175th anniversary of the initial issue of Anna Atkins’s *British Algæ* in October 1843. Sponsored and published by the New York Public Library, Schaaf’s updated and expanded edition is re-entitled *Sun Gardens: The Cyanotypes of Anna Atkins*. This beautifully illustrated volume revises and extends Schaaf’s long out-of-print monograph that first secured Atkins’s place in the history of photography. Its novel material includes accounts of several recently-discovered copies of *British Algæ* and more
precious insights into this remarkable woman. It has additional texts contributed by NYPL curators, Joshua Chuang and Emily Waltz, and an appendix on conservation of cyanotypes by the present author.

This anniversary publication was accompanied at the NYPL by an exhibition of the library’s copy of British Algae, and a complementary exhibition of photographic prints by contemporary artists, who have responded to Anna Atkins in the past three decades, five of them working in cyanotype. see later §5.14.

5.6 Albums by Anna Atkins and Anne Dixon

Upon the death of Anna Atkins’ father in 1852, the bereaved daughter was much comforted by the companionship of her lifelong friend and ‘almost sister’ Anne Dixon. At John Atkins’ request, she came to stay at Halstead for the summer, in order to offer solace to Anna and help her sort out her father’s papers for the substantial biography that Anna was preparing for private publication in early 1853. It is likely that, finding action a remedy for despair, Anne Dixon also assisted Anna in progressing her printing for British Algae, which was completed later in 1853, just ten years after its inception.

The two women may well have continued cyanotyping together, and their collaboration seems to have broadened their horizons regarding subject matter, which first encompassed ferns, then flowers, leaves, feathers, and lace as diaphanes. One of the fruits of their joint endeavour was an album, nominally authored by Anna, entitled Cyanotypes of British and Foreign Flowering Plants and Ferns which she presented to Anne Dixon in 1854 as a token of gratitude for her dear friend’s support during her mourning the loss of her father. The binding was simply stamped ‘A.A. to A.D. 1854’. This unique and beautiful work survived until 1981 when, immediately following its sale at auction, it was broken by dealers in an act of collaborative philistinism.

In 1853, probably with Anna’s help, Anne Dixon herself completed two very similar presentation albums entitled Cyanotypes of British and Foreign Ferns. One was dedicated ‘A.D. to H.D.’; the recipient is known to have been Henry Dixon, her young nephew, who became a noted photographer of India. This album is preserved in the collection of the J Paul Getty Museum, Los Angeles. The other album by Anne Dixon was previously unrecorded until its existence, in private hands, was first brought to light in 1988 by John Wilson.
It carries the dedication ‘A.D. to C.S.A.’ and it is now in the collection of the National Media Museum (previously the National Museum of Photography, Film & Television) at Bradford, England. The researches of Wilson into the history of cyanotype have included a careful comparison of these two albums. He found that both were printed from the same set of 98 botanical diaphanes, some of which were also used by Anna Atkins, but in a substantial number of the images the specimens are reversed or have other differences in positioning between the two albums.

Fig. 5.7 Anna Atkins and Anne Dixon, *Cyanotypes of British and Foreign Ferns* (1853)
The identity of the recipient bearing the initials ‘C.S.A.’ remains something of a mystery. Wilson has reviewed the rather slender evidence, in particular the suggestion put forward by Fred Woodward of the name of Miss Catherine Allardyce (1802–1886) of Cromarty, a known collector of algae. Although Wilson has found no reference to her in the contemporary botanical literature, I have come across an obscure acknowledgement to her in Johnstone and Croall’s *Nature–Printed British Seaweeds*, as one of the contributors of specimens.467

The first volume of this elegant four volume set of nature prints was reviewed in The Athenaeum in 1859. The very name of Miss C. Allardyce evidently fired the imagination, if not the heart, of the reviewer, whose fantasy waxed quite rhapsodial:

“The only relief we experience in poring over these densely technical pages is not a sea breeze, but an occasional name of a fair spinster who has contributed some weed to the author. We cannot restrain our imagination from picturing “Miss C. Alardyce,” who has found *Bonnemaisonia asparagoides* at Moray Frith [sic] (p. 77), ... O, for a weed–walk and a weed–talk this very day with Caroline Alardyce, or any and all of the spinster phycologists! ... But why not immortalize the spinsters, even though they should change their names, by affixing them to the weeds? ... how much more euphonious would be *Melobesia Alardycii*, or, sweeter still, *Alardycia Virginea!*" 468

This whimsical eulogy by the anonymous reviewer (discovered to be John R. Leifchild)469 drew forth a reply from Johnstone and Croall in the preface to their fourth volume. It pays tribute, if rather patronisingly, to the important role that many gentlewomen played at the time in collecting and cataloguing botanical specimens – it was one of the few scientific pursuits available to them that was not deemed unladylike. A ‘C. Allardice’ [sic] is acknowledged again in the second volume of Johnstone and Croall’s work.

In 1861 Anne Dixon created a third album of cyanotypes which she again dedicated to her nephew, now Captain, Henry Dixon.470 This beautiful compilation is anonymous and simply titled *Cyanotypes* in gold on the spine. A flyleaf bears the handwritten inscription in ink: ‘Capt Henry Dixon with his Aunt Henry’s Kind love – Ferring Vicarage June 21 1861’. The album contains 74 cyanotypes of a most varied kind: ferns, grasses, algae, mosses, leaves, feathers, fabrics and needlework, chosen rather for their aesthetic qualities, than for any systematic purpose. The handwriting of both Anne Dixon and Anna Atkins is apparent on the
labels, and some of the specimens have been used in other albums by the two ladies; the paper used, where watermarks can be discerned, is J. Whatman 1845.

Anne Dixon died on 20 March 1864, and Anna Atkins died at Halstead Place on 9 June 1871. After the death of John Pelly Atkins in 1872, the house later became a school, but this was demolished in 1954 to make way for a new building. In 1997 Anna Atkins was finally honoured for her pioneering contribution to photography and book illustration by the unveiling at Halstead Place of an appropriately blue commemorative plaque, one of ten in the Photographic Heritage Programme promoted by the Royal Photographic Society and Olympus Cameras. 471

Anna Atkins achievement has recently been evaluated in Jennifer Howard’s thesis on A Victorian woman’s experiments in botanical illustration:

“This dissertation discusses how Atkins” work fits into the mid-nineteenth century context of women, botany, and illustration, and provides justification for a historical bibliographical study of Photographs of British Algae. A descriptive bibliographical approach is taken in the second half of the dissertation, which uses a sample analysis of twenty-four plates taken from six copies of Photographs of British Algae to discuss how the cyanotype process functions as a printing medium. It also discusses how Atkins used the reprographic capabilities of the process, and how the book functions as a botanical reference book.” 472

Concerning this fruitful episode in early photography, it is fitting that the last word should come from Schaaf:

“Anna Atkins and her circle had been the primary users of Herschel’s cyanotype process. With her own hands she crafted thousands of lovely and significant photograms of natural objects, and in an imaginative and brilliant undertaking, she had exploited the most practical technology of her day to produce the first photographic book. Anna Atkins’ legacy embodies all that was promising about the invention of photography. Her cyanotypes not only provide documentation of scientific interest, but in an intriguing duality, they also remain some of the most creative and beautiful artefacts from the earliest days of photography.” 473

5.7 An anonymous cyanotype album of 1843

In 1993 the National Museum of Photography, Film & Television, Bradford, (now the National Media Museum) acquired a very early and unusual album entitled Dried Ferns, containing both cyanotypes and the botanical specimens (exsiccati) that they had been printed from. The
The author of this work is unknown. It was bought at auction, and no information was available as to its provenance. This is a red morocco-bound, quarto album of mounted specimens of *exsiccati* (pressed and dried ferns) which, as is evident from their labels, have been gathered from extremely diverse locations: Borneo, East Indies, Guernsey, Philippine Islands, Britain, Java, Tropical America, Chile, New Zealand, etc. On the pages following, the volume also contains 16 cyanotypes of some of these dried ferns, of dimensions 9 x 7.5 inches (one is 9 x 15 inches, and folded) made on chain-laid paper, watermarked *T. Edmonds 1821*.

![Fig. 5.8 1843 Album of pressed ferns and their cyanotypes](collection of the National Media Museum, Bradford)

The versos of all the cyanotypes carry rather faint pencil annotations, most of them legibly inscribed as ‘Herschel formula cyanotype impression’ and variously dated during March and April 1843. Many of the annotations also specify the exposure, which was generally between one and two hours, and two notes refer to ‘very hot sun’ and ‘bright sun’. Such references to the weather in the months of March and April are hardly consistent with the meteorological record for typical locations in the British Isles (although, on occasion the record described conditions as ‘fine’), which suggests that these cyanotypes may not have been printed in Europe – or even in the Northern Hemisphere. It may also be significant that an analytical investigation of the album by X-ray fluorescence spectrometry has revealed that its pages are heavily...
contaminated with arsenic, which was possibly applied in the form of arsenious oxide, as an insecticide used especially for the protection of organic specimens in tropical environments.

The handwriting on the versos of these cyanotypes is not that of Anna Atkins or Anne Dixon; it even appears to differ from the handwriting on the labels of the botanical specimens in the same album. The colour of the images is a consistent, slightly greenish-blue (around 23D8 – ‘sapphire blue’), unlike the cyanotypes of Anna Atkins (which are typically 21D7, and which correspond with that of cyanotypes made by Herschel’s standard method (a)). The greenish-blue colour 23D8 is obtained when potassium ferricyanide alone is used as the sensitizer in the ‘proto-cyanotype’ (see §4.1.1), moreover the relatively long exposures of one or two hours to ‘bright sun’ are consistent with the use of this much less light-sensitive substance alone. The infrared spectrum of the blue pigment is close to that of the proto-cyanotype process (see Appendix II.7) rather than the usual Prussian blue of Herschel’s standard sensitizer using ammonium ferric citrate and potassium ferricyanide. Exposure of the standard sensitizer for hours would also have resulted in massive over-exposure, to the detriment of the image quality. The highlights of the cyanotypes in this album are clear white, again characteristic of the simple ferricyanide method, and unlike the somewhat blue-stained highlights of Atkins’ and Dixon’s cyanotypes. The versos of the prints are also clean white, unlike the more or less blued versos of many of Atkins’ and Dixon’s prints, suggesting a different coating technique, of brushing rather than immersion.

Without further historical and graphological research, the author(s) of this album will remain unidentified, but it can be suggested with some confidence that it did not issue from the hands of Anna Atkins or Anne Dixon. It is interesting that there should have been another botanical cyanotypist active within a few months of the publication of Herschel’s invention; particularly in view of the circumstantial indications that the prints may not have been made in Northern Europe: the fine weather conditions prevailing at the season of exposure, and the printer’s apparent lack of (or possibly, ignorance of) ammonium ferric citrate as a means of greatly accelerating the exposure. The exotic origins of some of the specimens might also suggest a widely-travelled author, although exchange of specimens between collectors was a common activity. Until further evidence comes to light, the identity of this ‘anonymous autobotanographer’ must remain a rather tantalising mystery.
5.8 Later botanical cyanotypes

Following Anna Atkins’ pioneering endeavours, the cyanotype process continued to be used sporadically for botanical photograms; but over the years the purpose in this can be seen to shift away from simply recording plant taxonomy towards the making of works of art. Connoisseurs have always maintained that the vision and sensibility displayed in Anna Atkins’ and Anne Dixon’s botanical cyanotypes transcend mere scientific illustration, and elevate their images to the status of works of art, although there is very little to suggest that they originally intended them as such. It is interesting to observe how the recognition of creative botanical cyanotype as art has slowly gained ground over the intervening years, to the point where such works are now to be found on the gallery walls, rather than the herbarium shelves. A recent celebration of botanical drawings and photograms as “exhilarating artistic experimentation...in drawing with light” may be found in the sumptuously illustrated book *Ocean Flowers.*

A later echo of Anna’s work may be found in the albums prepared by Eric Craig (1829?–1923), who was a fern mounter and curio dealer in Auckland, New Zealand. He had a shop near Auckland Museum in 1892–3, from which he sold books of pressed ferns. He published two editions, in 1888 and 1892, of 100 cyanotype illustrations of 172 varieties of fern, following the layout and some of the typography originally employed by Herbert Boucher Dobbie in his *New Zealand Ferns* published in 1880; it is also apparent that he used some of Dobbie’s labelling but his specimens are different. Examples of Craig’s work exist in the National Library of New Zealand and in the National Museum and Gallery of Wales, in Cardiff.

The traditions of the botanical cyanotype were also carried on in the USA by Bertha Evelyn Jaques (née Clausen, 1863–1941) of Iowa, who used the process around 1905 to record images of numerous plant species, some of them endangered. Attractive examples of her work have recently commanded substantial prices at auction. The modelling of the light permeating her diaphanes confers a delicacy of gradation on the photogram which gives it the illusory appearance of a photographic image of a three-dimensional original (see §6.2). Some of her work from the collection of Hans P. Kraus, Jr., is illustrated in DiNoto and Winter’s *The Pressed Plant: The Art of Botanical Specimens, Nature Prints and Sun Pictures.*
More recently, in 1996 a touring exhibition of ‘Floral Blueprints’ by Alexander Hamilton, created as part of the Scottish ‘Fotofeis’ photography festival and sponsored by the Scottish Arts Council, brought botanical cyanotypes to a wide contemporary public in several exhibition venues. Hamilton’s technique differs from the customary use of exsiccati for botanical photograms: his flower specimens, which he grows himself, are fresh, and the act of pressing the flower into the surface of the sensitized paper leaves an impression of its fleshy centre, and traces of the natural pigments and pollen stain the image, adding sepia and other tones to contrast with the blue.  

Although cyanotype is still the principal medium, there is also a distant echo here of Herschel’s early anthotype or phytotype process of 1840, which used the natural pigments from flowers to make photographic images. Hamilton’s preoccupation with light is manifest in the delicate translucency of his flower heads and petal arrangements, which are formally and symmetrically set against a large ground of very dark blue, shading almost into black; their mandala-like quality invites deep contemplation. One reviewer has also likened them to astronomical photographs of distant galaxies.

5.9 Julia Herschel’s lacemaking handbooks

To return to the use of cyanotype for photograms, a rare example originates from Herschel’s own family: in 1869, his seventh daughter, Julia Herschel (1845–1933, the 10th of his 12 children by Margaret), prepared A handbook for Greek and Roman lace making illustrated with specimens printed using her father’s cyanotype process, fig. 5.9.
The work was published by R. Barrett and Sons of London, but the author chose, like Anna Atkins, to remain anonymous; in 1870 Julia’s second edition carried the shorter title *Handbook of Greek Lace Making.*

5.10 Early pictorial studies in cyanotype

While platinotype was still being developed in the 1870s and 80s, a few photographic artists, concerned for the endurance of their work, had begun to reconsider the humble cyanotype, whose simple processing in water avoided any use of the fixing agents that tended to later degrade the silver image. The French artist, Henri Le Secq (1818–1882), became one of the most significant users of the process for this reason. His entire oeuvre is reviewed in the *Catalogue Raisonné*, compiled by Janis and Sartre, and a brief biography can also be found in *The Art of the French Calotype* by Jammes and Janis. Although Le Secq virtually gave up making new photographs after 1856, he continued to be concerned about the longevity of his work. Of his architectural studies, those mounted with gum into albums and presented to the Bibliothèque Nationale in 1853–4 now contain faded silver prints of a pale yellow–brown, which contrast starkly with the rich, unmounted specimens that were deposited at the Bibliothèque des Arts Décoratifs. Having observed that his silver prints were prone to fade, Le Secq, quite late in his life, used the cyanotype process to reprint many of his negatives.

It is not known exactly when, around the 1870s, Le Secq made his important cyanotypes; his *Fantasies Photographiques* in still–life are engaging and mysterious works, but studies of sculpture and architecture predominate, and there are also some portraits, including Le Secq’s father and mother, which suggest that he did not have any particular aesthetic difficulty with using the process for this genre.

These cyanotypes constitute his enduring legacy: not a single still–life print by him is known to have survived on silver salted paper. Among the cyanotypes by Le Secq in the collection of the George Eastman House, Rochester NY, is his famous image *Farmyard Scene*, and several of his architectural studies, most of which are in excellent condition, except one which shows some evidence of fading in comparison with its edges, which were presumably matted at some time when the picture was mounted and ‘exposed’. Jammes and Janis attribute the cyanotype process that Le Secq used, and possibly the source of his sensitized paper, to Marion and Company, or to Testud de Beauregard, but offer no
information as to whether this method differed from that originally invented by Herschel.

A more recent example of the ‘artistic rehabilitation’ of the cyanotype can be seen in the treatment of the photographs of Paul Burty Haviland (1880–1950), who was one of the lesser-known members of Stieglitz’s Photo-secessionist circle in the first decade of this century. An exhibition of Haviland’s work was recently mounted in Paris, including a substantial number of beautiful cyanotype studies in portraiture and the female nude. As a curatorial footnote in the catalogue, Heilbrun and Bajac observe that these were most likely intended by Haviland himself only as trial proofs of his negatives, which he subsequently preferred to print in platinum or gum bichromate for exhibition or sale:

“Quelques tirages au platine, destiné probablement à l’exposition voire à la vente, portent un monogramme et, plus rarement, une date, à la différence des cyanotypes, tirés sur des papiers plus fins, sur lesquels ne figure aucune mention et qui furent peut-être
utilisés par Haviland pour ‘vérifier’ ses négatifs, comme on utilise aujourd’hui une planche contact” 490

Nonetheless these cyanotype proofs now stand as finished artworks in their own right, and the authors of the catalogue also suggest that Haviland may have had the issue of permanence in mind when he originally made them:

“Ces images se caractérisent, en effet, par un manque d’afféterie, un caractère direct mais gracieux, une poésie simple et raffinée auquel le bleu du cyanotype – dont l’utilisation au départ n’était peut-être pas une recherche esthétique mais un simple désir de conservation, le cyanotype étant un procédé permanent – ajoute encore, du moins pour notre regard contemporain, charme, mystère et bien sûr couleur.” 491

The renowned American artist and teacher, Arthur Wesley Dow (1857–1922), used cyanotype around 1899 to make a poetic study of his hometown of Ipswich in New England; he compiled 41 prints into a personal album dedicated to his friend, the poet Everett Stanley Hubbard.

Fig. 5.11 Arthur Wesley Dow, “Little Venice” from Ipswich Days, 1899 (Collection of John T. and Susan H. Moran)
This privately owned and previously undocumented album of his vernacular cyanotypes was published in 2007 by the Addison Gallery of American Art as *Ipswich Days*. Being a celebrated painter and man of means, Dow had no need of cheap expedients for his materials, so we may presume that the cyanotype – including its colour – was his medium of choice for this affectionate and wistful portrayal of his beloved environs. As its curator, Trevor Fairbrother, says of this choice:

“He loved the blue monochrome of cyanotype prints, delighting in their capacity to give reality a strange or otherworldly cast.”

5.11 Documentary and topographical cyanotypes

Compared with the rather limited extent of its pictorial use, cyanotype has found considerable application for documentary purposes, including scientific, archaeological, ethnographic, topographical and engineering studies. A noted British user of cyanotype during the 1880s was the civil engineer, Washington Teasdale (1831–1903), from Leeds, who may have been the subject of Frank Meadow Sutcliffe’s complimentary observation already recorded in §1.2. Teasdale was a prominent member of several Victorian Scientific Societies – Astronomical, Microscopical, Geological, Photographic, etc., – and he used cyanotype effectively to illustrate his multifarious interests, as can be seen from an archive of his prints preserved in the Museum of the History of Science, Oxford, which also provides a commentary. It was said of him in a biographical note:

“...the doyen of local scientists, Mr. Teasdale was well known and welcomed wherever men of science most do congregate.”

In the field of archaeology, an unusual illustration of the capability of the process to render atmospheric studies of sculptural artefacts is provided by a set of 30 cyanotypes produced around 1895 by Henri Ranoux. These are described in Ken Jacobson’s beautiful catalogue, *Études d’après Nature*, and they illustrate quite dramatically the Roman finds from an archaeological excavation in North Africa, which includes a self-portrait of the photographer himself working on the site. This album also contains three collodion or silver-gelatin prints, which look rather sadly washed-out and dull in comparison with the vibrant cyanotypes.

The Rijksmuseum in Amsterdam has substantial holdings of cyanotypes within its photography collection, including albums of documentary cyanotypes dating from the early 1900s by Hendrik Dooyer,
showing the previous Dutch colonies such as Suriname, documenting life on the large colonial plantations of the time.\textsuperscript{498}

The Canadian National Archive has substantial holdings of cyanotypes, including many full-plate architectural records of dwelling houses. The simplicity of the process in not calling for elaborate darkroom facilities may also be the reason for its employment to illustrate several personal diaries – accounts both of everyday life and adventure – which date from the 1890s. These include an album of about 100 cyanotype prints from half-plate photographs of North American domestic life by W. Braybrook Bayley taken in the period 1889–91. In view of the apparent well-to-do character of his family, the economy of his chosen process is a little surprising and the prints are actually mounted in a ruled cashbook! A similar set of 17 cyanotypes of local Canadian landscape and family by Able Silver Bowers date from ca. 1895. An anonymous diary of ‘An Account of a Trip to Hunters’ Island’ dating from 1899 is illustrated with 24 cyanotypes, and on another adventurous theme, there are 18 cyanotypes by Walter Strand of gold-rush scenes in the Klondyke, northern British Columbia, in 1899.

It is apparent from a substantial collection of photographic postcards in the archive of the George Eastman House, in Rochester, NY, that postcards were commercially available in the USA in the period 1900–1914 precoated with cyanotype sensitizer; amateur photographers could easily sun-print their personal pictures onto the cards, with minimal resources and processing, before adding their greetings, and posting them to friends and relatives.

The Agricultural College of Utah (now Utah State University) holds an extraordinary collection of 2,608 cyanotypes, dating from 1896 to 1916, documenting many aspects of the history of the College, including images of students, faculty, class-room scenes, buildings and grounds, events, experiment stations, athletics, student projects, and agricultural products. An alumnus of the college, George Melvin Turpin (1882–1943), took many of the photographs. He was appointed Assistant Station Chemist in 1906, then Professor of Poultry Husbandry from 1909 to 1913. These are the oldest photographic records of the College; the full 2,608 images are listed in a comprehensive inventory,\textsuperscript{499} of which 364 may be viewed in an accessible online archive.\textsuperscript{500}

In the area of ethnographic studies, the Canadian National Gallery, in Ottawa, has a set of fine cyanotype prints of photographs of Native North American Indians made by Edward S. Curtis around 1910. Several tribes
are represented, Nootka, Piegan and Arapaho; the hunting scenes are particularly striking and the medium seems sympathetically well-suited to the subject-matter, moreover, cyanotype enabled him to proof some of his negatives in the field – which numbered 40,000 in total!

The Photographic History Collection of the Smithsonian Institution has an extensive archive of the chronophotographic work by Eadward Muybridge, proofed in cyanotype as strips from his *Animal Locomotion Series*.⁵⁰¹

![Eadward Muybridge](image)

*Fig. 5.12 Eadward Muybridge*  
(Collection of the Smithsonian Institution)

There are 850 of these strips, which are believed to be contact proofs of the original glass-plate camera negatives, whose whereabouts are now unknown. A comprehensive public resource site now makes most of these cyanotype proof strips available online.⁵⁰² Many of these images are particularly important because they reveal background details of Muybridge’s photographic *modus operandi* which were cropped out of the collotype prints in the published versions of his work. The unedited pictures reveal the setup at his outdoor studio, with its corrugated rubber track, the backdrop, props and cameras. In the animal series, a trainer can often be seen to lead the animal or urge it along the track.⁵⁰³
In the collection of the George Eastman House there is a topographical record, made as a survey for a railway company, which consists of approximately 50 full-plate cyanotypes, possibly printed on commercial blueprint paper, and entitled *Elimination of Grade Crossing Photographs, February 1907, Schenectady*. Also on the topic of railways, there are about 4000 cyanotypes, 6.5 x 8.5”, held by the National Railway Museum at York, England, which are proofs of a large archive of ‘engineering-works photographs’ dating from the period 1910–1953; these are glass-plate negatives from the Great Eastern (later LNER) works at Stratford, illustrating the stages of locomotive manufacture, testing and maintenance, and many of the peripheral matters of a large engineering industry, which include even portraits of the employees. The whole archive is well-documented and the images are of excellent quality and colour, generally 20/21E8.

All engineering projects depended on blueprinted plans, and some were also nicely complemented by cyanotypes documenting the actual progress of the construction. The ready availability of blueprint paper 'on site' must have provided an easy and inexpensive way of immediately proofing the large format camera negatives made to record some of the largest projects in history. The Irn-Bru Company of Glasgow has a slogan: "Made in Scotland from Girders" which also serves as a most apt description of that engineering wonder, the Forth Rail Bridge in Scotland. Begun in 1883, this first steel structure in Great Britain took seven years in the building. Besides the blueprints proper, in the Institute of Civil Engineers in London, the gigantic construction of the Bridge during 1883–1890 was also documented photographically by one of the project’s engineers, Evelyn George Carey, whose negatives were proofed in cyanotype, as well as albumen, and the specimens are now kept in the archive of the Canadian Centre for Architecture, in Montreal.

![Forth Bridge](image)

*Fig. 5.13 Evelyn George Carey, Construction of the Forth Bridge (Collection of the Canadian Centre for Architecture)*
The recent book by Michael Gray and Angelo Maggi describes the achievement of the photographer:

"The building of the Forth Bridge was marked and controlled through photography; the official photographer: Evelyn George Carey, a young engineer and personal assistant to the designer, Benjamin Baker worked on the project over a period of eight years between 1882 to 1890. His pictures capture, clearly and lyrically, the scale, tensions and inherent dangers of such a project." 508

An engineering enterprise of comparable magnitude was the cutting of the Panama Canal. The National Library of Australia, Canberra, has an album containing 37 full-plate cyanotypes, entitled Percement du Canal de Panama,509 which makes an interesting comparison with an album of 57 albumen prints having the same title.510 These were probably assembled from the work of French photographers during the period 1888–1893. Ferdinand de Lesseps’ attempt during 1881–90 ended with his bankruptcy, and the project was taken over by the US Army Corps of Engineers and completed ca. 1904–14.

The same Corps of Engineers was also responsible for the survey of the Mississippi River and opening it up to modern commercial navigation. This survey gave rise to an entire archive of topographical and documentary studies of the river and its environs, photographed and printed over the period 1883–92 by Henry Peter Bosse (1844–1903), a German–born immigrant, trained in art and engineering, who became a cartographer and draughtsman with the Corps of Engineers.

Bosse’s photographic archive, showing the survey, mapping and maintenance of that great river, remained unknown until ca. 1988, when an album of 169 of his cyanotypes was brought to light by historian and antique dealer, Michael Conner, who published on the subject.511 The album was sold at auction in 1990 and subsequently broken by dealers, one of whom has published on some of its contents, now dispersed.512 Another album of Bosse’s work was discovered by a Corps historian, John Anfinson, in the pilothouse of a river dredge; it is now preserved by the St Paul District History Office of the Corps,513 and its contents can be viewed online at the site of the Minnesota Digital Library.514

During the 1990s, five more cyanotype albums by Bosse were located and are now distributed between the Rock Island Office of the Corps, the Mississippi River Museum at Dubuque, Iowa, and the Mayo Foundation in Rochester, Minnesota, the latter providing most of the images for Mark Neuzil’s 2001 publication, Views on the Mississippi: The Photographs of
Henry Peter Bosse. Neuzil estimates that there is a total of about 350 original images known to be by Bosse, all originally made on 11”x14” glass plates, of which only seven survive.

As the quality of his vision has come to be more widely appreciated, Bosse’s prominence as a photographer has risen, so that he is now regarded as one of the foremost landscapists of the USA in the late 19th century. The quality of his work has been appreciatively articulated by Earl Johnson:

“His vision was romantic, but he was scrupulous in his composition and in his choices of subjects. While many of his photographs were obviously shot to document the work of the Corps of Engineers to tame the river, his vision displayed a much wider sensibility. He includes many images of cities, bridges, harbors, and rail yards, as if to explore the interaction between the river and the people who live with it and use it. Bosse was trained as an artist (a few of his paintings still exist), and his photographs display a highly developed sense of composition. I think that he will be remembered as one of the great photographers of his time.”

Both Neuzil and Johnson have observed that the paper used by Bosse in at least two of his albums is watermarked Aloe’s Satino Johannot et Cie Annonay, and a fine example can be viewed online, courtesy of the J. Paul Getty Museum, together with a description of this watermark.
Evidently there was a market for ‘pictorial quality’ blueprint paper at this time – at least in the USA – which was largely fulfilled by the A.S. Aloe Company, the leading makers of surveying instruments and precision machinery, who imported French paper rawstock specially made for them by the famous mill of Johannot et Cie at Annay.

The Aloe Company machine–coated it themselves with cyanotype sensitizer, in St. Louis, Missouri. Their catalogue also carries the boast: “Our facilities for making blue prints are superior to any in America”. 519

The New York Subway was constructed during 1901–09, and extensively documented in cyanotype by Pierre Pullis.520

Likewise, above ground, the construction was recorded of the Boston Elevated Railway Line. An eclectic online exhibition and anthology of historical cyanotypes, featuring many engineering and commercial objects, may be found on the Luminous Lint website.521
5.12 Cyanotype currency notes and postage stamps

A curiously resourceful use of the cyanotype process arose in Southern Africa during the Anglo-Boer War (1899–1902); the following account of the episode is substantially condensed from the detailed study published by the philatelic historian, Robert Goldblatt.522

In October 1899, shortly after the commencement of hostilities, a Boer force laid siege to the town of Mafeking, in which were stationed about 1200 British and Cape troops. The beleaguered town was well-provisioned and defended; it survived the bombardment and consequent privations until, after 217 days, the siege was eventually lifted in May 1900 by British columns arriving from Kimberley. But by the end of January 1900, a shortage of currency had arisen in the town, so to provide for payments during the siege, the military commander, Colonel Robert Baden-Powell, ordered the minting and issue of garrison siege notes – popularly known as “good-fors” – in several denominations, which would be redeemed on the resumption of civil law. Of these, the £1 note was designed by Baden-Powell personally and unlike the other notes, which were printed, it was duplicated photographically onto glass plates by Mr E J Ross, the local auctioneer who was a skilled amateur photographer. Since there was insufficient photographic paper on hand to print the issue, Ross decided to employ the recipe for cyanotype to make the printing paper locally.
It is said that one of the two ingredients, potassium ferricyanide, was in short supply in Mafeking, so native runners were appointed to the unenviable task of smuggling the chemical through the Boer lines by night. On the first attempt, the runners returned safely – but bearing potassium ferrocyanide: the message had been badly written. At a second attempt, the correct chemical was secured, but the unfortunate runners were caught and shot, and their potassium ferricyanide confiscated. The third attempt was successful, and Ross was then able to prepare the blueprint paper for sun-printing, followed by processing in the ‘Mafeking Mint’, which was a bomb-proof subterranean dark room. The £1 siege note was issued in March 1900, as an edition of 683 individually numbered specimens, each having taken fifteen to twenty minutes to make, signed by the bank manager and countersigned by the paymaster. Of these, only 44 were ever redeemed after the relief of the town and the return to civil law.

The success of the cyanotype printing of the £1 siege notes must have suggested to Baden-Powell that the same process could also be employed to solve a growing crisis in the shortage of postage stamps for internal use. Mafeking was defended on a perimeter of six outlying fortifications, up to one mile distant, but traffic and communication between the garrisons manning these posts and the town centre was necessarily restricted. To provide an internal postal facility, Baden-Powell set up a corps of messenger-cadets using bicycles, under the command of Cadet Sergeant-Major Goodyear, who at the time had just achieved the tender age of 12 years – the very model of an ideal future Boy Scout. Postage rates per half ounce were 1d. within the town and 3d. to the outposts, a small price considering the risks the messengers ran. Not surprisingly, the demand for these denominations of postage stamp was heavy and when the supply of official Cape stamps, overprinted ‘Mafeking Besieged’, ran out, a special issue was printed locally by cyanotype. Dr. D Taylor, another local amateur photographer, took a portrait of young Goodyear mounted on his bicycle for the 1d denomination, and Ross photographed Baden-Powell himself for the 3d. To these were added appropriately designed ornamentation and the wording ‘Mafeking Besieged’ to form two ‘master dies’ which were then each duplicated photographically twelvefold, and re-photographed in reduction onto glass plates, from which the stamps could then be contact-printed by cyanotype in sheets of 12 at a time, which were then gummed and perforated.
The ‘Mafeking 1d and 3d Blues’ were issued on 9 April 1900, nearly 800 sheets of each denomination were minted by the local printer, Townshend. These unofficial stamps echo the precedent of the celebrated official Victorian twopenny blue – which was also printed in Prussian blue. The idiosyncratic postage stamps and £1 banknotes that resulted from this historic episode are now highly-prized – and highly-priced – collectors’ items that have naturally intrigued philatelists and numismatists over the years. The rarest varieties of the postage stamps are deemed by collectors to be those of a pale grey colour, rather than the deep blue, but in view of the ease with which cyanotypes can be chemically bleached it might be imprudent to invest too heavily in such ‘rarities’.

The interest in these items is especially high in South Africa, where there is also an historical awareness of Herschel’s presence at the Cape over the years 1834 to 1838, just prior to the invention of photography, and the subsequent visits there of other British photographers. The debate rumbles on regarding the suggestion that Queen Victoria personally considered it an act of lèse-majesty on the part of Baden-Powell to have allowed his portrait to appear on a postage stamp, which was a privilege normally reserved for the British Sovereign alone. Certainly, the Queen gave no outward sign of displeasure, and the defender of Mafeking became General Sir Robert Baden-Powell, now also remembered as the founder of the Boy Scout Movement in 1907.
5.13 Linley Sambourne’s cyanotypes

Edward Linley Sambourne (1844–1910), an artist in black and white, became the cartoonist–in–chief for the humorous British weekly *Punch* in 1900, having contributed to the magazine since 1867. To assist his drawing he kept an archive of reference images for his illustrations that has been preserved at Leighton House Museum, in the Royal Borough of Kensington and Chelsea, and is in the process of being conserved and catalogued at the item level. His working environment may be seen nearby at his dwelling, Linley Sambourne House, which has also been preserved by the Borough as a museum. Sambourne used photography extensively to provide ‘model’ images for his illustrations; it is estimated that he has left about 30,000 photographs – mostly 5x4 inches – perhaps the largest collection known, and he proof–printed many of his negatives of posed figures by the cyanotype process. The blue colour of his prints was of little consequence for his line–drawings provided the material could resolve adequate detail.

Fig. 5.18 Edward Linley Sambourne
(Collection of Royal Borough of Kensington and Chelsea)

When necessary for his illustrative purposes, he had enlargements made by others in silver–gelatin. From the consistent size and accurate regular rectangular shape of his cyanotype prints, it seems very likely that he used small pre–cut sheets of a commercial blueprint paper of the kind then currently marketed by Marion, Rouch, or Bemrose for pictorial purposes rather than for plan copying. It is likely that he found cyanotype a most convenient process because he did not possess a proper photographic darkroom, with safelighting, but just used a curtained–off area of his bathroom at home, in which he probably printed privately.
while his wife was away, because many of his images were also blue in the more pejorative sense. In 2002 an exhibition entitled *Public Artist, Private Passions*, conveyed something of the voyeuristic nature of his image archive.\(^{528}\)

### 5.14 Some contemporary cyanotypists

There are now, in the 21st century, so many artists working with the cyanotype process that this text, oriented towards the process rather than its practitioners, cannot possibly do them justice. A few references to exhibited and published work and websites follow, which will lead the reader to a number of present-day cyanotypists, but with the frank admission that the choice is the author’s personal one rather than being representative or exhaustive. Many more *afficionados* of the cyanotype medium can be found, for example, participating in the Facebook public group for Cyanotype with over 3,400 members,\(^{529}\) on Flickr,\(^ {530}\) and on the AlternativePhotography.com website,\(^ {531}\) representing over 500 artists, whose editor, Malin Fabbri has published a thesis on the subject of the contemporary professional use of cyanotype in graphic design.\(^ {532}\)

To begin our survey in the UK: photogram artist Angela Easterling was inspired by the work of Anna Atkins, and has demonstrated the cyanotype process for botanography in workshops at the renowned Eden Project in Cornwall, and in collaboration with the Royal Botanic Gardens at Kew, as well as using it on a human scale for making live figure photograms in socially involving workshops.\(^ {533}\) In Kent, Nick Veasey has made very striking cyanotype prints from some of his extraordinary X-ray photographs.\(^ {534}\) Master printmaker, the late David Chow, was known chiefly as an exponent of the palladium–platinum medium until his recent tragic death, but began his exploration of alternative process printing with studies of cyanotype flower photograms, bound into handmade books.\(^ {535}\)

In Scotland there has been a significant resurgence of interest in cyanotype, as exemplified by the plant photograms of Alexander Hamilton, described in §5.8. The link between cyanotype and the blueprinting practice of engineering drawings has been explored by Roger Farnham and Harry Magee of Glasgow Print Studio, and was brought to the public in a program of lectures and exhibitions occurring throughout the city of Glasgow during early 2013.\(^ {536}\) In Stockholm, Malin Fabbri has set up, and edits the popular alternative photographic process site *AlternativePhotography.com*, which is a valued resource for
information and research, representing more than 400 artists, over half of whom have contributed to Fabbri’s published anthology of alternative work in many processes, including cyanotype.537

In the USA, the artist John Dugdale of New York is celebrated for his body of sensitive personal work in cyanotype, carried out in spite of his serious visual impairment.538 Robert A. Schaefer Jr., has been a distinguished practitioner and noted exhibitor of the cyanotype process since the 1970s, and explains it thus:

“My favorite 19th century process is cyanotype because it enhances the light surreal quality of my photography.” 539

Collaborative artists, Barbara Ciurej and Lindsay Lochman, have assembled a fascinating series of composite images comprising plant cyanotypes montaged over pigment prints of statuary–like high–key portraits of women.540

Brian Pawlowski has written extensively on his blog of his journey of discovery in making expressive cyanotypes by the ‘new’ method (§7.4), and illustrates his work with beautiful examples.541 The innovative work of John Metoyer in cyanotype has been very favourably reviewed by John Wood, whose essay has been mentioned in §1.9.542 Brenton Hamilton 543
and Peter Nappi\textsuperscript{544} are also noted practitioners with interesting websites showing cyanotypes.

Jesseca Ferguson's cyanotype still–lives made from pin–hole photographs collaged into book objects convey a museum–like ethos that engages thoughtful examination.\textsuperscript{545}

Fig. 5.20 Jesseca Ferguson

Possibly the most significant proof that cyanotype has finally achieved an improved status of acceptance in contemporary artistic practice was signalled by the curation in 2016 of an exhibition devoted solely to the
medium at the Worcester Art Museum, in collaboration with Clark University, in Massachusetts. This was probably the first exhibition devoted solely to cyanotypes in modern times, and was accompanied by an excellent well-illustrated catalogue.\textsuperscript{546} The work on display ranged from nineteenth century photographers such as Henry Bosse, Edward Sheriff Curtis, and F. Holland Day, to contemporary artists, Jesseca Ferguson and Christian Marclay. Organized in collaboration with a seminar from Clark University, the exhibition was presented with thematic emphasis on botanicals, landscape, abstraction, and portraiture—areas that dominated much of the production of cyanotypes in the early twentieth century and recur in contemporary work.\textsuperscript{547}

The Atkins anniversary exhibition in 2018 at the New York Public Library, described in §5.5, included five artists working in cyanotype: Meghann Riepenhoff (Fig. 5.21), Kathleen Herbert, Ulf Saupe, and the present author.

\textbf{Fig. 5.21} Megann Riepenhoff, Ecotone 1 (Bainbridge Island, WA 04.04.16, Draped with Shower and Drizzle.)
6 Contemporary Methodology

“Tui lucent oculi
Sicut solis radii,
Sicut splendor fulguris
Lucem donat tenebris.”

(“Your eyes sparkle with a light
Just like the rays of the sun,
Or the splendour of lightning
Illuminating shadows.”)

Carmina Burana
(Codex from the Monastery at Benediktbeuern, ca 1230)

Instructions for making classic cyanotypes may be found in numerous publications on photographic practice, but most of these accounts are perfunctory, treating the process only as a curiosity. In recent years, a few publications have acknowledged the cyanotype more seriously as a fine-print medium, to be ranked alongside other alternative processes, most notably the comprehensive account by the artist and practitioner, Christina Z. Anderson. This chapter and the following one are intended to provide all the information needed to make fine cyanotypes, assuming no previous experience on the part of the reader. As a preliminary, some consideration is given—possibly for the first time—to the geometrical-optical effects of sun-printing photograms from objects that are not flat like engravings and photographic negatives, but rather three-dimensional. Then follows a description of the material requirements and modus operandi that are common to all the processes and formulae for making cyanotypes—and indeed any other iron-based, plain-paper contact prints. Finally, the major differing formulations that have been devised for cyanotype in recent years are reviewed and their relative merits compared.

But first, our language stands in need of a word to encompass the class of possible objects that can be used to intercept and modulate the light when making photographs without lenses.

6.1 Diaphanes: a neologism

Throughout the first fifty years of photography, prints, as distinct from camera negatives, were generally made without the aid of any optical device employing lenses. A negative, or some other object, was simply interposed between the sensitised surface and the light source, which at that time was, faute de mieux, the sun or a bright sky. The print sensitiser could be chosen from a variety of formulations, including cyanotype. Close contact between object and surface ensures a sharp outline, and any translucency in the object will transmit a gradation of
tone to the image, which can be both delicate and faithful. When the object is a negative originated in a camera, the resulting photograph is, of course, called a contact print, but the images derived from other objects we now refer to as ‘photograms’. A photogram is a camera-less image, usually negative-working, of the shadow cast by an object onto sensitized paper. If the object is at all translucent, it may modulate the transmitted light, and the photogram then ceases to be a mere silhouette, but acquires an internal structure. Some of the philosophical implications of this mode of photographic image-making have been discussed recently by Geoffrey Batchen in terms of Derridean concepts.

The items used to generate photograms can be quite various, but a usual requisite is that they should be quite flat: leaves, ferns, sea-weeds, and other botanical specimens; feathers and insect wings; lace, silks, and other thin fabrics; cliché-verre plates, painted glass, printed text, handwritten notes, drawings on tracing paper, and printed images on paper, such as engravings, mezzotints, and woodcuts. The most extraordinary object used to register itself as a photogram must be a thin frontal section, cut with a microtome from the frozen torso of a human male cadaver; this display of the internal organs of the body was printed in cyanotype in the 1960s, and has been shown recently in exhibition.

In writing about the practices of early photography, I have become increasingly conscious that the English language lacks any collective noun to encompass the whole class of objects, such as those listed above, which have been used to imprint their likenesses by interposing them in the path of the light falling upon a photographically sensitised surface. To serve this semantic purpose, I propose a revival and re-definition of the obsolete noun diaphane, in the hope that it may find acceptance among photohistorians and possibly even lexicographers. The word has completely fallen out of use in its original meaning. The Greek roots (διαφανής, ‘through-showing’) seem appropriate, and there are precedents for employing them in a photographic context, as evidenced by Thomas Sutton’s obsolete diaphanotype process of 1856, and the diaphanoscope, one of the many names contrived for an optical device that could display transparent positive photographs, which are themselves known today as diapositives. A diaphanometer was a nineteenth-century instrument for measuring transparency, especially of the atmosphere (see §1.6). The words photophane and lithophane are similarly derived. The practice of photodiaphanie entailed the use of an albumen stripping emulsion for making transparencies. Among the
genteele Victorian pastimes described in volumes such as *Elegant Arts for Ladies* is the art of *diaphanie*: ‘the decoration of glass to the resemblance of stained windows and painted transparencies’. In French, *diaphane* is an adjective meaning ‘transparent’. Even if it can plead no other recommendation, the reappropriation of the word ‘diaphane’ would at least enable us to avoid the enforced solecism of having to refer to an engraving, a piece of lace, or a plant, for example, as ‘negatives’.

### 6.2 Skiagraphy of photograms

The casting of shadows on a photochemically sensitized surface can be described by the same geometrical–optical principles that are used to determine the appearance of light, shade, and shadow forms in pictures. This is the sub-science of ‘sciography’ or ‘skiagraphy’ which has existed since the early Renaissance, finding its origins in the elucidation by Filippo Brunelleschi ca. 1413 of the principles of geometrical perspective, which are elaborated in manuals of sciography, and applied to the drawing of shadows in projection, mainly for the purposes of architectural illustration. In these treatments sciography assumes that the sun is a static, point source of light. In distinction, I will use the word ‘skiagraphy’ for its broader relevance to photography, because it can also bring in the dimension of time, as well as space, to explain the appearances of those historic photographs which were printed-out with the lengthy exposures required by proto-photographic processes.

The parameters most relevant to skiagraphy are the spatial resolution of which the healthy human eye is capable, and geometrical aspects of the sun’s light. Under optimum conditions, our vision can resolve objects separated by an angle subtended at the eye of 1/3000 radian, and average vision can usually resolve 1/2000 radian, but the criterion normally accepted for photographic purposes is less stringent than this: an outline is deemed to be acceptably sharp when its ‘blurred’ region (the penumbra) subtends an angle at the eye of 1/1000 radian (0.05° or 3 minutes of arc). This figure is taken as the limiting diameter of the ‘circle of confusion’, when a disc is just perceived as a point, and it is the figure customarily employed in calculating the effective depth-of-field of lenses. A viewing distance of 250 mm is the usual nearpoint for normal vision, and is also the natural, comfortable distance for viewing a print of about ‘whole plate’ or 10x8 inch size; at this distance, an angular resolution of 1/1000 radian obviously corresponds to a linear resolution of two points in the image separated by a distance of 0.25 mm.
The angular diameter of the sun viewed from the earth’s surface is nearly 1/100 radian, or ca. 0.5°. The sun’s disc is therefore not exactly a point source of light, as usually assumed by sciography, and any shadow that it casts displays two distinct regions: the umbra and the penumbra (figure 6.1).

![Fig 6.1 The structure of a solar shadow (not to scale).](image)

The umbra is defined as the region of ‘totality’ where the sun’s disc (or other light source) is completely obscured by the shadowing object, and it is the dominant feature of most shadows. The penumbra is the region at the edges of the umbra where the illumination is partial, the tones graduating from full shade to full light as a greater portion of the sun’s disc appears uncovered; so the penumbra confers a blurred or ‘fuzzy’ edge to any shadow cast by a light source of finite size. Any solar penumbra subtends an angle of 1/100 radian at the edge of the object casting it; i.e. the width of a penumbra is approximately 1/100th the distance of the object from its shadow. The apparent diurnal motion of the sun is, thanks to the earth’s rotation about its axis, a full orbit of 360° over 24 hours; that is, an angular displacement of 15°/hour, as any sundial will attest. Therefore, the sun travels through an arc in the sky equal to its own apparent diameter in a time interval of about 2 minutes.

From these observations, four ‘Laws of Skiagraphy’ may be posited:

I. Sun–cast shadows appear blurred, with a penumbra, when viewed from less than ten times the distance of the object casting them.

II. Solar exposure of a photogram of two minutes duration causes shadow edges to blur additionally in the direction of travel by an amount approximately equal to the limiting value in Law I.

III. The umbra of a narrow object of width, \( w \), at distance, \( d \), will be completely displaced by penumbra within a solar photographic exposure of duration ca. \( 4w/d \) hours.

IV. The light scattered from a clear sky can ‘fill-in’ an umbra to the maximum extent of ca. 3 stops less exposure than the direct illuminance.
of the sun. The extent of ‘fill-in’ is proportional to the solid angle of irradiating sky ‘seen’ by the sensitized surface.

When making photograms it is usually advised that, to obtain a sharp image, the object and paper must be in close contact – but we now see that this is not always necessarily so. The criterion for sharpness in a projected photogram is easily determined based on the resolution: if we assume that the finished image will be viewed at a minimum comfortable distance of 10 inches (254 mm), then by the First Law of Skiagraphy, a sun–printed image will appear sharp to the eye if the object that makes it is distant from the sensitized paper by no more than 1/10th of this viewing distance – i.e. 1 inch (25 mm).

Moreover, the exposure for such a projected image must be relatively short (less than 2 minutes by the Second Law of Skiagraphy) if the sun’s apparent motion is not to blur the edges significantly. Most cyanotype and photogenic drawing photograms (using the old, insensitive processes) were made with exposures substantially longer than two minutes, which would have extended the depth of the penumbra and caused considerable blurring if the objects were not in contact. This explains the early photographers’ preference, in their choice of subject matter, for objects that were already substantially two–dimensional, flattened into close contact with the paper under a sheet of glass or mica: eg. leaves, algae, feathers, silks, and lace.

However, the criterion does suggest that, provided sun exposures can be kept short, as with the new cyanotype process (§7), there is no need for an object to be in overall contact, and it explains why objects with some three–dimensional quality can also produce interesting photograms with apparently fairly sharp outlines. That an object can project a sharp photogram without being in overall contact with the sensitized surface leads to a further interesting effect on the ‘modelling’ of such images. While totally opaque objects in close contact always yield simple silhouettes, even incomplete contact can still maintain a sharp outline with little or no penumbra, provided the object remains no more than an inch or so away from the sensitized surface. Now, if there is a convexity of shape, the skylight can penetrate exposed regions of the umbra, causing a gradation of ‘fill–in’ light within the umbra, that appears in the image as a ‘false shading’ for the shapes of curved objects (Fourth Law of Skiagraphy). This imbibes the photogram with a 3–dimensional quality, which is well–exemplified in the botanical studies of Bertha Evelyn Jaques (§5.7), where the ‘modelling’ caused by the thickness and curvature of
the plant stems and florets, should be compared with the ‘flat’ photograms by Anna Atkins. To achieve this ‘modelling’ effect in a photogram, three conditions must be met: a bright sun, a clear hemisphere of sky which is ‘seen’ by the paper and not obstructed by a high horizon, and a short exposure, if the outline is to remain sharp.\textsuperscript{579} Obviously the specimen should not be flattened onto the paper, but simply allowed to rest upon it – no printing frame is required, but precautions may need to be taken to counter the effect of the wind. This method of making photograms is exemplified below in Fig. 6.2.

![Image of photograms]

\textbf{Fig. 6.2} Mike Ware, photograms of apples and sea urchins made with New Cyanotype exposures of ca. 1 minute to the Aegean sun.\textsuperscript{580}
6.3 The processing environment

A benefit of the low sensitivity of alternative printing processes like cyanotype is that you do not need a photographic darkroom or special safe–lighting to work under. Ordinary curtains or blinds should subdue daylight sufficiently for a ‘dim–room’, but for preference the working area should be illuminated by incandescent (tungsten) light: a 40 watt bulb, distant two meters or more, is safe for the time periods normally needed. Avoid fluorescent light if you can; some types of tube have a significant output of ultra–violet light which may cause fogging of the sensitized paper.

You will need a clean, flat, dry surface for preparing the sensitized paper and enough wet–processing space, preferably a sink, for one or two photographic dishes of an appropriate size, together with a means for washing your prints in running water, and an indoor drying facility that need be no more sophisticated than a ‘clothes–line’ and pegs (you should, however, select the design of your clothes–pegs very critically!) The sensitizers and processing chemistry used are odourless and no fumes are normally evolved, so there is no need for special ventilation in the workplace. However, it is essential to observe clean working methods, and any spilt substances must be removed immediately; remember that the sensitizer will stain most surfaces and materials rather strongly.

Before commencing any practical work, it would be prudent to acquaint youself with the hazards associated with the chemicals, which are summarised at the end of this chapter. See my disclaimer on p. 6.

6.4 Materials and equipment

The following items of equipment will be needed:

- Pencil
- Ruler
- Adhesive masking tape
- Blower brush for dusting–off negatives
- White blotting paper
- Sheet of plate glass (4–6 mm thick and larger than the paper)
- Jug to measure 1 litre (1000 cc)
- Dropping pipettes 2 to 3 cc (or small syringes – the plastic disposable type without needles – can also be used)
- Small mixing glass (a liqueur or 'shot' glass is ideal)
- Scales accurate to at least 1 g, or a chemical balance
Small spatula or plastic measuring spoon
Brown bottles for sensitizer solutions (ca. 100 cc is suitable)
A photographic dish (larger than the paper)
Means of print washing
Timer (a wristwatch will do)
Sheets of artists' paper suitable for coating* §6.4.1
Glass spreader rods or brushes for coating the paper* §6.4.2
Contact-printing frame* §6.4.3
Ultra–violet light source* §6.4.4
Suitable negatives* §6.5
*The specifications for these last five items are described in detail below.

6.4.1 Paper characteristics
Since the changes in industrial papermaking practice in the 1980s, it has become increasingly difficult to source paper suitable for coating with siderotype sensitizers. Paper chemist Dr. John C. Roberts of the University of Manchester Institute of Science and Technology summarises this historical shift in commercial practice as follows:

"For the period from around 1840 to the early 1970s paper was usually made in an acidic environment at pHs of around 4–5. This was because many grades required the use of rosin and aluminium sulfate for the control of water penetration (sizing), and solutions of aluminium sulfate exhibit a pH of around 4.5. Aluminium sulfate has also been popular with paper makers because it assists the floculation of colloidal particles and therefore behaves as a mildly effective retention aid. However, since the early 1970s there has been a move away from acidic systems towards neutral and even slightly alkaline pH. The advantages of operating at higher pH are that there is reduced corrosion, greater strength arising from better swelling of fibres at higher pH, the possibility of using high filler additions and the energy savings associated with the easier drying of filled paper. This change has had a profound effect upon the whole of the chemistry of the aqueous fibre suspension." 581

The traditional cyanotype process can be applied, with some degree of success, to almost any absorbent surface, including tee–shirts, trainers, cushion covers, plywood and old grocery bags, (§4.6, 4.7). But if your objective is high–quality cyanotype printing, it is best to work on paper having the following characteristics:

1 High (>98%) alpha–cellulose content (i.e. a paper made solely from cotton linters or linen fibres). Papers with a mixed furnish can absorb sensitizer unevenly, causing granularity or blotchiness. The presence of lignins will ultimately cause deterioration.
2 Internal sizing with Aquapel—or other equivalent alkylketene dimer—the modern neutral sizing agent for fine papers. Alum–rosin sized papers seem to work well, but their archival quality has been questioned. Gelatin–sized papers are now less commonly available, but can work well.

3 The paper must be free of alkaline buffering agents such as calcium carbonate (chalk) which is often added to protect archival quality papers from the effects of acid. Calcium carbonate reacts with the sensitizer chemicals in a disadvantageous way, precipitating insoluble calcium oxalate (also responsible for some kidney stones) and hydrolysing the iron salt. Alkali also tends to destroy the Prussian blue image (§9.2). The quoted pH of the paper should preferably be less than 7.

4 A fairly smooth, hot-pressed (HP) surface is desirable—unless you wish to make a highly textured print. ‘Not’ and ‘Rough’ surfaces may prove difficult to coat and cause loss of resolution. However, some very smooth, heavily calendered commercial papers do swell and roughen on wet processing.

5 A weight of paper around 160 to 200 grams per square meter (gsm or g/m²) is generally sufficient to ensure adequate wet strength for smaller prints up to A4; larger prints benefit on heavier, 240–300 gsm paper, but very heavy papers will be slow to wash completely. Thin tissue can yield exquisite prints—if you have the skill to coat and manipulate it in the wet baths.

6 The paper should not contain any other additives, such as clay fillers, retention aids, wet–strengthening agents, optical brightening agents, bleaches, alkaline buffers, dyes or white pigments such as titanium dioxide, which is photoreactive (Appendix III.9).

7 A ‘wove’ mould paper texture is preferable to ‘laid’ for pictorial purposes.

Increased awareness of the need for conservation of paper documents and works of art has led to the formulation by the International Standards Organization of specifications ISO 9706:1994 for Permanent Paper, and ISO 11108:1996 for Archival paper, both of which require the presence of an equivalent of 0.4 moles of alkali per kilogram of paper, i.e. an [OH⁻] equivalent volume concentration in the paper of ca. 0.3 molar, which is
comparable with the [Fe$^{3+}$] concentration of the applied sensitizer solution, §9.4.5. For an average paper weight of, say, 250 g/m$^2$, and a typical coating weight of siderotype sensitizer, it can be calculated that, per unit area, the permanent and archival papers contain an 8-fold molar excess of alkaline reserve (equivalent to [OH]$^-$) available to react with and hydrolyse the ferric salt. There is clearly great potential for decomposition of the sensitizer chemistry if only a fraction of this alkali in the sheet can contact the iron(III) salt, area for area, in the wet state, although the chalk buffer is quite involatile and unlikely to migrate through dry paper.

This new ISO specification accounts for the fact that, over the last few decades, it has become increasingly difficult to find papers that work well for siderotype printing, among the high quality cotton papers manufactured for the fine-art market of watercolorists, sketchers and printmakers and the archival document market, which all presumably conform to the above ISO standards. Such papers now always boast that they are "acid free" – implying that they probably contain an additive of chalk filler which, unfortunately, will rapidly cause the decomposition of any iron(III) sensitizer. Most contemporary siderotype practitioners have been driven to the last resort of soaking their chalk-buffered papers in dilute acid in order to destroy the calcium carbonate before coating them with sensitizer. Unfortunately many practitioners think that oxalic acid is suitable for this purpose, but calcium oxalate is just as insoluble as calcium carbonate and can cause a ‘gritty’ texture. Hydrochloric acid can be used, but recently it has been found very convenient and effective to employ a 10% solution of sulphamic acid for this purpose.\textsuperscript{582} Nonetheless, it is a tedious and undesirable procedure that tends to degrade the paper surface and strength.

A handmade paper with characteristics that have been specified by the author for alternative printing is made by Ruscombe Mill at Margaux in the Haut Médoc of France, and is called ‘Buxton’ paper.\textsuperscript{583} The Mill described Buxton paper as follows:

"It is designed to be chemically compatible with iron-salt-based sensitzers and be archivally sound. The white paper is produced from 100% security grade cotton fiber, peroxide bleached with no optical brightening agents or alkaline buffering agents such as chalk (calcium carbonate). The cotton is beaten to a high bonding strength, with only a neutral reactive internal sizing agent [alkyl ketene dimer] to ensure a good degree of impermeability. The handmade sheets are heavily pressed several times in both wet and
dry states to reduce porosity and to create the desired surface. The surface is lightly textured due to the impact of the felt mark derived from the woven woollen felts which are used."

The greatest imponderable in ‘plain paper' printing is the effect of manufacturers’ additives on the reactive chemicals of the sensitizer. Each commercial paper has its own idiosyncrasies, which may vary from batch to batch or be changed by the manufacturer without notice. There is no substitute for personal trial and experiment. Recently, a few commercial mills have produced some machine-made papers intended for coating with siderotype sensitizers, in which the calcium carbonate is entirely omitted. These include Arches Platine, Weston Diploma Parchment, and Hahnemühle Platinum Rag, which should all perform well with the cyanotype process.

The two sides of a sheet of fine paper are often discernably different in a way that reflects the method of manufacture: the so-called ‘wire' side (‘screen' side in the USA) shows, on close examination under bright light, a very fine geometrical mesh pattern; the ‘felt' side (‘nap' side in the USA) has a random texture. Paper may be coated on either side, according to your taste. The watermark should be excluded from the coated area. Always handle paper only by the edges, using both hands to avoid creasing; never touch the picture area, either before or after coating, and do not touch the reverse either, because moisture from the fingers can rapidly diffuse through the sheet.

**6.4.2 Using glass rods to coat paper**

In place of the traditional brush, the more economic coating implement is a glass rod or, preferably, thick walled capillary tube, which is usually manufactured to higher standards of straightness than solid rod. The external diameter should be between 6 and 12 mm, with a straight central section equal in length to the width of the coating area. The end portions of the rod should be bent at an angle, using a powerful gas burner; a ‘bicycle handlebar' shape: \_____\ is simple and ergonomically effective in use. The centre portion acts as the spreader, and determines the width of the coated area; the limbs serve as handles. This implement must be kept scrupulously clean and free of grease film.

Rod-coating paper with sensitizer solution

Follow this procedure:

1. Cut or tear your sheet of paper to an appropriate size that allows generous borders around the picture area – this not only looks well,
but the margins also facilitate handling and protect the image. Mark the sheet of paper very lightly in pencil to locate the corners of the area to be coated. Time and trouble may be saved by devising a card template to guide this marking-up for standard formats. The dimensions of the coated area should be 1 to 2 cm larger than the negative to allow for irregularities and to make positioning easy. Avoid including any watermark within the picture area.

2 Tape or clip the sheet lightly to a very flat level surface: a heavy glass plate is ideal. Check with a spirit level that the paper is horizontal; this is critical, so adjust it if necessary. Dust off the surface with a blower brush.

3 First choose a syringe of appropriate size and ensure its plunger is fully depressed, then, keeping the nozzle below the liquid surface, draw up the mixed sensitizer into the syringe, some way above the volume required. By carefully expelling sensitizer back into the bottle, adjust it to the required volume: ignore the small air bubble in the syringe and take the volume reading from the bottom of the plunger. A 10”x8” print will require about 1.5 cc, or slightly less, and other sizes in proportion to their area. Try to ‘fine tune’ this volume with experience of a particular paper, so as to avoid excess sensitizer which may puddle and crystallise.

4 Expel the liquid slowly and gently from the syringe (use two hands) as you move it steadily from one side to the other across the width of the coating area between the pencil marks at the top of the paper; reverse and go back again if all the liquid is not expelled. For steadiness, touch the paper lightly with the syringe nozzle and try to form an unbroken strip of sensitizer, but do not be too slow or fussy – irregularities will even out in the coating.

5 Take up the spreading rod with one end in each hand, place the straight central portion onto the paper parallel to, and a little above, the strip of sensitizer. Then, with slight pressure draw the spreading rod down into the strip of solution. Pause briefly (a couple of seconds) while the liquid distributes itself uniformly along the length of the rod, then steadily draw the strip of solution down the paper, like a tiny tidal wave running in front of the rod. The rod is not rotated, and very little pressure need be applied. When you reach the pencil marks at the bottom of the coated area, hop the rod over the strip of solution and
push it back to the top of the coating; then hop over the sensitizer strip once more and draw it down to repeat the spreading. Just five passes over the paper will suffice for its surface layer to become saturated with a uniform coating of sensitizer. The first two passes should be made quite rapidly (3 or 4 seconds each) to ensure complete wetting of the surface, and the last three as slowly as possible (10 to 15 seconds each) to allow maximum absorption. At the end of the fifth pass, drag the spreader well below the picture area, with its excess sensitizer (when you have fine-tuned the exact volume to use with your chosen paper, there should be very little waste).

6 Gently lift off the spreader, and soak up any residual liquid left at the bottom of the coating with the edge of a clean strip of blotting paper, otherwise crystals may be formed which can damage the negative. Rinse the spreading rod immediately under the tap.

Occasionally a paper may be encountered that is difficult to coat by this method, because the strip of sensitizer contracts into ‘beads’ and blank areas are left in the coating. This may be corrected by applying two strips of the sensitizer solution, one at the top and one at the bottom of the coating area; if the continuity of the coat ‘drops out’ on the first pass, the fresh strip of sensitizer picked up from the bottom will put this right. It may also be helpful to place a thin sheet of sponge rubber or plastic foam between the paper and the glass plate, to take up any variation in thickness (e.g in a handmade paper) or unevenness in the glass rod. Additional wetting agent (Tween 20 – see below) may also assist evenness of coating.

Brush coating is the traditional method, for those who prefer a more ‘painterly’ style of coating, or who wish to apply the sensitizer more selectively. It tends to be rather wasteful – although this is of little consequence with an inexpensive sensitizer like cyanotype, it is a serious disadvantage when one comes to coat platinotype. Brushes with metal ferrules should be avoided. A broad Japanese 'Hake' brush, available from most art shops, is very suitable. The sensitizer is poured along the paper, just outside one edge of the picture area, and spread by means of a damp brush, making long even strokes in a consistent direction to cover the area, then repeating the brushing at right angles.

Sensitized paper is dried after coating, but the paper should be left horizontal for a few minutes until the liquid is sufficiently absorbed for
the reflective sheen of the surface to disappear. The sheet may then be hung up to dry in the dark for about an hour before use or left on a screen. Alternatively some heat may be used – a uniform stream of warm air at 40 °C for 10 minutes is adequate, and makes little difference to the final result, provided that heat–dried paper is allowed to ‘rest’ for a half, to one hour before exposure, otherwise a slight loss of density and increase of contrast (§7.4.11) may occur. Heating directly, e.g. with a hairdrier, tends to produce uneven results. The prevailing relative humidity has very little effect on the results of printing in cyanotype, but it can profoundly affect some of the other iron-based processes.

6.4.3 Contact-printing frames
With the exception of special cases described in §6.2, some form of contact-printing frame is usually essential for applying enough pressure to maintain the close contact between negative and paper that is desirable with most UV light sources. The simplest option is a sheet of plate glass (4 mm thick – not 2 mm picture glass, which may bend or crack under pressure) and a flat baseboard covered with a felt blanket or sheet of porous plastic to absorb the outgassing (see below) and take up any surface unevenness. This sandwich is held together by strong clips.

The cyanotype processes give a print-out which is to some extent solarized – that is, a fully detailed image is formed during the exposure with reversed shadow tones; but subsequent processing modifies the appearance of this. It is therefore a great advantage to be able to inspect the progress of the printing (away from the UV source!) without destroying the registration between negative and print. This can be achieved with a hinged–back contact-printing frame of the traditional design common in the nineteenth-century, when printing-out was the standard practice. These can still be bought and are often of high craftsmanship (and cost), but it is easy to construct one from a strong picture frame of extruded aluminium with a deep rebate, and a hinged backplate of heavy duty plywood which can be secured under pressure. It is important that the sensitized paper should be directly backed in the printing frame with a single loose sheet of felt, not divided and attached to the backplate, for the following reason.

In all the siderotype processes, including cyanotype, one of the by-products of the photochemical reaction is carbon dioxide gas (Appendix III). It is important to the print quality that this gas should have a pathway for escape by diffusing out from the sensitized surface through the back
of the paper, otherwise it may form a ‘bubble’ layer interposed between sensitized surface and negative. This gap may be wide enough to degrade the resolution or acutance of the image in regions of high local contrast, especially if the illumination is a ‘light bed’, rather than nearly a ‘point source’ (see §6.4.4). The permeability of the printing paper should be sufficient to allow passage of the CO₂ gas through to its verso, there to be absorbed by the felt blanket, or other material permeable to gases, such as a breathable or porous plastic sheet. It has been observed that backing the paper with an impervious plastic or rubber sheet may result in ‘bubbles’ that cause an obvious blurring of the image produced by a bank of UV fluorescent tubes, although it may not be apparent with almost point sources, like HID lamps or the sun.

Very large contact prints demand more sophisticated technology such as a vacuum easel, but the use of a felt blanket as a CO₂ absorber behind the paper sheet is still recommended.

Precious negatives may be protected during contact printing by interposing a very thin sheet of archival polyester film – such as Mylar™ or Melinex™ – between paper and negative. The negative will be particularly vulnerable if the paper is fully humidified. Such a sandwich will, of course, diminish the edge sharpness (acutance) or resolution of the print, depending on the geometry of the light source, as described in §6.4.4: if a diffuse ‘light bed’ is used at a close distance, the protective film must be no thicker than 20 micrometers (0.02 mm); if a small source at greater distance is used, e.g. a NuArc UV printer or the sun, then more robust film of thickness 50 to 100 microns (0.05–0.1 mm) can be tolerated without perceptible diffusion of the image.

If you prefer clean edges and a white border around your image, rather than the overexposed worked edges which some find fashionable, then mask the interior of the glass front of the printing frame with a window of ruby–lith, or other adhesive film that is opaque to UV and blue light. Such masking brings three technical benefits: it avoids the evolution of needless quantities of CO₂ gas during the exposure that can degrade the resolution, as described above. It also avoids the formation, in the wet processing, of large quantities of redundant (non–image) pigment, that may bleed into and stain the picture area. Moreover, the unexposed but coated borders will provide a tell–tale check on the effectiveness of the clearing process, as evidenced by the removal of all traces of stain. If you do not mask your negative when printing but expose the entire coated area, then you will never know for certain if the
print is properly cleared and the highlights are totally undegraded (see §7.6). These are the disadvantages of ‘showing the brushmarks’ to prove it’s a handmade print. Connoisseurs should be able to tell that fact anyway, without it being so obviously displayed in a manner that distracts from the picture content.

6.4.4 Ultra–violet light sources
Any light source with a substantial ultra–violet content will serve for printing the iron–based processes. However, sources like 'sun–guns' and quartz–halogen lamps also emit infra–red radiation, which has the undesirable effect of heating the paper as the exposure proceeds. The best sources are fluorescent–coated mercury–discharge tubes, emitting mostly the so–called ‘long–wave ultra–violet’ (or UVA, with a wavelength range of 320–400 nm) with a maximum output around a wavelength of 365 nm. Lamps with a peak output around 410 nm are not effective for cyanotype, because this wavelength corresponds to an absorption maximum in the spectrum of ferricyanide, which acts as an ‘internal filter’. There is no advantage, and much additional risk, in employing the more dangerous ‘short–wave’ ultraviolet mercury lamps which rapidly damage eyes and living tissue. Long–wave UVA lamps are marketed for graphic arts purposes as well as for domestic sun–tanning.

The geometry of the light source can affect the image acutance in contact printing: if gaps are formed between negative and sensitized surface, they may be wide enough to blur the acutance or resolution of the image, to an extent that depends on the geometry of the light source. The blur is the width of the penumbra (fuzzy zone) between light and full shadow at any edge within the image, and depends on the ratio of size to distance of the light source. If the largest linear dimension of the light source is \( w \), and its distance from the print is \( d \), then \( w/d \) can be called the aspect value of the light source. By the geometry of similar triangles:

\[
\text{blur} = \text{gap} \times \text{aspect value}
\]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Light Source</th>
<th>Aspect value ( w/d )</th>
<th>Blur in mm for ( \text{gap} = 0.1–0.5 \text{ mm} )</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sun</td>
<td>0.01</td>
<td>0.001–0.005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NuArc 2125</td>
<td>0.1</td>
<td>0.01–0.05</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Light bed' or open sky</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0.4–2.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The human eye at its near-point (ca. 250 mm) can resolve ~0.1 mm, but 0.25 mm is taken to be acceptably 'sharp' in calculating the 'depth of field' of lenses. Take 0.3 mm of blur as the onset of a 'fuzzy' or 'soft' image. So the CO₂ mentioned above is only likely to cause a visible problem with 'light bed' sources, and blurring will be most conspicuous where the local contrast is high.

The following UV sources are listed in ascending order of cost:

1. **The sun.** This is free, but an uncertain and variable source in many locations. The sun is nearly a point source giving high acutance because it subtends a 0.5 degree angle only. However, it also moves through an arc of 0.5 degrees in 2 minutes, so exposure duration is a consideration (see §6.2). In intensity the sun is about four times faster than a small UV source like no. 4. There is a considerable heating effect which may discolour the highlights in lengthy exposures.

   The north summer sky is a diffuse source with a wide aspect like a ‘light bed’, no. 4. Its intensity is about 3 stops (8x) less than direct sun with about half the speed of no. 4.

2. **Small domestic sunlamps such as the Pifco 300 watt UV lamp No. 1012.** These should be used at a distance of about 30 to 50 cm from the printing frame, providing about half the speed of no. 4.

3. **Mercury discharge reprographic lamps, such as the Philips HPR 125W, used at a distance of about 30 cm from the frame.**

4. **A convenient unit such as that once marketed by Gordon Audio–Visual as a Diazo printer.** This provides a ‘light bed’ of four Philips fluorescent tubes, type TLADK 30W/05 UV, distant about 8 cm from the print, and is adequate for an image size up to 25x30 cm.

5. **A similar array can be made quite cheaply by purchasing from a lighting supply house a commercial luminaire fitting, which is equipped with all the sockets and control gear to take four 600 mm fluorescent tubes.** UVA tubes marketed as ‘insect attractors’ are suitable, but not the ‘super actinic’ variety of plant or aquarium light. Filtered BLB ‘black–light blue’ lamps will work, but less efficiently.

6. **A domestic suntan bed – for large prints.** The ‘facial solarium’ is a smaller and more convenient version of this type of source such as the Philips ‘Cleo’, which uses six UVA fluorescent tubes (actinic/09) with a power of 20 watts each, and easily covers an area 30x35 cm.
If cost is no object, a commercial mercury-arc exposure system such as those manufactured for the graphic arts and screen printing industry. The NuArc is a popular model for alternative printing and is fitted with a vacuum easel. The aspect of this UV light source is quite small, subtending about a 5 degree angle at the platen, so it is good for maintaining high acutance in the image. Exposure units like the NuArc are fitted with a built-in light integrator which measures the intensity continuously and multiplies it by the elapsed time, so accumulating the overall dose of light which is read out in units of exposure, not units of time. This is particularly necessary because the emission of the small high intensity mercury arcs used tends to vary with time.

A novel method of printing cyanotypes has recently been devised by Taiwanese artist Shih Wei Chieh, using a laser emitting 250 mW at 405 nm to project the image as a spiral raster. This has some advantages: no negative is required because the laser scan is driven directly from the original digital image file; moreover the picture is imprinted without contact, so can be applied to very delicate or somewhat uneven surfaces such as fabrics.

The considerations regarding image sharpness set out in §6.4.3 should be borne in mind when choosing a light source. Whatever source you use, be sure to protect your eyes with appropriate UV-absorbing goggles. All the sources except 8 depend on discharges in mercury vapour and such light sources do not emit their full intensity on switch-on from cold – they warm up over a period of time while the mercury vapourises, and the light intensity increases with time, until a steady state is reached. If that time interval is significant compared with the duration of exposure it can lead to inconsistencies unless the lamps are 'warmed up' for 5 minutes or so in the absence of any sensitive material. Then they may be briefly switched off and the print frame with negative and paper fairly quickly inserted, then the exposure is made using warm lamps.

6.5 Making suitable silver-gelatin negatives

The light sensitivity of iron-based papers like the cyanotype is about a million times less than that of silver-gelatine enlarging papers, so with the technology commonly available they cannot be projection-printed, only contact-printed to achieve a sufficient throughput of UV light. The reproduction scale of 1:1 leaves the photographer with four options:
• to make very small prints from miniature camera negatives
• to photograph using a large format camera
• to make enlarged silver–gelatin internegatives in the darkroom
• to inkjet–print negatives on transparency film from digital files

Each of these strategies has something to recommend it, but whichever you adopt, it will be essential to make your negatives to a density range suited to the printing process. The UVA density ranges required in the negatives (ΔD) should be the same as the logarithmic exposure scales (ΔlogH) of the iron–based sensitizers, because in contact printing there is no Callier Effect, where light–scattering increases the contrast.

The traditional cyanotype process has an exposure scale ΔlogH ~ 0.9–1.2 (3 or 4 ‘stops’) which matches the density range of camera negatives developed to a contrast suited to a Grade 3 silver–gelatin enlarging paper. For the new cyanotype process the ΔlogH scale may vary typically from about 1.6, equivalent roughly to a Grade 0 silver–gelatine paper, to a ΔlogH around 2.4, which is a far longer scale than any silver–gelatine paper. To yield a full tonal range in a new cyanotype print, negatives must be made with a correspondingly long density range. This will be obtained by giving a good continuous–tone camera film normal exposure, but developing it for 75% to 100% more than the normal time period recommended for silver–gelatine enlargement printing. Trial and error can be lessened by consulting the film manufacturers' published data for the variation of Contrast Index (Kodak's C.I. or Ilford's G) with development time or with developer concentration. As a guide, negatives for cyanotype printing should be developed to a C.I. value in the range 0.7 to 1.3, depending on subject and interpretation. These C.I. values are more or less incompatible with normal silver printing in an enlarger, so you cannot expect to use the same negative for both. A convenient compromise is to make your original negatives in the usual way for silver printing, ensuring adequate exposure to give plenty of shadow detail, and then prepare internegatives of higher contrast from them.

Much of what was originally written here 15 years ago about making enlarged internegatives has become obsolete as a consequence of silver–gelatin materials ceasing to be manufactured. However, I will let it stand in the hope that equivalent materials may still be found. The user of 35mm and roll film formats is best advised to enlarge the original camera negative to give an internegative, which has the added advantage that the
precious original is not put at risk by the rigors of contact printing. There are several ways to do this:

1. Direct reversal duplicating film makes a negative directly from a negative. A convenient (but expensive) method was to make internegatives by enlarging onto Kodak Professional Direct Duplicating Film Type SO-339, which was available in 5"x4" and 10"x8" formats only but is now discontinued. Dodging and burning may be carried out at this stage if desired. Very vigorous development is necessary to achieve an adequate maximum density in this material. As a starting point for experiment, develop it in the Kodak high contrast developer D19 (undiluted) for 6 to 8 minutes at 22–24 °C with continuous agitation. This film has orthochromatic sensitivity, so a red safelight is necessary. See the Kodak literature for further information. N.B. SO-339 is a very slow material and needs a heavy exposure under the enlarger. Even modest enlargements may require a minute's exposure at full lens aperture. Remember that it is a reversal material – more exposure gives less density. Remember always to make your internegatives as mirror images: i.e. place the original negative emulsion up in the enlarger so the duplicate will make a ‘right-reading’ image when exposed emulsion–emulsion on the print.

2. The longer route is via an interpositive, using normal negative–working continuous tone films such as Kodak Gravure Positive Film 4135 or Agfa Gevatone N31p or N33p, which are available in large sheet sizes. The choice of size for the interpositive will depend on your available enlarger formats and budget, but to minimise the degradation in quality introduced by the extra copying step, the larger you make the interpositive, the better. (Contact–printing an interpositive from a 35mm negative can introduce serious dust problems.) The interpositive should be printed quite heavily to ensure no loss of information; the highlights should appear somewhat grey and the tonal separation should still be visible in the shadows. Development to a Contrast Index value of one is recommended, and dodging and burning may be carried out at this stage so that the results can be readily judged. The negative is then made from this interpositive by enlargement or, preferably, contact, onto the same film, using more vigorous development to raise the contrast. Kodak HC–110 is a convenient developer, offering control of contrast by varying concentration as well as time. Agfa market a continuous–tone orthochromatic sheet film,
GO210p, which has the advantage of a variable contrast that can be adjusted by yellow or blue filters.

3. By starting with a positive transparency from the camera (such as Agfa Dia–Direct), an enlarged internegative can be obtained in one step on the films specified in 2. If the original small-format image is a colour transparency, projection onto these orthochromatic materials (which are insensitive to red light) will not faithfully reproduce the tonal balance. To maintain this, a panchromatic sheet film, e.g. Ilford's FP4 or HP5, will be necessary, possibly with a colour head or a filter to bring the enlarger light source to a daylight colour balance.

4. The sheet film on which a negative is projection-printed may be reversal-processed to give another negative directly. Directions for carrying out this rather lengthy procedure are to be found in the standard photographic manuals. Kodak market a reversal-processing kit for their T-MAX films.

5. Paper internegatives are a very economical but low-quality option. Obviously a thin-based paper stock will be needed to avoid long printing exposure times. The ‘Resin-coated’ (RC) variety is said to work well, and methods have been suggested for delaminating the emulsion layer from the base. If exposures become intolerably long, a paper negative may be waxed to improve its translucency: beeswax dissolved in turpentine at a concentration of 50% and used warm is a convenient waxing agent. Alternatively the wax may be ‘ironed in’ between sheets of blotting paper.

Variations in paper texture, including any lettering on the back, can be cancelled out by giving white light exposure to the back of the paper, in addition to the normal image exposure to the emulsion side. A test strip is necessary to determine this additional compensating fog exposure.

6.6 Inkjet-printed digital negatives

The modern technology of digital photography, with all its capacities for image manipulation, provides new possibilities in the realm of negative preparation for alternative process printing, since the scope for adjusting the image and its characteristic curve is almost unlimited.
6.6.1 Summary and purpose
Herein follows a stepwise sequence of explicit instructions for making monochrome digital photographic negatives, using a personal computer and ink–jet printer, starting from original medium format camera negatives or transparencies, or from digital picture files. The software used for this image manipulation was fairly basic: Photoshop CS™ (Version 8) and Epson Scan, using an iMac, running OS 10.4. No additional software or ‘latest upgrades’ are required. The files are printed out onto ceramic–coated transparency material (such as Pictoric OHP Transparency Film or PermaJet Digital Transfer Film) using an Epson photo–quality ink–jet printer. This procedure provides internegatives, suitably matched in optical density at UVA wavelengths, for contact printing in any of the ‘alternative’ photographic processes. This digital negative workflow differs significantly from the customary practices in several respects:

- For calibration, 100–step–tablet negatives having intervals of 1% relative opacity, are inkjet–printed onto the film, identical in all their print parameters and materials with the actual negatives to be output. All the colours of the printer's ink–set are used, blended in a smooth greyscale.
- The Standard Printing Exposure (SPE) is found by printing these 100–step–tablet negatives in the process of choice with the standard printing setup, so that the clear filmbase (relative opacity of 0%) produces ‘nearly’ the maximum print density (Dmax) that the process is capable of, while some tonal separation is still visible in the deepest shadows (0–10%).
- The correct ink density range (at UVA wavelengths) for the negative to match the exposure scale of the chosen process is found by adjusting the printer driver settings: trial 100–step–tablet negatives are output and test–printed at the SPE, until the 99% relative opacity step in the negative prints as ‘just white’ background of the paper used for the process.
- Having established the 'black and white' end–points for the process, when making the negatives appropriate for analogue printing, the image levels are redistributed in Photoshop to ensure that mid–grey tones also print correctly. This is achieved simply by using the gamma slider in the Levels window, which applies a suitable 'generic curve' automatically; making the laborious derivation of a 'personalised' curve generally unnecessary.
6.6.2 Calibration of equipment and materials

The optical density range of the ink laid down on the film depends on:

- the particular make and model of printer
- the particular ink set being used
- the choice of settings in the printer driver software
- the film substrate used to receive the negative image

If any of these are changed, it is necessary to re-calibrate, as follows:

1. Output the digital file for the 100-step-tablet to your printer, loaded with the identical film that you will use for all your negatives. As a starting point, the ink density range may be approximately provided by the printer’s ‘premium photo-quality’ media settings for glossy or semi-glossy paper, preferably an 'Advanced Black & White' setting if one is provided. Use 'matt black' ink rather than 'photo black' if there is a choice. The software for driving modern printers now usually includes a means of adjusting the maximum ink density; this control may be buried rather deeply in the options. Record its setting before outputting the 100-step-tablet files. Let the test negative dry and cure overnight before use, as inks have been observed to change density with time.

2. Assemble the standard printing setup for your chosen process. Take care that the light source, distance, and other conditions of printing and wet-processing are maintained constant throughout.

3. Use your 100-step-tablet negative to make trial exposures. Increase the exposure until the test print is perceptibly overexposed. ['Overexposure' is judged by the analogue photographer's negative-working criterion of shadow tones beginning to 'block up' and become indistinguishable – it is NOT judged by the digital photographer's positive-working criterion of high values being 'blown out'.] Call the exposure for this test print, E. If you are making timed exposures to a constant light source, E is the duration in minutes or seconds. If you employ an exposure system with a light integrator, E will be measured in the instrument's arbitrary 'exposure units'.

4. Examine the test print carefully when it is dry. The lowest part will appear dense and 'blocked up' with no resolution of the sequential steps. Compare each step with the lighter one immediately above it – i.e. the one resulting from 10% less transmittance in the negative (=10% more opacity, corresponding to a density difference of ~0.05, or...
1/6th of a 'stop'). Try to locate the first step, starting from the bottom, that is just perceptibly resolved in tone from the one above it; this lower step gives the transmittance in this negative needed to produce your effective maximum print density. Call this transmittance $P\%$.

5 Calculate your Standard Printing Exposure (SPE) by taking $P\%$ of $E$, the exposure for the test print made in 3:

$$\text{SPE} = \frac{E \times P}{100}$$

The SPE should apply approximately for all prints made in the chosen process, with your digital negatives, provided that the light-source and other printing and processing conditions are kept the same.

Note that the SPE is not sharply-defined, but can be varied slightly, because the effective maximum print density depends on how far up the shoulder of the characteristic curve of the printing process you choose to place it. However, the higher the effective maximum density is placed, the greater proportion of the 256 image levels will need to be allocated to increasing separation in the shadow tones, so there will be fewer left for the lighter tones of the image, which compresses the contrast. Furthermore, if you seek to produce a 'maximum black' by extending the SPE excessively, the printer inks may not have sufficient UVA blocking opacity to produce a 'paper base white' at all.

6 Make a test print of the 100-step-tablet negative at the SPE. Inspect the test print carefully, when fully dry, to find the step that appears 'just white' – i.e. the first one that has no upper boundary and which precedes the step with the first perceptible print tone.

7 If no steps print white, adjust the printer driver settings to lay down more ink when making the negative.

If several steps print white, adjust for less ink in the negative.

8 Return to Step 1 and make a new 100-step-tablet negative using the new settings, and re-test it through Steps 2 to 7. The ideal aim is to get 'just white' for the first step of the tablet – that having 1% transmittance or 99% opacity – but it should be satisfactory to get within 2% or 3% of this.

Experiment carefully with your printer driver settings: change the maximum optical density of the ink (a control usually found in the "colour management" window) and note its value when you make each new test negative. Print each one in your process with the same SPE until you come close to the ideal highlight tones.
6.6.3 Fine-tuning negative opacities
This is only necessary in case your printer driver controls do not allow you to get the first white step close to 1% transmittance or 99% opacity. If it is still significantly different from this ideal value, then it will be necessary to reset the maximum opacity of the negative file to a value equal to the opacity observed for the first white step, before you output it on transfer film, so that the negative will print the white level correctly. The Layer Opacity Slider in the layers palette provides a convenient means of making this fine adjustment. All the other opacity values will then be scaled proportionally. Setting the Layer Opacity to less than 100% makes the tonal separation a bit coarser in principle, because the tonal scale of the image will be resolved across fewer than the full 256 levels. If the printer driver settings result in a white value close to 100%, it’s unlikely the eye will notice this, so this adjustment in the following Workflow should be no more than ‘fine-tuning’.

6.6.4 The 'gamma slider' for tonal correction
There usually is a need to redistribute the levels of a digital image file before it can provide a useful negative. If this is not done, a print made with the SPE will usually appear too dark in overall tonality, even though the black and white end-points print correctly. In effect, what is needed is a transformation of the linear scale of Relative Opacity %, used for digital files, into the logarithmic scale of Optical Density needed for a negative to yield a visually acceptable print by any analogue photographic process having a typical (D/logH) characteristic response.

If we are prepared to accept an approximate transformation, it becomes unnecessary to use experimentally-derived curves, with all their burdensome and inaccurate measuring of many experimental points, because essentially the same result comes from re-setting one parameter in Photoshop: this parameter is the middle slider in the Levels Histogram window, which controls the gamma (or contrast) value shown in the central box, and which always has a default value of 1.0 when the window is opened. The gamma needs to be increased to a value in the region of 1.8 to 2.2 in the positive image, which – be warned! – will then appear horribly overexposed in the digital sense, or ‘blown out’ on-screen. This adjustment usually suffices to re-map the relative distribution of levels from most positive digital image files to provide, on inversion, a negative with sufficient density to be printable by analogue processes.

This one simple adjustment with the gamma slider effectively applies a built-in ‘generic curve’ for transforming all digital negatives to analogue...
status. In practice, it is found to agree with individually-derived personal correction curves for platinum–palladium, which have been scrupulously plotted by expert workers from point-by-point reflectance density measurements of their actual step-tablet test prints.

Fig 6.3 100-step: Gamma = 2.2 on left; default Gamma = 1.0 on right
6.6.5 Workflow for digital negatives

Summary of the sequence of ‘Things that may need to be done’

Phase I: Acquisition and digitization of image
1. Turn off Colour Management in Photoshop
2. Open Image File – if already available, or –
3. Scan Source at appropriate resolution – if necessary – and Save

Phase II: Preparation of positive image file
4. Preliminary Image Adjustments – if needed
5. Crop & Re–size Image
6. Monochromatize – if an RGB colour image
7. Burn & Dodge – if desired (a crude tool)
8. Set Black & White Levels
9. Adjust Local Contrast – in areas where needed
10. Retouch Flaws – where necessary
11. Save ‘Perfected’ Positive Image

Phase III: Preparation of negative image file
12. Apply Tone Correction Curve to Positive by resetting Gamma
13. Reverse Handedness – if image reads correctly on screen
14. Invert Tonality from Positive to Negative
15. Sharpen Image with Unsharp Mask
16. Mask Print Border – if desired (expensive in ink)
17. Flatten Layers & Save ‘Adjusted’ Negative Image File

Phase IV: Printing the negative image onto film
18. Fine–tune Negative Opacity to Match Exposure Scale – if needed
19. Connect Printer, Load Film & Check Inks
20. Select Printer & Page Setup
21. Reduce Image File to 8 bits per channel if necessary
22. Set Printer Driver & Maximum Ink Density appropriately
23. Output the Negative file onto film
24. Number the Negative & allow ink to cure
Workflow for Making Digital Negatives in Photoshop CS

**Phase I: Acquisition and digitization of image**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Menu or Tool</th>
<th>Procedure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Keys are Shortcuts to Tools and Menus: F6, F7, F8 are re-defined: Edit&gt;Keyboard Shortcuts</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**1) Turn Off Colour Management in Photoshop**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Menu or Tool</th>
<th>Procedure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ctrl</td>
<td>Photoshop&gt;Colour Settings&gt;</td>
<td>In order to turn Colour Management OFF:-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>‘Monitor RGB – iMac’</td>
<td>RGB:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>‘Euroscale Coated v2’ or suitable choice</td>
<td>CMYK:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>‘Gray Gamma 1.8’</td>
<td>Gray:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>‘0% Dot Gain’ or as low as possible</td>
<td>Spot:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>All OFF</td>
<td>Colour Management Policies:</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**2) Open Image File – if already available**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Menu or Tool</th>
<th>Procedure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
<td>File&gt;Browse…&gt;Open&gt;</td>
<td>Acquire raw image, preferably 16 bit/channel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If colour profiles mismatch</td>
<td>Discard any embedded colour profile</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**3) Scan Source – if necessary**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Menu or Tool</th>
<th>Procedure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ctrl</td>
<td>File&gt;Import&gt;Epson Scanner</td>
<td>Use Epson Scan App in Professional Mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Settings:</td>
<td>Save the following settings:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>‘Film (with Film Holder)’ if negative or slide</td>
<td>Document Type:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>‘Positive Film’</td>
<td>Film Type:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>‘48-bit Color’</td>
<td>Image Type:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Best</td>
<td>Scanning Quality:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Resolution for 360 ppi negs:</td>
<td>Final Format: A5 A4 A3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Use higher if heavy crop)</td>
<td>Source Format:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10x8 in. 300 425 600 ppi</td>
<td>10x8 in. 9.69x7.68 in. 246x195mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5x4 in. 600 900 1250</td>
<td>5x4 in. 4.72x3.70 in. 120x94 mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9x6 cm 900 1300 1850</td>
<td>9x6 cm 3.25x2.20 in. 82x56 mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6x6 cm 1300 1850 2700</td>
<td>6x6 cm 2.20x2.20 in. 56x56 mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>35 mm 2100 3050 4350</td>
<td>35 mm 1.417x0.945 in. 36x24 mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Check Document Size:</td>
<td>Target Size:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10x8 in. 9.69x7.68 in. 246x195mm</td>
<td>‘Original’; Trimming: Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5x4 in. 4.72x3.70 in. 120x94 mm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9x6 cm 3.25x2.20 in. 82x56 mm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6x6 cm 2.20x2.20 in. 56x56 mm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>35 mm 1.417x0.945 in. 36x24 mm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Target Size:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>‘Original’; Trimming: Off</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Click Zoom button in Preview panel for enlarged</td>
<td>cropping as little as possible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Set marquee</td>
<td>preview image of 6x9 etc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Click Histogram button</td>
<td>to open histogram adjustment window</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Check Output Levels</td>
<td>full range 0 to 255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Set Input Levels B&amp;W sliders</td>
<td>on histogram; RGB channels; avoid clipping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Click &amp; Hold Show Output button</td>
<td>to see if there’s any clipping bars at ends</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tone Adjustment</td>
<td>none: linear, centre slider gamma = 1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Auto Adjustments</td>
<td>none: turn off any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Densitometer</td>
<td>is useful to check B&amp;W levels before scan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Click Close button</td>
<td>in histogram window</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Click Scan button</td>
<td>to scan image and import into Photoshop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ctrl</td>
<td>File&gt;Save As&gt;‘Raw Scans’</td>
<td>Save scan as .tif file in folder ‘Raw Scans’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>no compression</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Phase II: Preparation of positive image file

4) Preliminary Image Adjustments – if needed

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Double Click</th>
<th>‘Background’ layer</th>
<th>to select it in Layers palette</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Click OK</td>
<td>button in New Layer window</td>
<td>Converts Background to Layer 0 for adjust</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*if not suitably oriented:*

| Image | Rotate Canvas>… | to rotate image for normal viewing |

*if a negative:*

| Image | Adjustments> Invert | to invert tonality to positive for easy viewing |

| (zero) | View> Fit on Screen | Gives optimum image window size |

| OR | Select ‘Zoom’ tool | Click ‘Fit on Screen’ button |

5) Crop & Re-size Image

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Image</th>
<th>Image Size…</th>
<th>Check re-sizing parameters correct selected</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Select ‘Crop’ Tool</td>
<td>Scale Styles; Constrain Props; Resample: Bicubic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Click Tool preset picker bar top left</td>
<td>Select tool to re-size image at 360 ppi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(allowing margin of ~0.15")

| A5 | 8.0x5.6 in 203x142mm 2880x2016px |
| A4 | 11.4x8.0 in 290x203mm 4104x2880px |
| A3 | 16.3x11.4in 414x290mm 5868x4104px |

| View | Rulers | to show rulers, if desired |
| Shift Lock | View> Snap | to replace crop icon cursor with crosshairs |
| Click & Drag within image | | to switch ‘snap to edge’ on/off as desired |
| View > Show > Grid | | to generate marquee defining image |

| Keys | | move whole marquee finely: it rotates about Registration point - can be dragged |

*if desired to correct perspective:*

| Tick | perspective box in toolbarto transform marquee: |
| Click & Drag | corners of marquee onto a would-be rectangle for the image |
| Pull | edge centres of marquee to resize - keeping corners within frame |

(only possible if crop undimensioned)

| √ | Click √ button | to execute Crop |

*OR:*

| Ø | Click Ø button | to cancel and re-set |

6) Monochromatize – if an RGB colour image

| F8* | Image> Adjustments> Channel Mixer opens window to convert to monochrome |
| Click Load… button | for preset channels file |
| Select ‘mono.cha’ file | saved file from Documents: |

| Click Load | L = 30%R + 59%G + 11%B (visual response) |
| Tick | Monochrome box |
| Output Channel: Gray |

| Click OK button | to apply channel mix and close window |

*OR if desired to set channels manually:*

| ↑ | Click each RGB channel |
| Arrow Keys to set channels | Study them for noise, or use as filter, then:- |
| as preferred; total must sum to 100% |

| Click OK button | to apply channel mix and close window |

| Image> Mode> Grayscale | to revert image to grayscale (smaller files) |
7) **Burn & Dodge – if desired (a crude tool)**

| O | Choose 'Burn' or 'Dodge' Tool(s) required - **alt click** switches between
|   | Tool Options Bar>Brush Preset: **Brush Diam:** 100-1000 pixels; **Hardness:** 0
|   | Tool Options Bar>Range: **Select** from: Shadows, Midtones, Highlights
|   | Tool Options Bar>Exposure: **Exposure** slider: *ca.* 10-20% for intensity
|   | **Click & paint** with tool
|   | *if correction needed:* -
|   | Edit>undo

- to burn or dodge areas of image. Can repeat

8) **Set Black & White Levels**

| Ctrl | **Image>Adjustments>Levels** opens Histogram window: Set B&W levels:
|      | **Alt Click** B&W level sliders
|      | **Click OK** button

- view effect on image areas for Dmax Dmin points.
- Keep all image levels: don’t clip
to execute Levels adjustments – or Cancel

9) **Adjust Local Contrast – in areas where needed**

| Ctrl+0 (zero) | **View>Zoom In or Zoom Out** Magnify area, and select it:-
|               | **EITHER use ‘Magnetic Lasso’ Tool:-**
| L             | **Choose** ‘Magnetic Lasso’ Tool
|               | **Feather:** ~5 px; **Antialias:** off; **Width:** 10 px
|               | **Edge Contrast:** 10-20%; **Frequency:** 100
|               | **Click** cursor on edge to select start
|               | **Move** mouse round area to be selected
|               | Can back-delete anchors; **Click** sets anchor
| [ ]           | **Keys** change **Width** in use
|               | **Click** to get marquee
|               | **Use wider for smooth edges**
|               | when returned to the starting point
| OR            | **use ‘Magic Wand’ Tool:-**
| W             | **Choose** ‘Magic Wand’ Tool
|               | **Contiguous; ±Tolerance = range of levels**
|               | Increases range
| L             | **Image>Adjustments>Levels**
|               | **Accesses Histogram window:**
|               | **Re-set** Slider for Centre Level
|               | **Re-set gamma <1.00 to increase contrast**
|               | **Check** Preview box to see effect
|               | **Match densities using eyedropper if need be**
|               | **Click OK** button
|               | in Levels window to apply contrast or Cancel
|               | to deselect Lasso, or **Click** within marquee
| **D** OR **ESC** button | **to revert Zoom to normal when finished**

10) **Retouch Flaws – where necessary**

| Ctrl+0 (zero) | **Zooms magnification to 100%**. Seek defects:
|               | **Click & Drag** in scroll bars
| J             | **Choose** ‘Healing Brush’ Tool
|               | **Blending mode:** Replace; **Source:** Sampled
|               | **Aligned; Brush Size:** Off; **Brush Space:** 25%
|               | **Brush Diameter:** ~12 pixels; **Hardness**: 0
|               | **Alt Click** cursor on nearby area
|               | **Click & paint**
|               | (zero)

- to locate sampling of replacement density
- Repair defects with Healing Brush. Continue.
- to revert Zoom to normal when finished

11) **Save ‘Perfected’ Positive Image**

| Ctrl+S | **Layer>Flatten Image**
|        | Flattens image to Background Layer (small)
|        | Save positive as .tif file in appropriate folder
|        | no compression; Mac byte order
Phase III: Preparation of negative image file

12) Apply Tone Correction Curve to Positive by Resetting Gamma

**Double Click** Background Layer to select it in Layers palette

**Click OK** button in New Layer window to convert ‘Background Layer’ to ‘Layer 0’

*EITHER* use Centre-point slider:

- **Image>Adjustments>Levels** opens Levels window & Histogram
- **Set slider for Centre Level** to ca. 2.2 Record value used
- **Check Preview box** to see effect Positive image looks ~2 stops overexposed

**Click OK** button to apply curve & close window

*OR* use a Stored Curve:

- **Image>Adjustments>Curves** opens adjustment curves control window:
- **Alt Click** on grid to improve coordinate grid to 10 divisions
- **Load a selected .acv Curve** options stored for adjusting as desired by:

**Keys** move any selected control point or close highlights, mids or shadows

- **Generate a Custom Curve** by placing cursor on image area to modify:

**Keys** darken or lighten this area, respectively

- **Click the image area** to set a control point on the Curve
- **Click & Hold eyedropper** in another area to set a point to be further adjusted likewise

**Click OK** button to apply Curve & close window

13) Reverse Handedness – if image reads correctly on screen

**F7** Edit>Transform>Flip horizontally Laterally reverses picture to a mirror image

14) Invert Tonality from Positive to Negative

**Image>Adjustments>Invert** Inverts image tonality to negative scale

15) Sharpen Image with Unsharp Mask

**F6** Filter>Sharpen>Unsharp Mask

- **Amount**: 100–250% usually 200%
- **Radius**: 0.5–1.5 pixels usually 0.8 pixel
- **Threshold**: 2–4 levels usually 3 (skin ~6)

**Tick Preview box** to see effect of USM when image clicked

**Click OK** button in USM window to apply USM – or Cancel

16) Mask Print Border – if desired (expensive in ink)

**Image>Canvas Size…**

- **W** Choose ‘Magic Wand’ Tool
- **Click with Wand in border area** to select border area to be masked

**Antialiased; Contiguous; Tolerance 0**

**F5** Edit>Fill…

- **Colour**: Black; **Blending Mode**: Normal
- **D** to deselect border mask

17) Flatten Layers & Save ‘Adjusted’ Negative Image

**Layer>Flatten Image** Flattens image to Background Layer (small)

**File>Save As>‘Diginegs’** Save negative as Tiff file in folder ‘Diginegs’

**Click OK** button

Tiff Options: No compression; Mac byte order
Phase IV: Printing negative image onto film

18) Fine-tune Negative Opacity to Match Exposure Scale - if needed

If White ~99% Opacity skip this whole box: ink density will be adjusted in printer settings 22)
- Double Click Background Layer to select it in Layers palette
- Click OK button in New Layer window to convert ‘Background Layer’ to ‘Layer 0’
- Click Image Layer Opacity button to reveal Opacity Slider in Layers palette
- Adjust Image Layer Opacity slider to a value matching process to be used:
  - step % prints just white when 0 % prints near Dmax
- Record the step% value used
  - See: calibration of equipment & materials
- Click Image Layer Opacity button to close the Opacity Slider
- Layer>Flatten Image Flattens image to Background Layer

19) Connect Printer, Load Film & Check Inks

Connect Printer & Switch ON
Launch Printer Utility Ensure correct Printer selected from List
Click Status Monitor to check ink levels & recharge if needbe
Choose Nozzle check if printer long-dormant: head clean
Click Printer Utility window

20) Select Printer & Page Setup

File>Page Setup… Format for printer & paper size & Aspect
Click OK button in Page Setup window
Click in Doc: edge area to see fit of image on page
Alt Click in edge area to see size of image, resolution, etc.

21) Reduce Image File to 8 Bits per Channel if necessary

Image>Mode>8 bits/channel to prepare for sending to printer – if 8 bit

22) Set Printer Driver & Maximum Ink Density & Output the Negative

File>Print with Preview…Check page settings: Check centred image
Click Print… button to access Print Settings window:
- Colour Management: Document; Profile: Same as Source
- Printer: Check printer choice correct
- Presets: Use saved Printer Driver settings file:
- Print Settings>Media Type: Appropriate paper choice (photo or matte)
  - Colour: Colour ON
  - Advanced Mode: Premium Photo Quality: highest resoln dpi
    - High speed OFF; Mirror image OFF
- Colour Management: Mode: Epson Standard sRGB
- Colour Controls: All sliders centred; gamma = 2.2
  - Advanced B&W mode: Neutral & ‘Normal’ tone
- Extensions: Adjust maximum ink density to give White~99%
  - Normal paper (not thick)
  - Advanced B&W mode: Neutral & ‘Normal’ tone
- Paper Configuration: Colour density & head drying time – defaults
- Click Print button to print the negative on transparency film
  - Don’t ‘Save Changes’ on closing file

23) Number the Negative & Allow Ink to Cure

Number the negative indelibly Allow negative to dry in dust-free environment for at least 12 hours before use. Do not stack.
6.6.6 Short version of the workflow

The previous detailed workflow was designed to cope with most eventualities, but it has necessarily become so lengthy that it is “hard to see the wood for the trees”. If we are working with preformatted and ‘perfected’ positive images, the following are the only essential steps needed to prepare a tonally-corrected and density-adjusted negative. Numbers refer to the original ‘Things that may need to be done’ boxes.

1. **⌘K** Photoshop>Colour Settings> Colour management OFF
2. **Double Click** ‘Background’ in Layers palette
   - **Click OK** New Layer 0
3. **F8* Image>Adjustments>Channel Mixer**
   - **Load** ‘mono.cha’ file: L = 30%R + 59%G + 11%B
4. **Image>Mode>Greyscale**
5. **⌘L** Image>Adjustments>Levels
   - **Alt Click Sliders & Set B&W levels**
6. **Set Middle Slider to Gamma ≈ 1.8 – 2.4** for desired contrast
7. **F7* Edit>Transform>Flip horizontal**
8. **⌘I** Image>Adjustments>Invert
9. **F6* Filter>Sharpen>Unsharp Mask**
10. **IF** maximum ink density cannot give White for 99% Opacity step (22):
    - **Adjust Image Layer Opacity** to % Opacity of first ‘white step’
11. **Layer>Flatten Image**
12. **Launch Printer Utility**: Ensure Printer connected, loaded, & turned on
    - **Click Status Monitor** to check ink levels etc
13. **⌘P File>Page Setup…** Format for Printer, Page, Size & aspect ratio
14. **⌘altP File>Print with Preview…**
    - **Click Print**… Print Settings: **Advanced B&W mode**, Neutral tone, Normal
    - **Adjust Maximum Ink Density** to the value that gives ~99% Opacity in the negative printing as the ‘white step’.
15. **Click Print**

* reassigned function keys
6.7 Overview of three different cyanotype processes

6.7.1 Herschel's classic cyanotype 1842
The classic cyanotype process sometimes presents problems for the contemporary user: on coating, the sensitizer solution may be poorly absorbed by the paper, which consequently loses much Prussian blue during wet-processing, leaving an image of restricted exposure scale, poor tonal gradation, and low density. In extreme instances, the picture has been known to wash away almost entirely. Another inconvenience is that two separate bottles of solution are needed to guarantee viable sensitizer storage, because it becomes short-lived when mixed; moreover, one of these solutions usually acquires a thick layer of mould growing on its surface.

6.7.2 Ferric ammonium citrate failings
These drawbacks are due to the inconsistent nature of the light-sensitive chemical, ammonium iron(III) citrate, aka ferric ammonium citrate, which will be abbreviated hereafter to FAC. This substance had its origins in early pharmacy, before cyanotype was invented by Herschel in 1842, and its method of preparation reflects the need for a product uncontaminated with any noxious substances, because it was intended to be taken internally as an iron tonic – often referred to by apothecaries of the day as *Ferri et Ammoniae Citras*.

The safest procedure for making FAC is to precipitate solid ferric hydroxide from ferric sulphate solution with ammonia, filter it off and wash it thoroughly, then dissolve it in a solution of citric acid, and finally neutralise with ammonia; the solution can be evaporated to a syrup, and heat dried to an amorphous solid powder or glassy flakes. This preparative method – which still remains the one prescribed today – does not guarantee that the FAC produced is a well-defined chemical in the molecular sense. Indeed, this procedure promotes the very opposite because ferric hydroxide is a highly polymeric ("long chain") substance, often colloidal; the FAC so obtained can be extremely variable in the proportions of ammonium, iron and citrate that it contains: in different samples its iron content is found to range from 14% to 28% w/w, and its colour varies correspondingly from light green to dark brown; no single chemical formula can be written for the actual molecular species that are present. Solid FAC is highly deliquescent, becoming sticky in humid environments, and on storage it may compact into an intractable mass.
Chemists refer to it as an “ill-characterised substance” – a condemnatory term that reflects the variability in its properties.

In just one rare investigation of the conditions for preparing FAC by the above method, at the Mallinckrodt Chemical Works in 1949, production of both green and brown FAC was achieved in crystalline forms – which usually indicates molecular purity. These crystalline varieties of FAC were found to be substantially less hygroscopic than the common amorphous forms. The products were examined by powder X-ray diffraction and produced sharp lines indicative of crystallinity but, disappointingly, the authors were not able to draw any structural inferences from their diffraction data; not even unit cell parameters. A molecular weight would have been usefully indicative of the degree of polymerization. These preparations of crystalline FAC samples entailed slow, stepwise procedures, lengthy boiling, and several days cooling. It seems unlikely that these painstaking methods have ever been employed for the commercial manufacture of FAC, and it is not known if the crystalline product has been tested for cyanotype sensitizers.

The inconsistency in commercial FAC means that no two people, working apart, can be sure that they are using the same chemical. Cyanotype instructions usually call for the “green form” introduced by Valenta in 1897, which performs better than the “brown form” of 1840, but this is not just a simple choice between the two because there is a whole range of varieties in between. This extreme variability will create problems especially for those who employ protocols requiring precise densitometric calibration, such as PiezoDN, to make digital negatives for their cyanotype printing.

All this unreliable chemistry is bad science! It partly explains the widely varying experiences of cyanotype printers trying to use the commercial chemical: those workers fortunate enough to have found a reliable commercial source of consistent, green FAC should have few problems with printing classic cyanotype quite successfully; but there are some for whom this is evidently not so, to judge from the images posted to the relevant internet groups. Even today, after 177 years of chemical manufacture since Herschel first invented the cyanotype process, it seems we still cannot get it right every time! Subscribers to the alternative photographic process forums are accustomed to reading dismayed cries for help from would-be practitioners who are failing to make permanent cyanotype images of high photographic quality with long, well-separated tonal scales and a satisfying maximum density.
6.7.3 **Paper problems**
Our difficulties are worsened by the variability of paper itself. Clearly a correct choice of paper and its sizing is vital to success with all the iron-based processes, which depend critically on the absorption of the sensitizer solution into the interfibrillar space within the surface cellulose fibres of the paper sheet. The image substance produced by light is often in nanoparticle form, and must be securely trapped within those fibres; otherwise, if the sensitizer just remains in the coarse pores between the fibres, the tiny particles of photoproduct will be easily washed out by the wet processing, leaving an image with empty 'blown-out' highlights and murky unresolved shadows. Absorption of the sensitizer can be improved by the use of a surfactant or wetting agent such as Tween 20.

6.7.4 **New cyanotype 1995**
One answer to the chemical uncertainties of ferric ammonium citrate is simply to avoid this substance altogether, and instead to use a light-sensitive ferric compound that is pure and reproducible, and essentially monomeric with molecules small enough to penetrate the cellulose structure. This was the reasoning behind my New Cyanotype process of 1995, which employed as the light-sensitive component the widely-available and well-characterised pure salt, ammonium ferric oxalate, of known formula and molecular structure and fully reproducible composition. The sensitizer is made up as a convenient 'single-bottle' solution, adding a dichromate as preservative to ensure a very long shelf-life of several years. The coatings are non-deliquescent, unlike those made from ferricitrate, which reduces the likelihood of damage to negatives during contact printing. Requiring only a very short UV exposure, three stops less than the 'Classic', the 'New' process yields a stable Prussian blue image with a smoothly graduated tonal scale of excellent colour and a maximum density verging on black. The image colour and gradation are finer than the classic process, and the 'ammonium' Prussian blue has less tendency to peptize, so the print-out image is a good indication of the final print. The wet-processing is extremely simple and non-critical, and can offer a small degree of contrast control.

The only disadvantages of this method are a somewhat more complicated method of preparation, (which would not be the case if ammonium ferricyanide could be bought – see above!); a moderate toxicity of the sensitizer solution (but no worse than kallitype or palladiotype); and a somewhat greater expense for the chemicals.\(^{589}\)
Despite these slight complications, a number of competent practitioners have found that the results more than repay the trouble taken.\textsuperscript{590} However, my ‘New’ sensitizer requires a preparative procedure that may be found somewhat challenging by users unfamiliar with chemical manipulations such as dissolution by heating, controlled fractional crystallization, and separation by filtration. These operations, especially crystallization under ill-defined conditions, can result in a somewhat variable yield, which causes differences in the final sensitizer concentration from one batch to another, and this variation may require the re-calibration of the most quantitatively demanding digital negative-making protocols, such as the PiezoDN procedure. Admittedly too, ‘New’ cyanotype is more expensive in chemicals than the ‘Classic’ formula. Its much higher sensitivity makes it rather susceptible to paper impurities: only the best non-buffered papers will serve. The dichromate preservative introduces a highly toxic substance (albeit in very small amount) which is now banned in many countries. Without the dichromate, the shelf-life may be reduced to a few months.

6.7.5 Ammonium dicitratoferrate(III) characterised 1998

In contrast with the ‘Classic’ chemical ammonium ferric citrate which, as we have seen, is polymeric and highly variable in its composition, a monomeric dicitrato-complex of iron(III) has only recently been isolated and fully characterised, as reported in the contemporary chemical literature.\textsuperscript{591} The essential starting material for making the monomeric dicitrato complex is the widely-obtainable simple salt, ferric nitrate nonahydrate, which is a pure crystalline solid containing monomeric hydrated ferric ions. However, if this pale violet-coloured salt is dissolved in water only, hydrolysis and polymerization of the ferric species begins immediately. The authors of this preparation dissolved the ferric nitrate directly in citric acid and neutralised it by adjusting the pH to ~8; the product is highly soluble in water, so had to be precipitated as yellow crystals by the addition of a large volume of ethanol, in which it is insoluble. The crystalline solid could then be analysed and fully characterised by 3-D X-ray structure determination, and other physical methods. The formula is interesting: \((\text{NH}_4)_5\text{Fe(C}_6\text{H}_7\text{O}_7)_2\cdot2\text{H}_2\text{O}\) showing that the citrate ligands are acting tetrabasic, having lost four protons, but the structure shows that each ligand is terdentate, using its hydroxyl function, but with one carboxylate uncoordinated.
6.7.6 Simple cyanotype 2019

Inspired by the publication of this chemical research just described above, I have recently explored a third option for making up cyanotype sensitizers: to prepare a photosensitive citratoferrate complex in situ by minimising the hydrolysis of iron(III) and formation of polymeric molecules. I have devised a sensitizer solution that is very easily made up within less than an hour, from widely available, inexpensive pure chemicals: citric acid, ferric nitrate, and ammonia, and potassium ferricyanide.

The reasoning behind this formulation is therefore to dissolve the ferric nitrate crystals directly into a solution already containing a two-fold molar ratio of the citrate ligand, as the free acid at low pH to suppress hydrolysis, then to neutralize the hydrogen ions carefully with ammonia, in the expectation that the main reaction product in solution will be the monomeric dicitratoferrate(III) anion. There is no need to try to isolate a solid from this – the solution can be used directly as a sensitizer. The preparation calls for no more skill than an ability to measure volumes of liquids and weigh out solids, with only moderate precision, and stir to dissolve them. It is highly reproducible and simple to scale up for commercial manufacture of large quantities of sensitizer.

It is obvious that there will also be a by-product of this reaction left in the sensitizer solution besides the free ammonium ions: viz. a high concentration of nitrate ions. These do not interfere with the photochemistry, and their presence actually seems to confer the following significant benefits on the sensitizer. Coincidentally, the addition of ammonium nitrate to improve the stability and quality of blueprint paper sensitizer was actually the subject of a U.S. patent, no. 2,113,423, as long ago as 1938.592

• The oxidising nature of nitrate anion at low pH should prevent the formation of any ferrous ions during dark storage, which would otherwise precipitate Prussian blue with the ferricyanide also present; so excess nitrate should therefore inhibit decomposition of this sensitizer made up as a 'single bottle' solution, and act as its preservative –just as the dichromate does in New Cyanotype– but with the advantage of being non-toxic.

• On development in mild 1% citric acid at pH ~4, the nitrate also helps to re-oxidise to Prussian blue any of the 'solarised' Prussian white, ferrous ferrocyanide, that is usually formed in the shadows of a cyanotype by heavy exposure.
It is also possible that the presence of ammonium nitrate in the dried sensitized layer, which is consequently somewhat hygroscopic, will assist print–out of the image by maintaining humidity within the paper, (as it is observed to do in the Malde–Ware print–out Pt/Pd process).

It is likely that the nitrate ion is also responsible for inhibiting the growth of mould in the sensitizer.

The resulting sensitizer I have named ‘Simple’ Cyanotype to distinguish it from the two others, Classic and New, because it uses what chemists call a ‘simple’ salt of iron – ferric nitrate – rather than the ‘complex’ salts of iron in the others. Simple cyanotype performs surprisingly well: admittedly, it is less than half the speed of my New Cyanotype, but it can still be about 4 times faster than a typical Classic Cyanotype formula using commercial ferric ammonium citrate. It yields a long, well–separated tonal exposure scale of about 2.7 (nine stops), with delicate high value gradation and a good maximum density of about 1.4. There is little runoff of image substance in the wet processing, which only uses very dilute citric acid. The ‘reversed’ shadow tones return to their full density fairly quickly, without treatment by hydrogen peroxide.

This formulation can offer a further benefit: by the addition of controlled volumes of ammonia solution, the extent of the neutralization and resulting pH have the effect of varying the contrast or Exposure Scale (ES) of the sensitizer. From the maximum of 2.7 (9 stops) it can be lowered to any value down to 1.8 (6 stops), and even lower to 1.2 (4 stops) by development in water alone. Thus the sensitizer can be prepared variously to meet the needs of the user: from the demanding requirements of PiezoDN on the one hand, to the printer of traditional silver–gelatin negatives on the other. By controlled mixing of the two solutions of the two extremes of contrast, any intermediate exposure scale could also be accurately matched. It is believed that this is the first time that a cyanotype sensitizer with fully controllable contrast has been devised.

The sensitizer solution can claim to be fairly non–toxic (it contains neither dichromate nor oxalate) so it may be safely used by children, and it is not potentially harmful to the environment. Moreover, this sensitizer shows no susceptibility to mould growth on its surface, that irksome feature of commercial ferric ammonium citrate solution. The shelf–life of this economical ‘single–bottle’ version appears to be long enough – about a month– to make it useful, but refrigeration greatly extends this. If long
term stability is important, it can be reformulated as an enduring ‘two-bottle’ A+B mixture like the Classic cyanotype. I hope also that it may soon become commercially available as a ready made-up solution, from a few dedicated suppliers on our respective continents. For a detailed summary of the instructions for making and using the sensitizer see the Simple Cyanotype Instructions in §7.4.

The Simple Cyanotype process has been tried and tested by several accomplished, but critical, practitioners named below, with links to work that they have recently posted, for the reader to see.

John Isner provided the original stimulus for developing this process variant, because he found the preparation of my New Cyanotype sensitizer too variable in its speed (as much as 1/3rd of a stop), which necessitated recalibration of his precise PiezoDN protocols. His website has some of his prints in Simple Cyanotype, (which he found to be good to ~ 1/10th of a stop). They can also be compared with his superb set of New Cyanotypes on the same website. 593

Denny West found that the fully controllable Exposure Scale of the Simple process (from 2.7 to 1.8 or less) could be used to match the printing facilities for his negatives. There are several excellent examples among the photos on his FaceBook pages. 594

Eric Anderson, most recently on World Cyanotype Day 2019, has used the Simple process for his Special Edition Art Project to make a set of beautiful ‘Bay views’ for the occasion. This work is accompanied by Eric’s very valuable technical account and objective review of his experiences with the process. 595

Jon Cone has tested the process for his print studio, Cone Editions Press, using negatives made by his Piezography PiezoDN system with outstanding results. 597 He characterises the prints as “Platinum in blue”.

My initial announcement of the Simple cyanotype –and some interesting reactions to it– may be found on the Photrio forum, 598 and on FaceBook, with some subsequent discussion, 599 and on the archive of the Alt–Photo–Process List. 600

6.8 A caveat on incompatible cyanotype processes

It may seem tempting to mix New Cyanotype sensitizer with either Simple or Classic Cyanotype sensitizers, but this is, unfortunately, a chemical nonsense. The whole point of the –admittedly troublesome– procedure for preparing New Cyanotype (§7.3) is to eliminate most of the potassium ions, replacing them with ammonium ions; otherwise, crystals of the
sparingly soluble salt, potassium ferric oxalate, can form on the paper, thus wrecking the print. Having achieved this elimination—with some manipulative effort—it would seem perversely counterproductive to then mix the resulting sensitizer solution, just freed of potassium ions, with one containing yet more potassium ions. Some workers may get away with it—depending on the extent to which they dilute their solutions—but it remains a potential source of failure. Brush marks and other defects may be due to the friction promoting formation of microcrystals of potassium ferric oxalate in the coating. Furthermore, there is another incompatibility between the New (ferrioxalate) sensitizer and the Simple and Classic (ferricitrate) sensitizers, with regard to their suitable developing agents: for optimum $D_{\text{max}}$, New is best with a ‘mineral acid’ developer (1% nitric, hydrochloric, or 5% sulphamic), whereas Simple and Classic can only tolerate a very weak acid (<1% citric), otherwise stronger acids will cause blue chemical fog in the highlights.

It should also be pointed out that the act of appropriating two well-established formulae, Herschel’s and Ware’s, in order to mix them arbitrarily, and then to label this adulterated mix with the name of the mixer, does not actually qualify as inventing a “new process”. It has yet to be clearly demonstrated—with step tablet tests, not pictures—exactly how New cyanotype is in fact improved by mixing it with Classic cyanotype.

Artists, of course, have a supreme right to do whatsoever they please—within the bounds of legality. Who am I, a scientist, to gainsay them? But if they choose to adulterate the chemistry, then they must bear responsibility if some of the results become deeply flawed.

6.9 Cyanotype composites with other processes

It is possible to make superimposed multiple prints which combine the characteristics of the cyanotype with the same image rendered in other processes. The easiest option, because of the inertness of the image substance, is to print and completely finish a platinum–palladium print, then recoat the dry print with cyanotype sensitizer, and make a second print in register using the same negative.

For a cyanotype over platinum or palladium the new cyanotype process is more suitable because it has about the same exposure scale as the platino–palladiotype process and a single negative will serve well for both printings; whereas the classical cyanotype process cannot render the density range of a negative made suitably for printing in platinum–palladium. It has been reported that simply coating a processed Pt/Pd
print with new cyanotype sensitizer cause an immediate deposition of Prussian blue image pigment on the graduated tones – without any light exposure at all. This suggests that the Pt/Pd image may be acting catalytically on the metastable cyanotype sensitizer and promoting the redox formation of Fe(II) and hence Prussian blue.

The reverse order of process, with the cyanotype made first, is not possible with platinotype because of the effect of oxalate on Prussian blue: traditional platinotype developer will rapidly bleach and dissolve any cyanotype image –see Appendix II.8. On the other hand it should be possible with palladiotype because the developer – acidified sodium citrate – will not attack Prussian blue (although it does render it light-sensitive).

A cyanotype over palladium print was exhibited in 2016 by the Worcester Art Museum in their landmark Cyanotypes show: it was a print by Edward Steichen entitled Jean Simpson in Profile which is now thought to be of this type.603 XRF showed that the predominantly brown image is palladium, with iron detectable in small areas of residual cyanotype blue at the edges; the surface presents a slight sheen and a fine craquelure that suggests it may be a Japine paper.

It is worth noting here that a degree of Prussian blue toning can also be imparted to a finished platinotype, without a second printing, by a catalytic toning procedure as mentioned above. This addition of blue to the highlights of a platinotype was sometimes referred to as a “Moonlight effect” toning, and could also be carried out by including potassium ferricyanide in a dilute oxalate developer with added glycerol.604

The chief difficulty in multiple printing is maintaining registration between the successive images in the face of possible dimensional changes of the paper substrate when it passes through the expansion and contraction that accompanies two cycles of wetting and drying. For this purpose a precise pin–register system is desirable, and papers may be pre–conditioned by one or two cycles of soaking in pure water and drying.

6.10 Recent novel photochemistry for cyanotype

Up to the year 2017, all cyanotype chemistry was based on the light–sensitivity of various iron(III) polycarboxylates – citrates, oxalates, tartrates, etc. Very recently, two quite different photosensitive molecules have been enlisted to produce images in Prussian blue, one of which has good potential for pictorial applications.
Jeff Blyth and Martin Richardson of De Montfort University have made use of the organic dye, thionine, also known as Lauth’s violet. They have amply demonstrated that this substance, as its ferricyanide, may be sensitized to visible light, under which it performs reduction–oxidation reactions that can selectively yield Prussian blue on development with a ferrous salt, to furnish a good pictorial gradation of tonality. Thionine is cationic, with the diaminophenothiazinium structure:

\[
\text{H}_2\text{N} - \text{S} - \text{NH}_2
\]

It is generally available as the acetate salt. This new cyanotype system has been named *Blythtype* and its outline procedure is as follows:

1) A specific brand of semi–gloss inkjet photo printing paper is coated with a solution of the violet dye thionine acetate and dried.
2) The thionine acetate is converted into the less soluble salt thionine ferricyanide by a bath of potassium ferricyanide, then washed and dried.
3) The coating is then photosensitized by a very specific buffer solution comprising ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid and diethanolamine.
4) The exposure is made by projecting the (coloured) positive image directly onto the sensitized sheet with visible light for a few minutes. Where light falls, thionine is proportionally photobleached to a *leuco* (colourless) form that is a reducing agent, which is presumed to reduce the ferricyanide ion to ferrocyanide.
5) The exposed sheet is thoroughly washed free of excess sensitizing solution, then the image on it is developed in a bath of acidic ferrous sulphate solution which creates Prussian Blue pigment with the excess ferricyanide, where less light has fallen, thus forming a positive image in cyanotype Prussian blue.
6) Excess thionine dye is washed out and the image is stabilised by a bath of sodium sulphite, and further washed.

The authors have published fully detailed instructions for manipulating the process, including a video demonstration of the system. *Blythtype* can claim three advantages over the conventional cyanotype:

1) It is positive–working so does not require preparation of a negative.
2) It has increased photosensitivity to visible light out to the red end of the spectrum, enabling a better balance of grey scales to be recorded directly from coloured images.

3) A modern digital projector can be used as the photographic enlarger, or even a slide projector using transparencies, to print colour images directly as positive cyanotypes.

An ingeniously novel photosensitizer for potential production of cyanotypes has been proposed by a group of Russian workers. It employs the benzene(cyclopentadienyl) iron(II) cation, \((C_6H_6)(C_5H_5)Fe^+\), known to chemists as a ‘mixed sandwich’ complex as can be seen from the schematic structure:

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{Fe} \\
\text{[C}_{6}\text{H}_{6}] \\
\text{[C}_{5}\text{H}_{5}] \\
\end{array}
\]

On irradiation by visible light this cation decomposes to give benzene, ferrocene (bis(cyclopentadienyl)iron), and Fe\(^{2+}\) cations. The Russian workers prepared the ferricyanide salt of this cation and found that it was indeed sensitive to visible light, yielding Prussian blue after a 10 minute exposure to a 60 watt incandescent bulb. A simple image of writing was reproduced in the authors’ publication, but no tests were made by step tablet of the tonal gradation obtainable by this process, which would be very costly because the starting complex is a rather exotic chemical, and not yet commercially available.
7 Formulary for Cyanotype Sensitizers

Gold is for the Mistress,  
Silver for the maid,  
Copper for the craftsman  
Cunning at his trade.  

"Good," said the Baron, sitting in his hall,  
"But Iron, cold Iron, is master of them all."

Rudyard Kipling (1865–1936)  
Cold Iron, from Rewards and Fairies (1910)

This chapter now offers a choice of five cyanotype formulations:  
1) **Classic cyanotype**: easy to prepare; uncertain; limited tonal range  
2) **Classic cyanotype improved**: more toxic; better range and density  
3) **New cyanotype**: faster; finer; higher Dmax; toxic; chemically tricky  
4) **Simple cyanotype**: easy to make; cheap; contrast control; non-toxic  
5) **Mike’s cyanotype**: Simple cyanotype without using ammonia

The Classic recipes are described in the useful practical guide for beginners by Malin and Gary Fabbri, and in many other sources, most notably the recent handbook by Christina Z. Anderson. Their narrow exposure scale is only suited to the short density range of normal negatives, such as would be made for printing in commercial gelatin–silver halide papers of contrast grade 2 or 3, or in gum dichromate pigment processes. In contrast (literally!), the New, Simple and Mike’s cyanotype formulations have a wide exposure scale that provides a good match to the long density range of negatives specifically prepared for salted paper, argyrotype, platinum–palladium, chrysotype, and similar siderotype alternative processes. The contrast of the negative should always be adapted to the preferred choice of process, not vice versa.

7.1 The Classic cyanotype process 1842/1897

This is the time–honoured traditional formulation; it is made up as two separate solutions, that are combined just before coating.

### 7.1.1 Sensitizer chemicals needed

- Ammonium iron(III) citrate (green variety)  
  - 20 g
- Potassium ferricyanide \( K_3[Fe(CN)_6] \)  
  - 10 g
- Tween 20 (non ionic surfactant) 20% v/v solution  
  - 1 cc
- Purified water  
  - 200 cc
The only innovation suggested here is the addition of Tween 20 surfactant, which can greatly improve the quality of the final print with many papers. The chemicals are not dangerous and can be safely handled by children under supervision. Ammonium iron(III) citrate is also known as ferric ammonium citrate (FAC); as has been explained in §4.3, §6.7.2 and Appendix III.5, it is a very variable substance: the ‘green’ form with an iron content of about 14% is preferable to the ‘brown’ form with 19% or more iron. However, any variety will work – up to a point. If the ‘brown’ form is the only one available it may be advantageous to add about one third of its weight of citric acid to the solution, to bring the citrate : iron ratio closer to that for the green form (see Appendix III.5). For the potassium ferricyanide GPR Grade (General Purpose Reagent: 98–99% purity) is adequate.

7.1.2 Preparation of Classic cyanotype sensitizer
Two stock solutions A and B are required; their concentrations are not critical so they do not need to be made up with great precision. It should be noted that the recommended concentrations of both components have varied widely throughout the whole history of the process, as previously described in §4.3 and illustrated in the scatter diagram, Fig. 4.1. The relative merits of these concentrations and ratios have recently been reassessed by Anderson and fully illustrated in her 2019 publication *Cyanotype.* The author sums up her findings in a 2020 posting:

“While writing the cyanotype book I discovered that I loved a 10/10 classic cyanotype mix (10% ferric ammonium citrate combined 1:1 with 10% potassium ferricyanide). It has a long exposure scale, little grain, and a more turquoise blue color. I had always used a 20/8 solution as recommended by the books and never thought to deviate until I began writing the book.”

It is likely that the quality of the ferric ammonium citrate available to any particular practitioner is of far greater importance to a good outcome than their actual choice of concentration ratios.

**Stock solution A:**
Dissolve 20 g of the solid ammonium iron(III) citrate in ca. 70 cc of purified water at room temperature and make up to 100 cc – or more, up to 200 cc, depending on which recommended preferences are accepted.

Within a week or two in many environments, the surface of this solution will become covered by a thick growth of furry mould. This may be inhibited at the outset by adding a few crystals of thymol to the bottle;
these float on the surface without dissolving, and should simply be avoided in extracting a sample of the sensitizer. (N.B. Thymol is harmful.)

**Stock solution B:**
Dissolve 10 g of the solid potassium ferricyanide in ca. 80 cc of purified water at room temperature and make up to 100 cc of a 10% w/v solution. These solutions must be kept in brown bottles, in a cupboard or box.

7.1.3 **Mixing and coating**
Before use, mix equal volumes of A and B to give a total volume of sensitizer appropriate for the amount of coating to be done. The surfactant Tween 20 is added at this point – see below. The mixed sensitizer only has a relatively short life. It is best to dedicate a separate, labelled syringe or pipette to each solution, and to use a third one for applying the mixture, in order to avoid cross-contamination during the work. As a guide to the volume needed for coating, about 1.5 cc should suffice for a 10x8 inch print, coated by rod; but brush coating may consume possibly twice this.

Although it is not part of the traditional formula, I would strongly recommend adding a few drops (2 to 5) of the 20% solution of Tween 20 wetting agent to each 10 cc of sensitizer, to improve its absorption by the paper fibres; the appropriate amount depends on the porosity of the chosen make of paper and should be arrived at by trial.

7.1.4 **Printing exposure**
Expose to sunlight or a UV lamp: the image prints out, with the uncovered regions of sensitizer first darkening to blue and then reversing back to a pale blue–grey. The image shadows should be somewhat reversed too, giving it a solarized look, and the highlights should be distinctly green. The exposure is correct when the image appears rather ‘blocked up’. Lamp exposure time may be around 20 to 30 minutes.

7.1.5 **Wet processing and reoxidation**
Immerse the exposed print in gently running water (or several changes of static water), face down, until the yellow sensitizer has entirely disappeared from highlight areas (20 minutes should suffice). There will be considerable leaching–out of blue pigment, so the extended washing necessary to fully clear the paper will significantly ‘reduce’ the image, and truncate the tonal scale in the high values.

It has been noted that the tonal scale may be strengthened by development first in a bath of very dilute, weak acid, such as 1% w/v citric
acid, rather than in plain water. However if this acid bath is too strong it may cause blue fogging of the highlights, and degrade the paper white.

The ‘reversed’ shadow tones will darken with time and the image colour will slowly intensify during drying over several hours, due to aerial oxidation of Prussian white to Prussian blue. If you wish to see the full density immediately, then immerse the wet print for about half a minute in dilute (0.3%) hydrogen peroxide (see §7.4.10) before the final wash. This does not make any difference to the final densities. Under no circumstances should you use a bath of potassium or ammonium dichromate for this reoxidation, although it has been recommended in the past (see §7.7). Hang the print to dry at room temperature, or in a uniform stream of warm air.

7.2 An improved Classic cyanotype sensitizer

A widely-circulated ‘improved’ formula follows, but it is not known where it originated. It is claimed that the highlight areas remain whiter. However, if you are prepared to go to this degree of trouble to introduce an admixture of oxalate and dichromate, which are poisonous, it would probably be more worthwhile to employ my New cyanotype method (§7.3), which uses oxalate entirely. This sensitizer should not be placed in the hands of children.

7.2.1 Sensitizer chemicals needed

Ammonium iron(III) citrate (green variety) 25 g
Potassium ferricyanide K₃[Fe(CN)₆] 10 g
Oxalic acid (COOH)₂.2H₂O 1 g
Ammonium dichromate (NH₄)₂Cr₂O₇ 0.2 g
Distilled water 200 cc

7.2.2 Preparation of improved Classic cyanotype sensitizer

Stock solution A:
Dissolve 25 g of the solid ammonium iron(III) citrate in ca. 70 cc of distilled water at room temperature; add 0.5 g oxalic acid, stir well to dissolve, and make up with distilled water to a final volume of 100 cc.

Stock solution B:
Dissolve 10 g of the solid potassium ferricyanide in ca. 80 cc of distilled water, add 0.5 g of oxalic acid and 0.2 g of ammonium dichromate, stir well to dissolve and make up to 100 cc with distilled water.
These solutions must be stored in brown bottles in a dark box.
Mix equal volumes of solutions A and B just before use.
7.2.3 Shortcomings of the Classic cyanotype process

Herschel’s classic negative-working cyanotype formula has such an elegant simplicity and economy that it may seem presumptuous to seek to improve on it. In 1906 John Tennant, the editor of *The Photo-Miniature*, could confidently write:

“...the blue print process reached finality long ago as far as any important improvement is concerned, and there is little that is new to tell about it.” 615

But any contemporary practitioner today, accustomed to siderotype processes such as palladiotype, who tries the classic cyanotype formulation for pictorial purposes is likely to notice some of the following comparative drawbacks:

1) Ferric ammonium citrate is a notoriously ill-characterised chemical and varies widely in composition, depending on the source. Even after 170 years of chemical manufacture, it continues to cause problems of unpredictability, inconsistency, and poor keeping qualities. Remote practitioners cannot be sure that they are using the same chemical.616

2) The two ingredients have to be stored as separate stock solutions, because the resulting sensitizer has an inconveniently brief shelf-life when mixed. The solution of ferric ammonium citrate proves to be an excellent nutrient medium for the growth of moulds, which will usually cover the surface within a week or two; a preservative fungicide such as thymol can be added to prevent this.

3) The traditional sensitizer is poorly absorbed by cellulose paper fibres and some of it tends to remain on the surface or in the pores; being deliquescent, it causes a tackiness which can damage negatives if the humidity is high. Much of the image may wash off on wet processing. Adding a surfactant to penetrate the fibres can help to counter this.

4) Printing is rather slow compared with other iron-based processes such as the palladiotype; exposures of 20–30 minutes to a typical ultraviolet light source are not unusual for classic cyanotype, compared with about 2–4 minutes for palladiotype or New cyanotype.

5) A significant proportion of the image substance, ‘soluble’ potassium Prussian blue, tends to be peptized and wash out during the wet processing, due to poor absorption and lack of retention by the paper fibres. This results in a serious loss of gradation in the high values, truncating the tonal scale, and conferring an artificially high contrast.
The only remedy that is offered to counter this drastic weakening of the image is to overexpose it grossly, which affects the quality adversely and the ease of judging exposure. Some workers even have to adopt double coating with the sensitizer.

6) In heavily exposed print areas, the classic sensitizer tends to produce excess ferrous iron which diffuses into, and stains adjacent highlight areas with Prussian blue. This is the defect referred to as ‘bleeding’.

7) The classic process has an exposure scale of only about 0.9 – three ‘stops’ – comparable with that of a Grade 3 silver–gelatin printing paper; so, like the gum dichromate process, it requires only a very short density range in the negative. The process is quite unable to render the long density range (2 or even 2.4) of the negatives needed for other siderotype processes.

7.2.4 Remedies for shortcomings of the Classic process
All the drawbacks listed above can be overcome, in principle, by replacing ammonium ferric citrate with ammonium ferric oxalate as the photosensitive agent, so employing the ferric salt that was shunned, or overlooked, by Herschel (§2.10) – whichever may have been the case. Ammonium ferric oxalate offers the following remedies for the disadvantageous problems listed above:

1) It is a well–characterised substance, widely available all over the world in an inexpensive, pure crystalline form that is chemically consistent, keeps well in the dark, and is highly soluble in water.

2) It does not permit any mould to grow on the solution. The mixed sensitizer has a shelf–life of several years.

3) Its solution penetrates the fibres of cellulose paper much more readily than the citrate, and it mordants better onto fabrics. It is non–deliquescent and dries well. The image substance is better retained.

4) It is much more light–sensitive than the citrate by a factor of 4 to 8, so exposures are correspondingly shorter, by two or three ‘stops’. This can be important when sun–printing 3–dimensional objects (§6.2), or working with poor light sources, or in teaching workshop situations.

5) It yields an ‘ammonium Prussian blue’ of very good colour, which is more resistant to peptization and alkalies. There is little loss of image substance on wet processing, so it renders delicate gradation in the
high values and a high $D_{\text{max}}$ verging on black. It is readily toned by a variety of reagents.

6) It can be mixed in chemically equivalent amounts with ferricyanide to avoid excess iron(II) and therefore suppress image ‘bleeding’.

7) Because there is little or no image loss the exposure scale of the New process is around 2.2 which is an excellent match for negatives of long density range, also intended for salt printing, platino–palladiotype, argyrotype or chrysotype. One negative can serve all processes.

However, as the early experimentalists discovered, see §4.4.4, the use of ammonium ferric oxalate introduces one difficulty: if it is mixed with potassium ferricyanide solution at concentrations high enough to provide a good ‘pictorial’ sensitizer with an adequate $D_{\text{max}}$, the sparingly soluble salt potassium ferric oxalate tends to crystallize out, rendering the mixture useless as a sensitizer. A ‘gritty’ sensitizer produces small white spots on the print, typical of surface crystals.

Although ammonium ferric oxalate was included in all the formulae for the later commercial blueprint papers, as described above in §4.11, this was only possible by keeping them sufficiently dilute in potassium ferricyanide, at 5% or less, to avoid this crystallization; so they only yield a maximum density that is too low for pictorial purposes.

7.2.5 Modified chemistry for the New cyanotype process

In theory, there is an obvious answer to this crystallization problem: to use ammonium ferricyanide instead of potassium ferricyanide; but the former is not commercially available, it is described as a “rare chemical” and is rather troublesome to make in pure form. In 1994, I developed a new procedure for preparing an ammonium salt cyanotype sensitizer that overcomes all the drawbacks besetting the classic method.

The desired ammonium ferricyanide is formed in situ by the expedient of using the low solubility of potassium ferric oxalate to eliminate most of the potassium ions from the solution. This is achieved by mixing very concentrated, hot solutions of ammonium ferric oxalate and potassium ferricyanide. When the mixture is allowed to cool, most of the sparingly soluble potassium ferric oxalate crystallises out, and is filtered off and rejected, leaving a solution of ammonium ferric oxalate plus ammonium ferricyanide, in the necessary proportions for making Prussian blue when the former is photoreduced. Of course the separation of potassium from ammonium cations is not 100%: some $K^+$ remains in the solution and a
little NH₄⁺ will be in the crystalline product, so the conditions of time and temperature adopted for the crystallization in the following recipe must represent a compromise, and should be carefully monitored.

The appropriate molar quantities have been calculated as follows: what little evidence we have (IR spectra – see Appendix II.7) suggests that the cyanotype product Prussian blue may be closer to the "insoluble" form Fe₄[Fe(CN)₆]₃ \(i.e.\) it contains a 4 : 3 molar ratio of Fe(III) : Fe(II), rather than the 1 : 1 molar ratio of Fe(III) : Fe(II) which assumes that the form of Prussian Blue precipitated is \((\text{NH}_4)[\text{FeFe(CN)}_6]\). What follows makes that assumption, but the relative proportions are not critical.

Precipitation of most of the potassium ions requires a molar ratio of 1 : 1 for the two components, so in the former case the overall molar ratio of ammonium ferric oxalate to potassium ferricyanide needed for both precipitation and for the photochemistry would be 7 : 3. Taking the relative molecular masses of the two components, this molar ratio corresponds to a weight ratio of:

\[
7 \times 428.07 : 3 \times 329.26 = 2996.49 : 987.78 = 3.034 : 1
\]

which comes to a rounded weight ratio of 3 : 1 for the two components, and accounts for the formula used in §7.3 below. The filtrate is then diluted appropriately to provide a stable, pre-mixed sensitizer solution, which contains 0.4 molar ammonium ferric oxalate and 0.3 molar ammonium ferricyanide, and which offers much greater printing speed and a long storage life without mould growth. The preparation and procedure are described in detail next.
7.3 The New cyanotype process 1995

7.3.1 Sensitizer chemicals and apparatus needed

(to make 100 cc of sensitizer, sufficient for ~65 prints 10x8 in.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chemical</th>
<th>Formula</th>
<th>Amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ammonium iron(III) oxalate</td>
<td>(NH₄)₃[Fe(C₂O₄)₃].3H₂O</td>
<td>30 g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potassium ferricyanide</td>
<td>K₃[Fe(CN)₆]</td>
<td>10 g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ammonium dichromate</td>
<td>(NH₄)₂Cr₂O₇</td>
<td>0.1 g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tween 20</td>
<td>C₅₈H₁₁₄O₂₆</td>
<td>0.25 cc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Citric acid (optional)</td>
<td>C₆H₈O₇</td>
<td>2 g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purified water</td>
<td>H₂O</td>
<td>100 cc</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Apparatus for making 100 cc of sensitizer**

- Pyrex glass beakers 2 x 100 cc
- Measuring cylinder 100 cc
- Scales or chemical balance sensitive to 0.1 g
- Glass stirring rod
- Conical filter funnel *ca.* 8–10 cm diameter
- Filter paper Whatman Grade 1 *ca.* 15–20 cm diameter
- Brown glass bottle 100 cc
- Hotplate (or bath of very hot water)
- Thermometer 0–100 ºC
- Tungsten lighting to work under, not fluorescent or daylight.

**Equipment and materials needed for cyanotype printing (see §6.4)**

- Paper (100% cotton or linen, sized but unbuffered)
- Glass coating rod or brush
- Glass plate
- Spirit level
- Drafting tape or clips
- Blotting paper strips
- Plastic syringes or pipettes, calibrated 2 cc and 5 cc
- Printing frame (hinged–back)
- UVA light source
- Timer
- Plastic measuring jug 1–2 litre; Stirrer
- Processing dishes (2)
- Print tongs or plastic gloves
- Drying line and pegs or drying screen
7.3.2 Preparation of New cyanotype sensitizer

*N.B. This sequence of instructions should be carried out under dim lighting (40–60 watt tungsten), not fluorescent tubes or daylight.*

1) Weigh 10 g of potassium ferricyanide into a 100 cc pyrex glass beaker. Add exactly 20 cc of purified water using a measuring cylinder. Heat to ca. 70 °C (158 °F) and stir until all the solid is dissolved. Keep the solution hot.

(A thermostatted hotplate is best for heating the solutions, but a basin of very hot water will do.)

2) Meanwhile, weigh 30 g of ammonium iron(III) oxalate into a second (100 cc) pyrex glass beaker. Add exactly 30 cc of purified water using a measuring cylinder. Heat to ca. 50 °C (122 °F) and stir until the green solid is dissolved. (Ignore any small residue of colourless crystals.)

3) Add 0.1 g of ammonium dichromate to (2) and let it dissolve. (Potassium dichromate may be used alternatively. This small amount of dichromate may be omitted to satisfy prevailing safety regulations, but the contrast and storage–life of the sensitizer will be diminished, and some Prussian blue may be formed as a sediment.)

4) Add the hot potassium ferricyanide solution (1) to the ammonium iron(III) oxalate solution (2), stir well, and leave the mixture in a dark place to cool to room temperature (ca. 20 °C, 68 °F) and crystallize. (For this quantity of solution, the cooling and crystallization will take at least two hours, but it may be better left overnight, especially if a larger scale of preparation is used.)

5) Separate the green liquid from the green crystals by decanting and filtration: use a conical filter funnel with a Whatman grade 1 filter paper, running into a 100 cc measuring cylinder. (The volume of filtrate should be ca. 60 cc. The yield of green crystals should be ca. 15 g. Dispose of these crystals safely by washing them away with hot running water. They are not an environmental hazard.)

6) Make up the filtered solution with purified water to a final volume of 100 cc in the measuring cylinder. Mix well and transfer the sensitizer solution to a well–stoppered, labelled and dated brown bottle. (The sensitizer solution is toxic if ingested and it will stain skin, etc. Stored in a cool dark place, its shelf–life is six months to a year without dichromate, and several years with dichromate added.)
1. 10 g potassium ferricyanide + 20 cc water

2. 30 g ammonium iron oxalate + 30 cc water
2. 1 and 2 dissolving

3. 0.1 g ammonium dichromate

4. Add 2 to 1
4. Mixture cooling & crystallising in dark

5. Filtration and making up to 100 cc
7.3.3 Use of dichromate
Potassium dichromate can be substituted for the ammonium dichromate. If your scales cannot weigh out 0.1 g of the solid dichromate, then make a 20% w/v solution of ammonium dichromate by dissolving 4 g of the solid in purified water at room temperature, and making up to a final volume of 20 cc. Mix thoroughly. Add 0.5 cc of this solution to the ammonium iron(III) oxalate solution in 2, above.

You should recognise that this optional use of dichromate does introduce a toxic substance into the working environment (see §7.7 List of Chemicals and Hazards) but in very small amount, especially compared with other users (e.g. gum–dichromate printers). Ammonium dichromate is a strong oxidising agent, intended here as a preservative: its addition can prevent any impurities in your chemicals from causing the formation of Prussian blue in the sensitizer over time, and usually gives it a shelf-life of several years. The presence of dichromate will also tend to increase the contrast of the sensitizer significantly (see the D/logH curves in Figs 7.1 and 7.2 below). Omitting the dichromate altogether may shorten the shelf-life of the sensitizer to a few months.

7.3.4 Use of Tween 20 surfactant
The new cyanotype sensitizer solution is much more readily absorbed by paper fibres than the traditional sensitizer using ammonium ferric citrate, so the addition of a wetting agent is usually quite unnecessary. With a few, hard-sized papers such as Buxton, however, the wetting agent can improve the ease of coating and the retention of Prussian blue by the paper fibres. In such cases, I prefer Tween 20 (a non–ionic surfactant) which may be added to the sensitizer solution to produce a final concentration of ca. 0.1% to 0.25%. A stock solution of concentration 15–20% v/v is useful for this: if you find it necessary, add one or two drops (0.05 to 0.1 cc) per 10 cc of sensitizer and mix well just before coating. The appropriate amount will depend upon the paper, so do not add it to the bulk of the stock sensitizer solution. Tween may interact unfavourably with some gelatin–sized papers. The Tween solution is not stable indefinitely and should be replaced if it shows a deposit.

7.3.5 Choice of papers
Use only papers that are not alkaline–buffered with chalk (calcium carbonate). Any paper that claims it conforms to the ISO 9706 standard for permanent paper will contain alkali (see §9.4.5), and alkalies are
hostile to cyanotype chemistry. The best results will be obtained on unbuffered papers such as:

- Arches Platine
- Bergger COT 320 and 160
- Hahnemühle Platinum Rag
- Legion Revere
- 'Buxton' or 'Herschel' handmade by Ruscombe Mill
- Wyndstone Vellum
- Awagami Masa
- Atlantis Silversafe Photostore

If buffered papers are unavoidable, such as Fabriano Artistico, or Whatman Watercolour, the chalk should be destroyed by pre-treatment in a bath of dilute (5% v/v) hydrochloric acid, or 5% – 10% w/v sulphamic acid, for about 10 minutes, then washed.

For prints up to 10 x 8 in. or A4 in size, a paper weight of 160 gsm (grams per square meter, g/m²) is adequate. For larger prints of A3 size, a heavier weight of 240 gsm, or more, will minimise cockling and bellying of the coated sheet due to the stresses set up by the hydroexpansion of the cellulose fibres in the wetted area. The sheet will contact the negative better, and be more robust in wet handling.

7.3.6 Drying
Let the sensitized paper dry at room temperature in the dark for about an hour. Shorter drying times are possible, but very humid paper may damage precious silver–gelatin negatives, and not lie flat due to fibre swelling.

Alternatively, allow 5–10 minutes for the sensitizer to soak in, until the paper surface loses its reflective sheen, then heat-dry it with an air stream at about 40 °C for ca. 5 minutes. The heat-drying of a cyanotype paper does not appear to influence image colour but it may increase contrast slightly, see §7.3.12. Rapid drying can reduce any chemical fogging due to impurity in the paper; but note that over–rapid drying may worsen the loss of image substance during the wet-processing procedure.

The storage life of coated paper depends on the purity of the paper base, as mentioned above, so use the sensitized paper within a few hours of coating, if possible. It will keep longer in a cool, dark desiccated enclosure. The coated side should remain light yellow: if it turns green or blue the highlights are chemically fogged, so either reject it and find a
better paper, or try adding citric acid as described below, for your next coatings. The new cyanotype sensitizer provides a sensitive test of paper quality, especially if the coated paper is left for some hours in the dark at normal relative humidity: any change of the yellow coating towards a green or – worse – blue colour signals the presence of impurities or additives in the paper that are hostile to this process (and possibly to other siderotype processes as well).

7.3.7 Citric acid to prevent fogging
Chemical fogging (“greening”) of the coating due to paper impurities may often be prevented by adding citric acid to the sensitizer, before coating, to a final concentration of \textit{ca}. 2%. Add one drop (0.05 cc) of a 40\% w/v solution of citric acid per cc of sensitizer. Do not add citric acid to the stock of sensitizer, because it will shorten the shelf–life.

7.3.8 Negatives and exposure
Expose the sensitized paper within a few hours of coating, if possible. Negatives should have a long density range (in the UV): at least 1.8 and as much as 2.4, to produce a full tonal range in the print – as for my other siderotype processes.

Whether your light source is the sun or a UVA lamp (§6.4.4), exposure will be much shorter than that needed for the traditional cyanotype recipes – this new sensitizer requires about two to five minutes exposure under a typical light source. With an 800 W HID UV lamp and digital negatives my exposure time is \textit{ca}. 60 seconds.

Since this is substantially a print–out process, a traditional hinged–back contact printing frame (§6.4.3) will enable inspection of the desired result: the exposure is continued until the high values appear green, the mid–tones are blue, and the shadow tones are substantially reversed to a pale grey–blue, giving the image a solarized appearance. The exposed print may be processed immediately. If the maximum detail in the high values is desired, the print may be left in the dark at average humidity for about 20 hours ‘darktime’ before wet processing, but the increase in tonal scale is slight – about one stop – see the results in §7.3.12.

7.3.9 Wet processing and contrast control
It is important to use a dilute mineral acid for the first development bath to achieve a consistent outcome:\textsuperscript{621} a deep maximum density and a well–shaped characteristic curve, having a very long printing exposure range of about 2.1 to 2.4 density units (7 or 8 ‘stops’) – see Figs. 7.1 and 7.2. The print should be processed initially by immersion in a bath of
dilute nitric acid (ca. 0.1% to 1% v/v) for 5–10 minutes. For safety in handling, it is suggested that a stock solution of 10% v/v nitric acid is made up, by diluting the concentrated (~65% w/v) acid 10-fold (i.e. 100 cc of acid added to water and made up to 1 litre). Take care to avoid the corrosive fumes! This intermediate solution is then diluted a further 10 to 100 times before use. The final 100–1000x diluted bath is not dangerous, but you should still protect your eyes. By varying the acid concentration of this processing bath between 0.1% and 1% v/v, some control of the contrast may be achieved at the development stage, with ΔD ~ 2.6 – 2.1. Fig 7.1 shows the characteristic (D/logH) curves for a new cyanotype sensitizer (without added dichromate) developed in water and in 1% nitric acid; the result using 1% hydrochloric acid is identical. These development baths tend to accumulate Prussian blue, which will eventually begin to stain the paper, so they should be replaced after a few prints have passed through them; typically, 1 litre will process five to ten 10 x 8 inch prints. If there are safety objections to using nitric acid, then 0.1% to 1% v/v hydrochloric acid may be used. If there are safety objections to this, then 1% to 5% w/v sulphamic acid could be used, or as a last resort, 1% to 5% w/v citric acid. Acetic acid is not recommended because it tends to form insoluble strongly-coloured basic ferric acetate.

The softest gradation will be obtained, ΔD ~ 2.6, with a more open gradation in the shadows but a somewhat reduced maximum density, if the exposed paper is simply processed with gently running tap water for at least twenty minutes; alternatively, several static baths of water may be used. To avoid undue loss of image substance, the water should not be significantly alkaline, preferably having a pH below 7, and a spoonful of citric acid may be added to ensure this. However, this processing method can still result in some loss of image, depending on the paper and sizing combination used, and the shape of the characteristic curve that it yields is rather unusual and may not suit all negatives – see Fig 7.1.

7.3.10 Washing and reoxidation
Finally wash the print gently in running water for at least 20 minutes. Alkaline water (pH >7) must not be used, nor hard water, containing calcium salts, which will damage the Prussian blue image. The criterion for completed processing is the total removal of the yellow stain of sensitizer from unexposed areas – the print should be held up to a bluish light, or viewed through a blue optical filter, to check that no yellow stains remain in the interior of the paper; if any stain persists, further
washing is required. Unlike prints made by the traditional recipe, there should be very little loss of image substance during this washing.

![Characteristic curve for New Cyanotype without dichromate. 1% acid developed (left) and water developed (right)](image)

The reversed shadow tones usually begin to regain their values quite rapidly during the wet processing (nitric acid particularly assists this), and they will fully recover during drying for about 24 hours in the air. However, if you are anxious to see the final result immediately, then immerse the print in a bath of 0.3% hydrogen peroxide for no more than half a minute before transferring to the final wash. This solution of hydrogen peroxide is made up freshly by diluting 50 cc of the commonly available 6% solution of hydrogen peroxide (the so-called ‘20 volume’ solution) to 1 litre of water. This treatment makes no ultimate difference to the print densities in the final outcome. Under no circumstances
should you use a bath of potassium or ammonium dichromate for this reoxidation, although it has been recommended in the past – see §7.7.

![Characteristic curve for New Cyanotype with 0.1% dichromate](image)

**Fig. 7.2** Characteristic curve for New Cyanotype with 0.1% dichromate 1% acid developed (right) and water developed (left) 4x exposure

### 7.3.11 New cyanotype: workflow summary
1. **Unbuffered paper**: choose side, mark up coating area
2. **Prepare sensitizer**: add citric acid (to 2%) and/or Tween (to 0.25%)
3. **Coat**: ca. 1.5 cc per 10x8 in. area: 4–6 ‘passes’ of coating rod
4. **Dry**: 1–2 hours at room temperature, or hot air for 10 minutes
5. **Negative**: density range ~2–2.4 in the UVA
6. **Expose**: UVA source till highlights green and shadows ‘reversed’
7. **Develop**: 0.1–1% v/v nitric acid for 5–10 minutes, raising contrast
8. **Wash**: in non-alkaline water for 20–30 minutes
9. **Drain** for 10 minutes and **Dry** flat
7.3.12 Effects of heat–drying and ‘darktime’
The effect of heat–drying new cyanotype sensitizer coatings before exposure is found to slightly shorten the tonal scale by about one stop – from 2.3 to 2.0, but it may also slightly coarsen the texture. Heat–drying the paper before coating was found to give no benefit at all. It has been claimed that results from the traditional cyanotype process can be vastly improved in quality by giving the exposed print a lengthy ‘dark–time’ of ca. 18 hours before processing.\(^\text{622}\) I have tested this claim for the new cyanotype process on Buxton paper with a 2 minute exposure followed by 19 hours of darktime at 58% RH and ~20 °C. The test results using Stouffer 3110 step tablets are shown in Fig 7.3. Each is in duplicate.

![Fig 7.3](image)

**Fig 7.3 Effects of heat drying sensitizer and ‘darktime’ exposure**

1 Control: no heat–dry or darktime; 2 Darktime only: 19 hours at 58% RH
3 Heat–dry only: 42°C for 5 mins; 4 Heat–dry and 19 hours darktime.

Leaving the exposed print in the dark before wet processing lengthens the exposure scale by about one stop, from 2.3 to 2.6, but weakens the \(D_{\text{max}}\) perceptibly, flattening the shadow tones slightly, and causing some edge fog, with a rim at the tideline. It only seems worth resorting to this darktime treatment if essential highlight detail would otherwise be lost.

Since heat–drying the coated paper shortens the exposure scale by one stop, then a combination of both heat–drying the coating and giving darktime gets one back to the original exposure range of \(\sim 2.3\), but with a loss of \(D_{\text{max}}\), so it is best to do neither!
7.4 The Simple cyanotype process 2019

7.4.1 Sensitizer chemicals needed

(to make 100 cc of sensitizer, sufficient for ~65 prints 10x8 in.

Purity: Analytical Reagent grade 99%+ is preferred, where possible)

Citric acid monohydrate \( \text{C}_6\text{H}_8\text{O}_7\cdot\text{H}_2\text{O} \) 13 g
OR Citric acid anhydrous \( \text{C}_6\text{H}_8\text{O}_7 \) 12 g
Iron(III) nitrate nonahydrate \( \text{Fe(NO}_3)_3\cdot9\text{H}_2\text{O} \) 12 g
Ammonia, aqueous solution \( \text{NH}_3 \) 10% w/w (S.G. 0.959) 50 cc
aka ammonium hydroxide \( \text{NH}_4\text{OH} \)

(Warning: commercial brands of ‘household ammonia’ may contain additives that spoil the chemistry)

OR use one of the more concentrated laboratory reagents supplied in various concentrations:

24% w/w (S.G. 0.912) 25% w/w (S.G. 0.909)
28% w/w (S.G. 0.900) 30% w/w (S.G. 0.894)
32% w/w (S.G. 0.890) 35% w/w (S.G. 0.880) 20 cc

Concentration may easily be checked with a hydrometer

Potassium ferricyanide \( \text{K}_3\text{Fe(CN)}_6 \) 10 g
aka potassium hexacyanoferrate(III)

Water, purified \( \text{H}_2\text{O} \)
(distilled, de-ionised, pharmaceutical, etc.) to make 100 cc

Tween 20™ \( \text{C}_{58}\text{H}_{114}\text{O}_{26} \) 1 cc
aka polyoxyethylene sorbitan monolaurate; polysorbate

Abbreviations:  
g = grams  
cc = cubic centimeters = millilitres  
S.G. = Specific Gravity in g/cc at 20°C  
% w/w = Weight percent Weight in g/100g

Processing Solution:

(Quantity to process ~65 prints 10x8 in.)

Citric acid (as above – either variety) 200 g
To make ~1% w/v solution dissolve 10 g in 1 litre of water
Use 1 litre to process 2 or 3 prints only
Apparatus for Preparing the Sensitizers

Scales or balance sensitive to 0.1 g
Glass beaker 200+ cc
Measuring cylinder (US: “graduate”) 100 cc
Glass stirring rod or magnetic stirrer and ‘follower’ bar
Brown glass bottle 100 cc
Filter funnel and filter paper
Tungsten or LED lighting, not fluorescent or daylight.

Illustrative only of typical equipment – not all required here
7.4.2 Preparation of Simple cyanotype sensitizers

Purity: If high photochemical precision is an issue, use Analytical Reagent (AR) grade chemicals, purity 99%+, and weigh to ±0.1 g.

N.B. All the following instructions must be carried out under dim tungsten or LED lighting, not fluorescent tubes or daylight.

Low contrast: wide Exposure Scale ~2.7

1) Weigh out 13 g of citric acid monohydrate into a 200+ cc beaker.  
OR 12 g of citric acid anhydrous.
Add 35 cc of pure water, and stir to dissolve all the solid.

2) Weigh out 12 g of iron(III) nitrate nonahydrate.
Add the solid to 1) slowly, stirring to dissolve each small addition.

3) Use a measuring cylinder, or preferably a graduated pipette, for
   33.0 cc of 10% w/w ammonia solution.
   OR 14.5 cc of 24% w/w ammonia made up to 33 cc with water
   OR 13.9 cc of 25% "    "  "
   OR 12.6 cc of 28% "    "  "
   OR 11.8 cc of 30% "    "  "
   OR 11.1 cc of 32% "    "  "
   OR 10.3 cc of 35% "    "  "
Add it to 2) slowly with stirring; the yellow solution turns green.

4) Weigh out 10 g of potassium ferricyanide, purity 99% preferably.
Add the solid to 3) and stir thoroughly to dissolve all the crystals.

5) Transfer solution 4) to a measuring cylinder or volumetric flask and
make it up with pure water to a final volume of 100 cc. Mix well and
transfer the solution to a well-stoppered brown glass bottle. Label and
date it, and store in the dark.

The solution should be left to stand overnight before first use.
Any trace impurities in the chemicals may cause the formation of a very
small amount of sediment – brown ferric hydroxide and/or Prussian blue
– which can be removed by filtration if necessary.
This sensitizer has a storage life of several weeks at room temperature
but will keep much longer if refrigerated to ca. 5ºC.
Medium contrast: Exposure Scale ~2.4
Follow the procedure for 1) and 2) above, then substitute the following:

3) Use a measuring cylinder, or preferably a graduated pipette, for
   38.5 cc of 10% w/w ammonia solution
   OR 16.9 cc of 24% w/w ammonia made up to 38 cc with water
   OR 16.2 cc of 25%  "  "
   OR 14.7 cc of 28%  "  "
   OR 13.8 cc of 30%  "  "
   OR 12.9 cc of 32%  "  "
   OR 12.0 cc of 35%  "  "
Add it to 2) slowly with stirring; the yellow solution turns green.
Continue with steps 4) and 5) as above.

High contrast: narrow Exposure Scale ~1.8
Follow the procedure for 1) and 2) above, then substitute the following:

3) Use a measuring cylinder, or preferably a graduated pipette, for
   44.0 cc of 10% w/w ammonia solution
   OR 19.3 cc of 24% w/w ammonia made up to 44 cc with water
   OR 18.5 cc of 25%  "  "
   OR 16.8 cc of 28%  "  "
   OR 15.7 cc of 30%  "  "
   OR 14.8 cc of 32%  "  "
   OR 13.7 cc of 35%  "  "
Add it to 2) slowly with stirring; the yellow solution turns green.
Continue with steps 4) and 5) as above.

Intermediate contrast with Exposure Scales between 2.7 and 1.8 can be obtained by mixing sensitizer solutions 1) and 3) proportionally.
7.4.3 Equipment and materials

Paper: pure cellulose, unbuffered, internally sized with AKD
Glass coating rod or brush
Blotting strips
Syringes or pipettes, Calibrated 2 cc and 5 cc
Glass plate
Spirit level
Drafting tape or clips
Print frame
UVA light source
Timer
Plastic measuring jug 1–2 litre
Stirrer
Processing Dishes (2)
Drying line and pegs or drying screen

Illustrative only of typical equipment – not all included here.
7.4.4 Choice of paper
Use only papers that are not alkaline-buffered with chalk (calcium carbonate). Alkalies are hostile to cyanotype chemistry. The best results will be obtained on unbuffered papers such as:

- Arches Platine
- Hahnemühle Platinum Rag
- Magnani Revere Platinum
- ‘Buxton’ or 'Herschel' handmade by Ruscombe Mill
- Crane’s Platintype
- Weston Diploma Parchment

If buffered papers are unavoidable, they should be pre-treated in a bath of dilute (5% v/v) hydrochloric acid, or 5–10% w/v sulphamic acid, to destroy the chalk, then washed. The use of oxalic acid is not recommended because calcium oxalate is as insoluble as calcium carbonate. For prints up to 10x8 in. or A4 in size, a paper weight of 160 gsm (grams per square meter, g/m²) is adequate. For larger prints of A3 size, a weight of 240 gsm, or more, will minimise “bellying” of the wetted area of the coated sheet, which will contact the negative better and be more robust in wet handling.

7.4.5 Negatives and control of contrast
Negatives may have a long density range (in the UV): as much as 2.7, to produce a full tonal range in a print made with the low contrast sensitizer. This version particularly commends itself for preparing digital negatives by the PiezoDN protocols. By making use of the variable contrast adjustment, sensitizers may be formulated to match their Exposure Scale to the density range of silver gelatin negatives prepared for other processes, such as platinotype or palladiotype.

7.4.6 Addition of surfactant
The success of cyanotype depends on the sensitizer penetrating the interfibrillar space of the surface cellulose fibres, where the pigment will be trapped, and not simply remaining in the coarse pores of the paper, from which it washes out. To assist retention and to provide a more uniformly coated surface, a surfactant (or ‘wetting agent’) is used. Tween 20™ (a non-ionic surfactant) is added to the sensitizer solution just before coating to produce a final concentration of ca. 0.25–0.5%. i.e. one drop (ca. 0.05 cc) of a 5% v/v stock solution of Tween 20™ is added to each cc of sensitizer and mixed in well. For larger coating areas, add one drop of a 25% v/v stock solution of Tween 20™ to each 5 cc of sensitizer.
Do not use Tween 80™ which causes foam. Do not add Tween to the stock sensitizer solution: it doesn’t last very well when dilute, and the appropriate amount – to be found by trial – will depend upon the chosen paper.

7.4.7 Coating
Coating by the rod method (ca. 6 ‘passes’) will require ca. 1.5 cc of sensitizer to coat an area appropriate for a 10"x8" print; brush coating consumes more. Blot off any excess sensitizer which may crystallize and damage negatives. Try to “fine tune” your coating volume on the basis of experience, in order to avoid excess. For instructions see:
http://www.mikeware.co.uk/mikeware/preparations.html
https://www.dropbox.com/s/yf6z1kftk7q2xcf/coating.mov?dl=0

7.4.8 Drying
Let the sensitized paper dry at room temperature in the dark for an hour or two. Shorter drying times are possible, but very humid paper may damage silver–gelatin negatives, and not lie flat due to swelling. Alternatively, allow a few minutes for the sensitizer to soak in, until the paper surface appears non-reflective, then heat–dry it with an air stream at ca. 40°C for ca. 5 minutes. Heat drying of a cyanotype paper appears to increase contrast slightly (~1 stop). Prompt drying can diminish any chemical fogging due to impurities in the paper; but note that over–rapid drying may diminish penetration and worsen the loss of image substance during the wet–processing procedure.

The storage life of coated paper depends on the purity of the paper base, as mentioned above, so use the sensitized paper within a few hours of coating, if possible. It will keep longer in a cool, dark, desiccated enclosure. The coated side should remain light yellow: if it turns green or, worse, blue, the highlights are chemically fogged, so reject it and find a better paper.

7.4.9 Printing exposure
Exposure depends on the chosen scale of contrast but is significantly shorter than that needed for the Classic cyanotype process – probably about 5 to 10 minutes under an average 365 nm UVA light source (e.g. a facial tanning unit) should suffice.

Since this is substantially a print–out process, a traditional hinged–back contact printing frame will enable inspection of the desired result: the exposure is continued until the high values appear light green, the mid–tones are firm blue, and the deepest shadow tones are reversed to a pale
blue-grey, giving the image a ‘solarised’ look. If the print is left in the dark for some hours before wet processing, another stop of highlight detail may become apparent.

7.4.10 Wet processing

Develop in 1% citric acid for half to one minute with agitation – until Prussian blue starts to runoff, then transfer to the water wash. If highlights appear to be unduly blued, use citric acid more dilute than 1%. Omitting this acidic bath and simply processing in water produces a much shorter Exposure Scale of ~1.3, with higher contrast and no fogging but a slightly weakened $D_{\text{max}}$.

**Water Wash:** immerse face down in gently running water for ~10 minutes. Alkaline water (pH > 7) must not be used, nor hard water, containing calcium salts, which will damage the Prussian blue image. Alternatively, at least three or four baths of static water may be used. The reversed shadow tones regain density fairly rapidly by air reoxidation during wet processing and drying, but if completion of the regain is required immediately – e.g. for densitometry– then 50 cc of 6% hydrogen peroxide (“20 Volume”) may be added per litre of wash bath. Blued highlights may be cleared by immersion in a 1% bath of ammonium oxalate for a few minutes.

7.4.11 Simple cyanotype: workflow summary

1. **Unbuffered paper:** choose side, mark up coating area
2. **Syringe out sensitizer:** add Tween to final strength ~0.25–0.5 %
3. **Rod Coat:** ~1.5 cc per 10 x 8 in. area: 5–8 ‘passes’ of coating rod
4. **Dry in dark:** 1–2 hours at room temp, or 40°C air for 10 minutes
5. **Negative:** density range from 1.8 to a maximum 2.8, in the UVA
6. **Expose to UVA:** until high values green and deep shadows reversed
7. **Develop:** ½ minute in ~1% citric acid; or water for more contrast
8. **Wash:** in non-alkaline, non-hard water for 10 minutes
7.4.12 Typical results: one-bottle version

Three contrast grades 1, 2, 3. Sensitizer pH given.

Buxton paper 160 gsm. Tween20 0.3%. Exposure 8½ minutes.

1–3 developed in 1% citric acid for ½ minute. 4 in water only.

1. ES ~ 2.7  
   pH ~ 4

2. ES ~ 2.4  
   pH ~ 6

3. ES ~ 1.8  
   pH ~ 8

4. ES ~ 1.3  
   Water developed
7.4.13 Sensitizers separated for longer storage

Purity: If high photochemical precision is an issue, use Analytical Reagent (AR) grade chemicals, purity 99%+, and weigh to ±0.1 g.

N.B. All the following instructions must be carried out under dim tungsten or LED lighting, not fluorescent tubes or daylight.

Low contrast: wide Exposure Scale ~2.7

1) Weigh out 13 g of citric acid monohydrate into a 200+ cc beaker.
   OR 12 g of citric acid anhydrous.
   Add 48 cc of pure water, and stir to dissolve all the solid.

2) Weigh out 12 g of iron(III) nitrate nonahydrate.
   Add the solid to 1) slowly, stirring to dissolve each addition.

3) Use a measuring cylinder, or preferably a graduated pipette, for
   33.0 cc of 10% w/w ammonia solution
   OR 14.5 cc of 24% w/w ammonia made up to 33 cc with water
   OR 13.9 cc of 25% “ “
   OR 12.6 cc of 28% “ “
   OR 11.8 cc of 30% “ “
   OR 11.1 cc of 32% “ “
   OR 10.3 cc of 35% “ “
   Add it to 2) slowly with stirring; the yellow solution turns green.

4) Transfer this solution to a well-stoppered brown glass bottle. Label and date it, and store in the dark. This solution, volume ~95 cc, should keep for many months at room temperature, but can also be refrigerated at 5ºC. When required for use, proceed as follows:

5) Weigh out 10 g of potassium ferricyanide, purity 99% preferably.
   Add the solid to the whole of 3) and stir thoroughly to dissolve all the crystals. The total volume of solution should now be ~100 cc.

6) If less sensitizer is required for a session, then measure out the required volume of 3) and divide it by 9.5 to find the correct weight in grams of potassium ferricyanide to dissolve in it.

The mixed sensitizer should stand overnight before first use. Any trace impurities in the chemicals may cause the formation of a very small amount of sediment – brown ferric hydroxide and/or Prussian blue – which can be removed by filtration if necessary.

The mixed sensitizer has a storage life of several weeks at room temperature but will keep much longer if refrigerated to ca. 5ºC.
Medium contrast: Exposure Scale ~2.3
Follow the procedure for 1) and 2) above, but use 43 cc of pure water, then substitute the following for 3):

3) Use a measuring cylinder, or preferably a graduated pipette, for 38.5 cc of 10% \(w/w\) ammonia solution

OR 16.9 cc of 24% \(w/w\) ammonia made up to 38 cc with water

OR 16.2 cc of 25% “ “

OR 14.7 cc of 28% “ “

OR 13.8 cc of 30% “ “

OR 12.9 cc of 32% “ “

OR 12.0 cc of 35% “ “

Add it to 2) slowly with stirring; the yellow solution turns green. Continue with step 4) when required for use.

High contrast: narrow Exposure Scale ~1.8
Follow the procedure for 1) and 2) above, but use 38 cc of pure water, then substitute the following for 3):

3) Use a measuring cylinder, or preferably a graduated pipette, for 44.0 cc of 10% \(w/w\) ammonia solution

OR 19.3 cc of 24% \(w/w\) ammonia made up to 44 cc with water

OR 18.5 cc of 25% “ “

OR 16.8 cc of 28% “ “

OR 15.7 cc of 30% “ “

OR 14.8 cc of 32% “ “

OR 13.7 cc of 35% “ “

Add it to 2) slowly with stirring; the yellow solution turns green. Continue with step 4), and when required for use, step 5).

Intermediate contrast with Exposure Scales between 2.7 and 1.8 can be obtained by mixing the sensitizer solutions proportionally. The Exposure Scale can be further narrowed to 1.3 by developing in water only, rather than citric acid, but with some diminution of \(D_{\text{max}}\).
7.5 Mike’s cyanotype

My correspondence has indicated that there are a few alternative–photo–process workers who cannot obtain – or cannot tolerate handling – strong ammonia solution. This variant is for them. It produces – odourlessly – a sensitizer solution that should be identical with the first one of §7.4.2.

7.5.1 Sensitizer chemicals needed

(to make 100 cc of sensitizer, sufficient for ~65 prints 10x8 in
Purity: General Purpose Reagent (GPR) grade ca. 98%)

Triammonium citrate \((\text{NH}_4)_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{O}_7\) 15 g
aka ammonium citrate, tribasic
Iron(III) nitrate nonahydrate \(\text{Fe(NO}_3\)_3.9\text{H}_2\text{O}\) 12 g
aka ferric nitrate nonahydrate
Potassium ferricyanide \(\text{K}_3\text{Fe(CN)}_6\) 10 g
aka potassium hexacyanoferrate(III)
Water, purified \(\text{H}_2\text{O}\) (distilled, de–ionised, pharmaceutical, etc) to make 100 cc
Tween 20™ \(\text{C}_{58}\text{H}_{114}\text{O}_{26}\) 0.25 cc
aka polyoxyethylene sorbitan monolaurate; polysorbate

Processing Solution: Quantity for ~65 prints 10x8 in.
Citric acid \(\text{C}_6\text{H}_8\text{O}_7\) 200 g
Dissolve 10 g in 1 litre of water for 1% w/v. 20 litres total needed
Use only for 2 or 3 prints, due to build up of blue.

7.5.2 Preparation of Mike’s cyanotype sensitizer

Low contrast: wide Exposure Scale ~2.7
One–Bottle Version

N.B. These instructions must be carried out under dim tungsten or LED lighting, not fluorescent or daylight.

1) Weigh out 15 g of triammonium citrate into a 200+ cc beaker.
   Add 40 cc of pure water, and stir to dissolve the colourless crystals.
   (The solution cools, so may be warmed to assist dissolution.)

2) Weigh out 12 g of iron(III) nitrate nonahydrate.
   Add it to 1) slowly, a little at a time, with stirring to dissolve it.
   (Solution colour is yellow–green.)

3) Weigh out 10 g of ground potassium ferricyanide.
   Add it to 2) and stir thoroughly to dissolve all the solid.
   (The final solution colour is olive–brown.)
4) Transfer the solution 3) to a measuring cylinder and make it up with pure water to a final volume of 100 cc.

5) Transfer the sensitizer solution to a well-stoppered brown bottle. Label and date it, and store in the dark.

(Trace impurities in the chemicals may cause the slow formation of a very small amount of sediment – ferric hydroxide and/or Prussian blue – which can be removed by filtration.)

**Two-Bottle version for longer storage**

If the storage life of the mixed sensitizer proves too short for your practice, then proceed as in 1) and 2) above, then as follows:

3) Bottle the solution 2) (~55 cc in volume) without further dilution. This should keep well.

4) Dissolve 10 g of potassium ferricyanide in 50 cc of pure water and bottle it separately.

5) When required for use, mix equal volumes of solutions 3) and 4).
7.6 Diagnosis of fogged highlights

A common fault observed in many handmade prints is highlight fogging – the appearance of tone due to image substance (Prussian blue) being deposited where there should be none. There are at least six possible causes of this fog:

(1) The sensitizer is already decomposed
(2) There is a hostile chemical in the paper, reducing the sensitizer
(3) The safelighting is inadequate under the conditions of working
(4) The mask or negative is not dense enough in its maximum value
(5) The wet chemistry is faulty, chemically reducing the sensitizer
(6) The clearing procedure is inadequate, leaving residual iron, etc.

so there now follows in Table 7.1 a systematic method of diagnosis.

Note that it is important for reference and comparison, to have a margin of clear paper which has not been coated with sensitizer, and a border to the image that has been coated but remained masked and unexposed, as described in §6.4.3. Procedure:

Compare a border region of the sensitized area – coated, but masked during exposure – with the margin of uncoated paper, and answer the following questions YES/NO :

Fog apparent on coating? YES → Sensitizer is decomposed (1) or Very hostile chemical in paper (2)
NO ↓
Fog appears during drying? YES → Fog if dried in total darkness?
NO ↓
Fog appears after pop exposure? YES → Mask/neg not dense enough (4)
NO ↓
Fog after wet dev processing? YES → Sensitizer decomposed (1) or Faulty safelight (3) or Mask/neg not dense enough (4) or Wet chemistry faulty (5)
NO ↓
Stain of sensitizer after wash? YES → Clearing process inadequate (6)
NO ↓
Stain in uncoated areas of paper? YES → Wet chemistry contaminated (5)

Table 7.1 An algorithm for the six most probable causes of fogging
Notes

pop refers to printout processes, dev to development processes. It is important to distinguish Fog (unwanted residual image substance) from Stain (unwanted other residual chemicals, especially ferric salts). These are usually distinguishable by different colours – the former grey, the latter yellow.

Fault (4) can be detected by including a small area of high UV blocking – 'Rubylith' – for comparison with the maximum density of the negative.
7.7 List of chemicals and hazards

The following information has been condensed from the Materials Safety Data Sheets for the substances involved in making various cyanotype sensitizers.\(^{623}\) The quoted Hazard Ratings of the Hazardous Materials Identification System (HMIS),\(^{624}\) are on a scale running from 0 to 4: 0 = minimal, 1 = slight, 2 = moderate, 3 = severe and 4 = extreme.

When handling any chemical, it should be standard practice always to wear the minimum laboratory protective equipment of safety glasses, a lab coat or smock, and latex gloves. Additional precautions are indicated where necessary. During the use of any chemical, avoid splashing into your eyes, skin, and clothing. Wash your hands thoroughly after handling. When a chemical is not in use, keep it in a tightly closed, properly labelled container, in a place inaccessible to children.

**Ammonia, aqueous**

\[ \text{NH}_4\text{OH}, 28-30\% \text{ w/w NH}_3 \ (\text{RMM} = 17.03) \]
\[ \text{RMM} = 35.05 \]
\[ \text{CAS} \ 1336-21-6 \]
\[ \text{Aldrich} \ #22,122-8; \text{Alfa} \ #33285 \]

*Also known as:* Ammonium hydroxide

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hazard</th>
<th>Rating</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Health</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flammability</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reactivity</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contact</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

High vapour pressure of ammonia gas. Causes severe skin burns and eye damage. Vapour extremely irritating to respiratory system. If swallowed causes severe internal damage. Very toxic to aquatic life. Reacts violently or produces explosive substances with halogens and their compounds.

**Ammonium citrate, tribasic**

\[ (\text{NH}_4)_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{O}_7 \text{ or C}_6\text{H}_{17}\text{N}_3\text{O}_7 \]
\[ \text{RMM} = 243.215 \]
\[ \text{CAS} \ 3458-72-8 \]
\[ \text{Aldrich} \ #37,469-5; \text{Alfa} \ A16973 \]

*Also known as:* 2-hydroxy-propane-1,2,3-tricarboxylic acid, triammonium salt
Ammonium dichromate

\((\text{NH}_4)_2\text{Cr}_2\text{O}_7\)

\(\text{RMM} = 252.07\)

\(\text{CAS} 7789-09-5\)

\(\text{Aldrich} \ #22,481-2; \ \text{Alfa} \ #13444\)

Hazard          Rating
Health          2
Flammability    1
Reactivity      1
Contact         2

Causes serious eye irritation. Causes skin irritation. May cause respiratory irritation.

Harmful if dust is inhaled, contact may cause burns or external ulcers. Strong oxidizer, contact with other materials may cause fire.

Do not get in eyes, on skin, on clothing. Wash thoroughly after handling.

Unfortunately, this substance has a hazard rating of 4 on the health scale, because it is a known human carcinogen: external contact can cause ulcers and dermatitis. In spite of this hazard, ammonium dichromate (or the corresponding potassium or sodium salts) has long been used on a large commercial scale in the printing industry, and for tanning of leather, occasionally giving rise to documented cases of occupational illness. It is also employed in large amounts for the Gum Bichromate and Carbon printing processes. The very small quantity used in the sensitizers described above does not represent a serious risk if the chemical is handled sensibly and proper precautions taken, but if the hazard is still considered unacceptable, its use may be avoided altogether as indicated above in the preparative section.

You are strongly advised against the use of a dichromate bath to ‘fix’ (i.e. re-oxidise) cyanotypes, which was once commonly recommended practice, especially for prints on fabrics. The unpleasant consequences to an artist who used a dichromate bath for quilting fabrics are described in some detail in the medical literature. Victims of dichromate exposure can become particularly sensitized to it.
Ammonium iron(III) citrate
Fe content: 14–18% (green form); 19–28% (brown form)
RMM = ca. 290/mole Fe (green); ca. 391/mole Fe (brown)
CAS 1185–57–5
Aldrich #22,896–6; Alfa #A11199 (brown)

Also known as: iron ammonium citrate; ammonium ferric citrate
ferric ammonium citrate.

Hazard   Rating
Health    1 slight
Flammability 0 none
Reactivity 1 slight
Contact   0 minimal

This substance presents very low risk; it has even been prescribed as an iron tonic and is present in small amounts in a well-known soft drink. Unprescribed consumption is not recommended, however, because excess iron in the body can cause medical problems (siderosis).

Ammonium iron(III) oxalate (trihydrate)
(NH₄)₃Fe(C₂O₄)₃.3H₂O
RMM = 428.07
CAS 13268–42–3; 14221–47–7
Aldrich #23007–3; Alfa #42112; Bryant #F335; Spectrum #F1002;
Fluka #12302; Citychemical #F393

Also known as: iron ammonium oxalate; ammonium ferric oxalate;
ferric ammonium oxalate; ammonium trisoxalatoferrate(III) trihydrate.

Hazard   Rating
Health    3 severe
Flammability 1 slight
Reactivity 2 moderate
Contact   3 severe

Like all soluble oxalates (see oxalic acid, below), it should be regarded as highly toxic, i.e. capable of causing death or permanent injury (especially kidney damage) if taken by mouth. However, several grams would have to be ingested to cause such extreme damage. The chemical takes the form of non-volatile crystals, so there is little risk of inhalation, but it is an irritant.
Citric acid (anhydrous or monohydrate)
C(OH)COOH.(CH$_2$COOH)$_2$
RMM = 192.12
CAS 77–92–9
Aldrich #25,127–5 or #C8,315–5; Alfa #31185; Bryant #C350; Fluka
#27488 or #27109 or #03878; Merck #818707 or #100247
Also known as: 2-hydroxypropane-1,2,3-tricarboxylic acid;
2-hydroxypropane-1,2,3-trioic acid.
This substance is also obtainable as a monohydrate CAS 5949–29–1.

**Hazard** | **Rating**
--- | ---
Health | 2 moderate
Flammability | 1 slight
Reactivity | 1 slight
Contact | 2 moderate

Severe eye irritant. Skin and respiratory irritant. Prolonged or repeated exposure may cause allergic reaction in some individuals.

Hydrochloric acid, concentrated (ca. 36% w/w HCl)
HCl
RMM = 36.46
CAS 7647–01–0
Aldrich #25,814–8; Alfa #L13091
Also known as: muriatic acid

**Hazard** | **Rating**
--- | ---
Health | 3 severe
Flammability | 0 none
Reactivity | 2 moderate
Contact | 3 severe

Concentrated acids cause severe burns; may be fatal if swallowed or inhaled. Do not get in eyes, on skin, on clothing. Keep in tightly closed container. Loosen closure cautiously. Use with adequate ventilation. Causes damage to respiratory system (lungs): inhalation of vapours may cause pulmonary edema, circulatory system collapse, coughing and difficult breathing. In case of contact, immediately flush eyes or skin with plenty of water for at least 15 minutes while removing contaminated clothing. In case of spill, neutralize with soda ash or lime and place in dry container.
Iron(III) nitrate (nonahydrate)

\[ \text{Fe(NO}_3\text{)}_3.9\text{H}_2\text{O} \]

\[ \text{RMM} = 404.00 \]

\[ \text{CAS 7782–61–8} \]

Aldrich #21,682–8; Alfa #33315

Also known as: Ferric nitrate, nonahydrate

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hazard</th>
<th>Rating</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Health</td>
<td>1 slight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flammability</td>
<td>0 none</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reactivity</td>
<td>2 moderate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contact</td>
<td>2 moderate</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Causes serious eye irritation. May cause skin irritation. May intensify fire; oxidizer.

Nitric acid, concentrated (ca. 69% w/v HNO₃)

\[ \text{HNO}_3 \]

\[ \text{RMM} = 63.01 \]

\[ \text{CAS 7697–37–2} \]

Aldrich #25,811–3; Alfa #33260

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hazard</th>
<th>Rating</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Health</td>
<td>3 severe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flammability</td>
<td>0 none</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reactivity</td>
<td>2 moderate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contact</td>
<td>3 severe</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Concentrated acids cause severe burns; may be fatal if swallowed or inhaled. Do not get in eyes, on skin, on clothing. Keep in tightly closed container. Loosen closure cautiously. Use with adequate ventilation. Wash thoroughly after handling. In case of spill, neutralize with soda ash or lime and place in dry container. Causes damage to respiratory system (lungs): inhalation of vapours may cause pulmonary edema, circulatory system collapse, coughing and difficult breathing.

Emergency and first aid procedures: call a physician. If swallowed, do not induce vomiting; if conscious, give water, milk, or milk of magnesia. If inhaled, remove to fresh air. If not breathing, give artificial respiration. In case of contact, immediately flush eyes or skin with plenty of water for at least 15 minutes while removing contaminated clothing. to skin, eyes and mucous membranes.
Oxalic acid (dihydrate)

$(\text{COOH})_2 \cdot 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$

$\text{RMM} = 126.07$

CAS 6153–56–6

Aldrich #24,753–7 or #O–875–5; Alfa #33262; Bryant #O226; Fluka #75702 or #27725; Merck #818242 or #100495

*Also known as:* ethanedioic acid.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hazard</th>
<th>Rating</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Health</td>
<td>2 moderate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flammability</td>
<td>1 slight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reactivity</td>
<td>1 slight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contact</td>
<td>3 severe (corrosive)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Harmful if swallowed, inhaled or absorbed through skin. Avoid breathing dust. Very destructive of mucous membranes. Ingestion may cause severe burns to mouth, throat, and stomach and may cause headache, nausea, vomiting, gastrointestinal irritation, unconsciousness, convulsions. May have adverse effect on kidney function and may be fatal. May cause congenital malformation in the foetus: possible teratogen. Emergency and first aid procedures: call a physician. If swallowed, do not induce vomiting; if conscious, give water, milk, or milk of magnesia. If inhaled, remove to fresh air. Rinse mouth or gargle repeatedly with cold water. In case of contact, immediately flush eyes or skin with plenty of water for at least 15 minutes.

Potassium ferricyanide

$K_3\text{Fe(CN)}_6$

$\text{RMM} = 329.26$

CAS 13746–66–2

Aldrich #24,402–3; Alfa #33357

*Also known as:* potassium hexacyanoferrate(III) red prussiate of potash.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hazard</th>
<th>Rating</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Health</td>
<td>1 slight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flammability</td>
<td>0 none</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reactivity</td>
<td>1 slight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contact</td>
<td>1 slight</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This substance is classified as a low toxic hazard, but may act as a skin, eye and lung irritant. It is incompatible with concentrated acids, which may release deadly hydrogen cyanide gas. Used correctly there is no risk.
**Tween 20™** (polyoxyethylene sorbitan monolaurate)

C$_{58}$H$_{114}$O$_{26}$

RMM = 1227.54

CAS 9005–64–5

Aldrich #27,434–8; Alfa #43309; Bryant #T355; Fluka #93773 or #63158; Merck #822184 or #817072

_Also known as:_ polyoxyethylene (20) sorbitan monolaurate, Polysorbate 20™.

**Hazard** **Rating**

Health 1 slight

Flammability 1 slight

Reactivity 0 minimal

Contact 0 minimal

This is a viscous, odourless liquid, soapy and innocuous, which presents no serious risks, provided contact with the eyes is avoided.
7.8 Environmental issues and disposal

Conscientious practitioners of cyanotype often ask about the appropriate disposal of their waste treatment solutions, and this can become quite a crucial question in environmentally sensitive situations for those operating “in the wild” or with septic tanks, land drainage, etc. In general the processing solutions are very dilute; and apart from dichromates (see below), there is nothing in the cyanotype sensitizer or processing baths when dilute that can be described as hazardous – compared with all the other chemicals we use and encounter in everyday life. Treating the effluent as “chemical waste” is quite unnecessary from an environmental viewpoint, and an expensive and needlessly troublesome consumption of vital resources.

The components of the Herschel cyanotype formula are pretty benign: ferric ammonium citrate is not poisonous (it is taken medicinally, and used (E381) in a celebrated Scottish soft drink ‘Irn–Bru’); its components, ferric ion and citrate ion, are widely naturally-occurring. Ferricyanide ion would quickly reduce in the environment to more stable ferrocyanide, which is also non-toxic; it is a permitted food additive (E536) used as an anticaking agent in table salt. Oxalates are poisonous when concentrated, but are naturally present in rhubarb, spinach, and sorrell at the 1% level.

If the waste seems very acidic (test with pH paper) it can be neutralised with a cheap alkali like lime, or chalk. Nitrate itself is of very low toxicity: ammonium nitrate is spread on farmland in massive quantities as an agricultural fertilizer.

Prussian blue is very insoluble and non-toxic. Humans can eat – and excrete – grams of it per day with no ill effect. It is a valuable antidote to poisoning by thallium and caesium. It has been spread on land contaminated by Cs\textsuperscript{137}, and fed to sheep and reindeer, see §3.3.

Despite these common-sense observations, one occasionally encounters – especially on the unmoderated internet – alarmist claims such as those in the article "Food for Thought: the Hidden Dangers of Cyanotype",\textsuperscript{627} which are exaggerated, confused and inaccurate. This article is an egregious example of the irrational "anti-chemical" mindset, arriving at a ridiculous conclusion: "From a prudent perspective it would seem advisable to avoid Historic photographic processes altogether." This is justified with the misleading quotation: "Potassium ferricyanide, although only slightly toxic by itself, will release hydrogen cyanide gas if heated, if hot acid is added, or if exposed to strong
ultraviolet light (e.g., carbon arcs)." It is necessary to qualify this: the heating has to be very strong and the acid very concentrated to get much HCN. Neither of these things are done in cyanotype. The 'traditional' cyanotype process, using only ammonium ferric citrate and potassium ferricyanide (§7.1), will not emit any significant, perceptible or harmful amount of hydrogen cyanide during a normal exposure and processing. From all points of view, there is no safer photographic process, and I have no misgivings placing it in the hands of 5-year-olds.

However, cyanotypes can also be made by exposing a paper coated with potassium ferricyanide alone (see the "proto-cyanotype" of §4.1.1); the exposure to UV to get an image is much longer than the 'traditional' process – about 20–50x – i.e. hours instead of minutes. In this case a perceptible odour of hydrogen cyanide (and/or possibly cyanogen – also toxic) can be detected when the print frame is opened. This may be the origin of the alarmist views in the document. But the quantity of HCN so formed is not life-threatening and there is no particular reason to make cyanotypes this way.

The only chemical in this work that is recognised as hazardous is potassium or ammonium dichromate (§7.6), which is a listed human carcinogen. But it does not need to be used in traditional cyanotype at all. In the past it was occasionally employed as a processing bath – at least once with harmful consequences – and this practice is now discontinued. Dichromate is recommended in very small amount in my New Cyanotype as a preservative – but can be entirely omitted (§7.4.2). Regarding the disposal of dichromates, there are some methods reported in the literature for eliminating the toxicity of dichromates first by reducing the Cr(VI) to Cr(III) with reducing agents such as sodium sulfite, sodium thiosulfate, iron filings, or sugar, but all these have the disadvantage of requiring rather acidic conditions; a preferable reductant for hexavalent chromium(VI) is ascorbic acid (vitamin C), which is harmless and inexpensive and works at neutral or even slightly alkaline pH.
7.9 Suppliers of chemicals and equipment

Ready-made sensitizers, chemicals and equipment for the cyanotype processes, and in some cases complete kits, can be obtained from the following suppliers:

UK

Fotospeed
Unit 6B
Park Lane Industrial Estate
Corsham
SN13 9LG
UK
Tel: +44 (0)1249 714 555
Fax: +44 (0)1249 714 999
WWW: https://www.fotospeed.com/Cyanotype/products/1266/

Silverprint Ltd
Unit 26
Albany Park
Cabot Lane
Poole
BH17 7BX
UK
Tel: +44 (0)1202 051 180
WWW: https://www.silverprint.co.uk/

EUROPE

Wolfgang Moersch Photochemie
Am Heideberg 48
50354 Hürth
Germany
Tel.: +49–2233–943137
Fax.: +49–2233–943138
mailto: wolfgang@moersch-photochemie.de
WWW: https://www.moersch-photochemie.de/content/shop/edeldruck
USA

Artcraft Chemicals Inc
PO Box 583
Schenectady
NY 12301
USA
Tel: +1 800 682 1730
WWW: http://www.nfinity.com/~mdmuir/artcraftB.html

Bostick & Sullivan Inc
PO Box 16639
Santa Fe
NM 87506
USA
Tel: +1 505 474 0890
Fax: +1 505 474 2857
WWW: http://www.bostick-sullivan.com/

Photographers Formulary Inc
PO Box 950
Condon
MT 59826
USA
Tel: +1 800 922 5255
Fax: +1 406 754 2896
WWW: http://stores.photoformulary.com/the-new-cyanotype-dry-kit/
AUSTRALIA

Gold Street Studios
700 James Lane
Trentham East
Victoria 3458

Australia
Tel: Ellie Young 613 5424 1835
WWW: https://www.goldstreetstudios.com.au
mailto: ellie@goldstreetstudios.com.au

Fine-art papers may be obtained in the UK from:

John Purcell Paper
15 Rumsey Road
London
SW9 0TR
UK
Tel: +44 (0)171 737 5199
Fax: +44 (0)171 737 6765
8 Methods for Toning Cyanotypes

“To gild refined gold, to paint the lily,  
To throw a perfume on the violet,  
To smooth the ice, or add another hue  
Unto the rainbow, or with taper light  
To seek the beauteous eye of heaven to garnish,  
Is wasteful and ridiculous excess.”  

William Shakespeare  
King John, Act 4, Scene 2

Many procedures can easily be devised to change the composition of a Prussian blue image in order to modify its colour, but most of these prove to be ‘more curious than valuable’ and have little reproducibility and even less permanence. Handbooks on cyanotype often quote recipes for a variety of toning methods, but their descriptions are usually tempered by the author’s reservations as to the worth of such a procedure, and sometimes even by a plea not to ‘torture’ the humble cyanotype in this way! The process historian, W. Russell Young III says:

“My best advice for toning cyanotypes is this: If you want a color other than the Prussian blue natural to the cyanotype process, use some other printing method!” 634

However, it is becoming increasingly evident that many present-day practitioners, who are attracted by the ease and low cost of cyanotype, are still dissatisfied with its natural colour, and feel driven to seek toning procedures that convert their images to brown or black, rather than adopting the naturally black processes such as platinotype, palladiotype, or even kallitype.635

There is little evidence for how long such toned cyanotypes can be expected to last: the identification of historical toned cyanotypes in photograph collections presents considerable curatorial difficulty, if visual inspection is the only non-destructive method that is permissable. In a survey of several major collections conducted by photograph conservator Megan Gent in 1992, no curator that she interviewed could report having definitely identified a toned cyanotype. However, Gent has discovered some prints in informal Royal Family snapshot albums in the Royal Archives at Windsor dating from 1906 that are probably toned cyanotypes: these are single layer prints of a purplish–brown colour.
indicative of toning with tannic acid, and they share the same album pages with conventional blue cyanotypes.\textsuperscript{636}

The toning processes which are acknowledged to be the most reliable, and least impermanent, appear to fall into five categories, most of which have a commonality in commencing with the hydrolysis of the Prussian blue to iron oxide/hydroxide before further treatment.

\textbf{8.1 Hydrolysis of Prussian blue}

The print is hydrolysed with dilute (1\% to 5\%) alkali, which may be aqueous ammonia, sodium carbonate (washing soda), sodium or potassium hydroxide (caustic soda or potash), calcium hydroxide (lime water) or sodium tetraborate (borax). The Prussian blue lattice is broken up by hydroxide ion, and the ferric iron is converted into insoluble yellow–brown ferric hydroxide, while the soluble and stable ferrocyanide ion is eventually washed away in the solution. Prompt treatment with acid can partially restore this breakdown, but it soon becomes irreversible.

Trisodium phosphate (sometimes called TSP) is also very alkaline and will bring about hydrolysis of Prussian blue, but the product is believed to be the golden yellow pigment, ferric phosphate, which is air-stable, and insoluble in water but can be dissolved by acids. It is fairly permanent in its own right, and it is said to be responsible for the famously enduring and non-rusting “Iron Pillar of Delhi”, the surface of which is coated with an invisible but impervious layer of the phosphate. This method of toning is quite popular for making yellow images on fabrics.\textsuperscript{637}

Exposure just to ammonia vapour, rather than solution, does not fully hydrolyse the Prussian blue but imparts to it an impermanent, though striking, violet colour; this toning is reversible within a few hours simply by restoring the print to air, when the occluded ammonia gas is presumably lost, and the pigment reverts to its original blue colour.\textsuperscript{638}

\textbf{8.2 Ferro–gallate and tannate}

The image is converted to ferric hydroxide as above, and this is reacted with gallic or tannic acid to form ferric gallate or ferric tannate ‘ink’.\textsuperscript{639}

The two substances are closely related: Gallic acid is a simple chemical: 3,4,5–trihydroxybenzoic acid, a type of polyphenolic acid.\textsuperscript{640} Tannic acid (properly gallotannic acid, because there are other types of ‘tannic acids’ in the family of tannins) is a much larger molecule, comprising ten gallate groups, in pairs, bound to a central glucose (sugar) molecule.\textsuperscript{641} Tannins constitute a wide family of plant-produced, astringent–tasting
polyphenolic substances, found in gallnuts, sumac, witch hazel, tea leaves, oak bark and leaves, seeds, fruit skins especially grapes, and other plants.

As was described in §4.4.2, John Mercer can be credited as the originator of this toning process. The print is hydrolysed as in §8.1 and then treated in a bath of gallic or tannic acid (1% to 5%), with some precautions to minimise staining:

1 If the print is dry, presoak it in water for 1 minute.

2 Immerse the print in 1% v/v ammonia (ammonium hydroxide) for ca. 5 minutes until the Prussian blue image is bleached to pale yellow (ferric hydroxide). Caustic soda or caustic potash (sodium or potassium hydroxide) 1% w/v, or domestic washing soda (sodium carbonate) ca. 5% w/v, can be used instead of ammonia. Curtailing the time in this bath can yield interesting split-tone effects.

3 Rinse in water for half a minute.

4 Immerse in 1% v/v acetic acid for one min. to neutralise residual alkali.

5 Rinse in water for half a minute.

6 Tone in 1% tannic acid solution for 5 to 10 minutes.

7 Wash in water for 20 minutes.

This treatment generally intensifies the image, and imparts a rich purplish-brown colour. Staining of the paper base is a problem, however, and the colour is very sensitive to alkali. The best purplish-brown colours are said to result when the print is immersed first in gallic or tannic acid for a few minutes, rinsed, then treated with alkali, and finally, as an option, it may be returned briefly to the gallic acid bath.

8.3 Assorted beverages

In recent years it has become fashionable to tone cyanotypes with “natural products” containing tannins and similar phenolic substances that react chromogenically with iron salts. This is closely related chemically to the previous well-defined toning agents, gallic and tannic acid. Teas, black and green, black coffee of several varieties, and red wine have all been used both with, and without preliminary bleaching and hydrolysis, to yield rather muddy brown and black images. A common by-product of this kind of toning with coloured extracts is a stained paper-base which some apparently find attractive. The source of the
Tannin does have an effect on the colour but more from staining than from the specific reaction with iron(III). Grape tannins tend toward purple/brown, green tea — unsurprisingly — green/brown. Tannin from oak materials (bark, galls, leaves) is "gallic" and is usually sold as a white powder, so in and of itself gives no stain but it does react chemically with iron(III) to change the colour of the print. The working texts should be consulted for further details and examples. It has not yet been established what the life-expectancy of such images may be, but the author, Mrhar, admits that some of the procedures are "unreliable and capricious", and other workers, such as Lukasz Brzezinski, have noted significant colour shifts in their toned prints within a year or two.

### 8.4 Iron–mordanted dyes

The Prussian blue is again converted to ferric hydroxide as in §8.1, which then acts as a mordant for organic dyestuffs. This procedure was also invented by Mercer in his quest for generating ‘chromatic photographs’, and is particularly well-suited to toning images on textiles. The Prussian blue image is usually hydrolysed with lime (calcium hydroxide) or other dilute alkali as above, then washed and treated in a suitable dye bath, when the resulting ferric hydroxide serves as a mordant for vegetable dyes, some of them tannic, such as gall–liquor, logwood, quercitron bark, murexide, cochineal, or madder. When using madder dye, Mercer found that if the Prussian blue was left intact and unhydrolysed, a very rich purple colour was produced.

Out of a whole range of chemically inventive processes, perhaps Mercer’s most remarkably circumambulant achievement was to make a cyanotype as described above, then to convert the image into silver ferrocyanide by treatment with silver nitrate, after which it was reduced to silver metal by sodium stannite, and finally substantially converted by a chloroaurate bath into gold in the form of Purple of Cassius. Examples of portraits made by this process on cloth, may be seen in fine condition, in the Mercer Archive at Lancashire County Record Office, see §4.4.2. The Museum of Science and Industry in Manchester also has a photographic portrait of Mercer, printed from a negative taken ca. 1856 by John Benjamin Dancer, the famous instrument maker and photomicrographer; it is printed on cotton, probably by Mercer himself, and has a deep violet colour, which suggests it may be a madder–toned cyanotype.

Forty years later, in 1898, Mercer’s toning process was re–invented – apparently unwittingly – by Stewart Carter, and reported to the New York
Section of the Society of Chemical Industry. Cyanotypes, made in the usual way were treated first with dilute caustic soda, then, after washing, with sodium phosphate (a non-toxic alternative to Mercer’s arsenate), at which point it was ready to receive the hot 70–80 °C aqueous 3–5% dye bath, which could be selected from resorcin green, gallocyanine, alizarin, or logwood.

8.5 Black toners

The conversion of a cyanotype into a black silver image would seem to be a singularly pointless exercise when the same end can be achieved directly; however, it has been done.

“To get the desired black color, bathe the print in distilled water and then immerse it in a 2% solution of silver nitrate. After the bleaching of the image, re-wash the print in distilled water and dry it. Following drying, expose the print to the vapors of ammonia for a short time and develop it in a solution of oxalate of iron (ferrous sulfate developer as used for wet plate collodion).”

The soaring expense of silver photography during the 20th century motivated the quest for other, cheaper ways to obtain a black non-silver image by toning the blueprint. An early process, due to Planchon, converted the image into copper(II) sulphide, but there are better methods, as will be described.

The reaction products of bleaching the Prussian blue in a sulphite bath, can be used to catalyse the oxidative reaction of hydrogen peroxide with certain polyphenols, such as catechol, resorcinol and quinol, to form dark-coloured, near-black dyestuffs. This method was developed in the 1970s by Reginald Heron, with the well-intentioned aim of transforming the strident blue image of the inexpensive cyanotype into a more photographically-acceptable black, thus providing a very economic non-silver medium of practice, especially for students who did not have access to a photographic darkroom. Heron’s developing bath is a complex mixture, with a composition finely-balanced according to the characteristics of the original blueprint material that was commercially available at the time. The process is said to produce a “fair imitation of a platinum print”. Thanks to its chromogenic nature, the colour can be modified, but the resulting dyes, like all those of chromogenic photography, are not totally stable. According to Heron:

“Samples have survived the 25 years to the present day, but the original (reasonably attractive) black has faded to a passable (and inevitable) brown.”
8.6 Heavy metal incorporation

Treatment of a Prussian blue image with a solution of a heavy metal salt may cause the incorporation of the metal cation into the Prussian blue lattice, and thus modify its colour. Not all metal cations cause a perceptible effect: it is conjectured that the metal may need to have two accessible oxidation states to intervene in the electronic charge transfer transition giving rise to the colour. Thus lead (+2,+4), thallium (+1,+3), nickel (+2,+3) and copper (+1,+2) all exert a perceptible effect on the cyanotype colour, as described next, whereas alkali metals (+1) and alkaline earth (+2) cations, of a similar size and charge, do not.

8.6.1 Lead

In a procedure attributed ca. 1900 to Oscar Bolle, a cyanotype is treated in a warm (30–40 ºC) bath of lead(II) acetate solution (S.G. 1.24), to shift the colour towards a more violet blue, sometimes rather inaccurately described as “lilac” or “lavender”. The effectiveness of this toning bath has recently been found to be critically dependent on the pH of the lead acetate solution. This is often distinctly acidic (pH ~5) when freshly made up from solid to a working strength of ~5% w/v, but for successful toning, it is particularly important that the lead acetate solution should not be acidic; adjustment of its pH to ca. 7.5 to 8 by dropwise addition of strong ammonia solution is recommended, using a pH paper to check the alkalinity. Approximately 20 cc of ammonia (S.G. ~0.9) may be needed per litre of 5% lead(II) acetate toning solution. A slight precipitate (of lead hydroxide) doesn't matter, as it can always be filtered off. With this marginally alkalized solution, the toning can be carried out at room temperature and will be complete within 1–2 minutes.

The presence of lead in this toned image substance has been detected by X–Ray Spectrometry (EM–EDX), and the lead signal is seen to correlate with the iron signal from the Prussian blue, suggesting that the toning effect may be due to the incorporation of lead(II) ions into the voids of the microporous Prussian blue structure (see §3.3 and App II.2).

The result may also depend on the cyanotype formula; it works well with the new cyanotype recipes (§7.4). The colour change is permanent, and it stabilises the Prussian blue somewhat against light fading, by an exposure factor of about 4x compared with untreated images, but the vulnerability of the pigment to alkali is found to be undiminished. The lead toning can apparently be reversed by treatment in a bath of dilute nitric acid, which removes the lead.
It should be born in mind that lead(II) acetate is a heavy metal salt which is seriously toxic by ingestion and it should be handled carefully and stored safely; it is said to taste sweet (its commonplace name is *sugar of lead*), but experimental confirmation of this claim is definitely not recommended for this cumulative poison. It is also said – disputedly – to have been one of the causes of the downfall of the Roman Empire!  

*Fig. 8.1 Varieties of toned cyanotype*
8.6.2 Thallium
In the same way that thallium(I) is incorporated when Prussian blue is used as an antidote to this insidious heavy-metal poison (see §3.3), it can also be used as a toner of cyanotype. A bath in thallium(I) sulphate solution of ca. 5% w/v does itself cause a slight but agreeable colour shift in a cyanotype to a ‘cornflower blue’, but this cannot be recommended as a toning practice for the general public owing to the severe toxic hazard presented by this substance (see §3.3).

8.6.3 Nickel
This method follows from the experiments reported by Holtzmann, described in §9.2. Immerse the cyanotype in a 5–10% solution of a nickel(II) salt (e.g. the sulphate, chloride or nitrate) for an hour or so. The colour shift with nickel(II) salts is rather slight – towards a more greenish-blue. This treatment has the beneficial effect of making the cyanotype much more resistant to alkaline hydrolysis, by at least an order of magnitude (10x) in exposure, but the application of the nickel solution may cause a slight loss of highlight density. Nickel(II) salts are listed carcinogens. Consult the MSDS.

Fig. 8.2 Examples of cyanotypes toned by heavy metals. Clockwise from the top left: untoned, lead(II), nickel(II) and thallium(I)
8.6.4 Copper
This method of converting the image colour to a purplish-brown derives from a U.S. patent of 1889. The stock reagent is a deep blue solution of tetraamminocopper(II) nitrate, made by dissolving 1 part of copper nitrate in 4 parts of water and treating the solution with one part by volume of 30% (S.G. 0.90) aqueous ammonia solution, sufficient just to re-dissolve the blue precipitate of copper hydroxide. The toning bath is made by diluting this blue stock solution sixteen times with water and adding up to one further part of 30% ammonia, depending on the colour desired, which is described as a “Bartolozzi red”, and is believed to contain some copper(II) ferrocyanide.

8.7 Insoluble metal ferricyanides
This rather curious – and apparently little-explored – toning procedure was described by Humphrey Desmond Murray of London in 1933 UK and 1935 US patents; it imparts a two-tone appearance to the image by colorizing the high values. The idea is that, immediately after exposure of a conventional cyanotype sensitizer and the printing-out of the primary Prussian blue image, the first wet processing bath should contain a salt of a metal that forms an insoluble ferricyanide – generally lightly-coloured – with the unreacted ferricyanide ion in the sensitizer. Thus the high values of the print receive a different colour from the blue shadows, depending on the chosen metal cation, and further action of light is prevented, i.e. the print is also ‘fixed’. Murray described the use of salts of the following metals at 10–20% concentration, with the results indicated for the highlight colour: Manganese(II) (salmon pink), cobalt(II) (brick red), nickel(II) (bright yellow), zinc(II) (pale yellow), and cadmium(II) (pale yellow). He also advised that the first bath should contain an oxidising agent such as a persulphate or a chlorate, coupled with the use of a mildly acidic buffer, to ensure full initial development of the Prussian blue.

8.8 Blue toning of silver prints
Finally, this is an appropriate point to mention those toning procedures for silver-gelatin materials which transform the silver image, wholly or partially, into Prussian blue, thereby generating a print with the cyanotype colour, but differing in that the image is not in the paper fibres, but is embedded in a gelatin binder layer which confers a more lustrous and reflective appearance to the surface. The chemical
transformation of the silver image into ferric ferrocyanide is accomplished by first oxidising the silver to silver ferrocyanide using a bath of alkaline potassium ferricyanide, then treating it in an acidic bath of ferrous sulphate, followed by fixation in thiosulphate.\textsuperscript{664} It is also possible to use a single direct toning bath of acidified ferricyanide and ferricitrate combined, which results in some degree of intensification, but the image is said to be less permanent.\textsuperscript{665} The same effect can be achieved simply by adding gelatin to a standard cyanotype sensitizer,\textsuperscript{666} or – wastefully – by coating with cyanotype sensitizer a silver–gelatin photographic paper which has had all its silver halides dissolved and removed.
9 Vulnerability & Conservation of Cyanotypes

“But of course these tints must be used with judgement, and no one but a vandal would print a landscape in red, or in cyanotype.”

Peter Henry Emerson (1856–1936)

_Naturalistic Photography for Students of the Art_ (1889)

The chemical properties of Prussian blue described in Chapter 3, and at more depth in Appendices II and III, identify three distinct directions in which cyanotypes are vulnerable to attack. The weaknesses that need to be addressed by conservation science are: photochemical reduction, alkaline hydrolysis, and aqueous peptization. These pathways of destruction may more conveniently be referred to as ‘fading’, ‘bleaching’, and ‘dispersing’, respectively. Each of these damaging reactions leads to a loss of Prussian blue from the image, but each is chemically distinct in its causes, products, and remedies. In the first, the cause is light, the product is Prussian white, and the reaction is completely reversible. In the second, the cause is alkali, the product is yellow hydrated ferric oxide (colloidal, becoming insoluble) and ferrocyanide ions (which are soluble), and it is only partially reversible. In the third, the Prussian blue is not changed chemically but dispersed as nanoparticles which are washed away by water – a loss which is quite irreversible. These pathways of vulnerability are summarised in Table 9.1 and will now be considered individually in more detail.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Fading</th>
<th>Bleaching</th>
<th>Dispersing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cause</td>
<td>Visible and UV light and a reductant</td>
<td>Any substance of alkaline pH (pH &gt;7)</td>
<td>Water and high ionic strength solutions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Product</td>
<td>Prussian white (ferrous ferrocyanide)</td>
<td>Hydrated ferric oxide and ferrocyanide</td>
<td>Colloidal sol of Prussian blue in water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reversibility</td>
<td>Fully reversible by air in the dark over a few days</td>
<td>As ferric oxide ages it becomes irreversible</td>
<td>Pigment is washed out from image irreversibly</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 9.1 Pathways of destruction for cyanotypes
9.1 Fading of cyanotypes by light

Notwithstanding the extravagant claims made for its stability by the discoverer of Prussian blue, its discolouration to a greenish hue under the action of sunlight was noted in a handbook of painting as early as 1757, quite soon after its adoption as a paint pigment. The historical evidence in the mid-eighteenth century for the awareness of this deterioration has been compiled into an interesting review by Jo Kirby of the Scientific Department of the National Gallery.\textsuperscript{667} It is likely that impurities in the early preparations of Prussian blue may have been responsible for the variability observed in its behaviour. Even the reversal, in the dark, of the decolorization was noted in 1834. The light-fading of pigments is naturally a central issue for conservation scientists concerned with paintings, and the fading of Prussian blue in oil paintings, especially when in admixture with large quantities of an extender such as lead white,\textsuperscript{668} has received close attention at the National Gallery.\textsuperscript{669} A conspicuous recent example is the demonstration of fading of Prussian blue in an 1838 oil painting by Danish painter Christen Købke - a decolorization that quite alters the character of his romantic landscape.\textsuperscript{670}

From the mercantile viewpoint, when used as a textile dyestuff the pigment also revealed its susceptibility to light at an early stage. In 1801, Desmortiers described his researches into the fading of fabrics dyed with Prussian blue in his \textit{Recherches sur la décoloration spontanée du bleu de Prusse},\textsuperscript{671} in which he emphasised the importance of allowing access to the air in order to reverse the fading and restore the blue colour. Subsequently, around 1840, Michel Chevreul found that Prussian blue in an air-tight chamber became paler and liberated cyanogen in the direct rays of the sun, but in the dark it absorbed oxygen and recovered its colour.\textsuperscript{672} These phenomena must have been widely known at the time because they were also reported in the standard English chemistry texts,\textsuperscript{673} one of which observed that 'the recovery of the colour is owing to the formation of the so-called basic Prussian blue'.\textsuperscript{674} The chemistry of this reaction is considered in Appendix III.

Cyanotypes and commercial blueprints also acquired a reputation early on for fading partially in the light; and, although some contrary opinions were expressed, it is now generally accepted that they are susceptible,\textsuperscript{675} but the degree of fading has not been fully quantified.\textsuperscript{676} A number of photograph conservators have cited evidence for the fading of
cyanotypes. In 1989, Ian and Angela Moor described densitometric measurements on cyanotypes exposed to daylight, employing “facsimile material produced using Herschel’s original formulation”. They found a “loss of density ranging from 4% after 15 minutes exposure to 10% after 45 minutes exposure”, but they do not report data on the absolute density changes. They attributed the fading to “the presence of residual soluble ferric salts, not removed during the washing procedure.” They found that the regain of the density on dark storage was not fully reversible, only 7% of the original 10% loss being recovered.

An extensive programme of densitometric monitoring of a variety of original historic photographs has been carried out by John McElhone, photograph conservator at the National Gallery of Canada, Ottawa. Specimens were displayed under stringent museum conditions, and periodically densitometered in order to determine how ‘safe’ these conditions are for the exhibition of the various types of image; this work and its curatorial implications have been described elsewhere. McElhone’s recent unpublished studies have included original cyanotypes by Atkins (1854) and Curtis (1868). Highlight, mid-tone and shadow densities were measured with a reflectance densitometer for the three primary colours at intervals during time periods extending from two to four years of display in glazed mounts. Illumination was by 50–60 lux incandescent tungsten, filtered to remove the UV. Within the instrumental precision and reproducibility of the measurements, no significant effects (i.e. with permanent density changes $D \geq \pm 0.02$) were observed during total accumulated exposures that amounted to about 100 kilolux hours. This important finding should offer some reassurance to curators and conservators that historic cyanotypes can be safely displayed under proper conditions. However, these harmless tests, having caused no change in the objects, do not establish the threshold at which damage does begin to appear, and that is the purpose of the present work with facsimile material.

9.1.1 Experimental: preparation of specimens

In the present work, five different cyanotype formulations were tested, to represent the main categories of sensitizer used for the negative-working process (see Chapter 4). For brevity and ease of reference these formulae will be allocated the names of Smee, for Herschel’s ‘proto-cyanotype’ using potassium ferricyanide alone (§4.1.1); Herschel, for his own modified recipe (§4.1.2); Lietze, for the usual 19th century recipe using
brown ammonium ferric citrate (§2.12); Valenta, for the usual 19th
century recipe using green ammonium ferric citrate; and Ware, for the
new cyanotype using ammonium ferric oxalate (see Table 9.2).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Process Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Ammonium ferric citrate</th>
<th>Potassium ferricyanide</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Smee</td>
<td>Herschel’s ‘proto-cyanotype’</td>
<td>none</td>
<td>16%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Herschel</td>
<td>Herschel’s ‘standard’ recipe</td>
<td>6% (brown)</td>
<td>12%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lietze</td>
<td>Typical C19th recipe</td>
<td>14% (brown)</td>
<td>12%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valenta</td>
<td>Typical C20th recipe</td>
<td>14% (green)</td>
<td>12%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ware</td>
<td>New cyanotype as described in Chapter 7</td>
<td>16% ammonium ferrioxalate</td>
<td>10%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 9.2 Varieties of cyanotype – final concentrations in sensitizer

The paper generally used for coating in the comparative tests was
Atlantis Silversafe Photostore, of weight 120 grams/square meter. This is
a pure cotton conservation paper, of high purity, sized with Aquapel™
which is a neutral-curing alkyl ketene dimer. It contains no added buffer,
filler, or other agent that might interfere with the photochemistry. Such
a pure paper differs rather from the papers of the 19th century, so
comparative tests were also performed on gelatin-sized papers, both
contemporary (Fabriano 5 HP) and of the type used 150 years ago
(Whatman’s Turkey Mill 1840 and J. Whatman 1849, made by
Hollingworth and Balston, respectively). Coating was carried out by a
glass rod, and the volumes of sensitizer used were closely controlled to
give comparable coatings. The sensitized paper specimens were all dried
at room temperature in the dark.

The samples to be tested were made by conventional cyanotype
printing and direct sunlight, using a glazed printing-out frame with a
hinged-back, mimicking as accurately as possible the manner of
exposure that would have been employed in the 19th century. Only the
Ware formulation was printed by means of an artificial ultraviolet light
source, which is now universally used, employing four Phillips
TLADK30/05 coated fluorescent tubes (having a maximum emission at
360 nm) at a distance of 8 cm. The test prints were made through a calibrated Kodak No.3 step tablet, which produced a maximum of 21 steps of density in half stop intervals of exposure, which were large enough to be accurately densitometered. Exposures were usually sufficient to make the first two steps indistinguishable, so ensuring that the maximum density of which the sensitizer was capable had been reached. A direct comparison was made for the Herschel formula to see if the sunprinting employed in the nineteenth century produced any qualitative differences from the artificial UV source. The heating effect of the sun exposures was notable, and it was found that prolonged exposures to the sun resulted in a purple veiling of the highlights which, however, usually disappeared in the wet processing. Processing was appropriate to the sensitizer in use, usually by means only of gently running tapwater, and the specimens were dried in the dark.

Smaller control specimens were printed through Stouffer Graphic Arts T2115 step tablets at the same time as the main K3 test piece, and were retained in a light-proof box, that had access to the atmosphere of the same environment through a set of baffles. These could be checked for any long term changes not due to illumination and were also useful for sacrificial experiments.

9.1.2 Experimental: fading apparatus and measurements
The light source used to induce fading was a commercial luminaire fitting, equipped with four 20 watt standard artificial daylight fluorescent tubes, of length 60 cm, General Electric type F20W/AD. This formed the lid of an enclosed box fitted with two fans to ensure a gentle constant stream of air to cool the lamps and maintain the samples in a constant environment. The temperature during exposure was maintained at 19 ± 1°C and the relative humidity at 50 ± 5 %. The fluorescent tubes were run initially for a period of time before testing to ensure constant emissivity. The illuminance at the plane of the samples was measured with a Weston Master V exposure meter fitted with an ‘Invercone’ attachment in its incident light mode, and checked with a spotmeter V and standard grey card. Both readings corresponded to an illuminance of approximately 4 kilolux.

The optical densities of the specimens were measured to a precision of 0.002 by means of an X-Rite model 310 densitometer in diffuse reflectance mode, which was checked by reference to a standard density plaque, and recalibrated when necessary to absolute density readings.
with an accuracy of ± 0.01 over the range 0.06 to 1.74, before and after each set of experiments. All densities recorded refer to the ‘red’ channel of the reflectance colour head, which corresponds to the waveband where the absorption by Prussian blue has its maximum value.

9.1.3 Results: characteristic curves and the ‘fade’

The characteristic (or D/logH) curves of the typical negative-working cyanotype sensitizers are shown in Figures 9.1a–9.1f, in which the diffuse reflectance density is plotted vertically against the logarithm of the relative exposure horizontally. In each case the characteristic curve was remeasured after an exposure to artificial daylight of ca 2 kilolux hours, and this is also plotted on the graph. It can be seen that all types of sensitizer have suffered a loss of density in consequence of the light exposure, amounting to about 0.1 to 0.2 density units.

If \( D_i \) represents the initial optical reflectance density of any step of the pigment layer in a step–tablet test, and \( D_f \) is the measured density of the same step immediately following a fading exposure, the extent of fading is denoted by the change \( \Delta D = D_i - D_f \). The measured values of \( \Delta D \) have probable confidence limits of ±0.01 units of density, and they are generally less than 1, so it will be convenient, both typographically and with regard to numerical precision, to discuss the fading henceforth in terms of a whole-number parameter, which I shall call the ‘fade’, which is defined as 100\( \Delta D \). We will find it convenient to have a single parameter to express the measured susceptibility of a particular Prussian blue layer to fading. The maximum value of the fade for a given exposure is the parameter we seek, since it represents the greatest loss of image density within the entire tonal scale, and therefore the greatest loss of picture information.

When \( D_i = 1 \), the value of the fade is also the value of the % relative fade, 100\( \Delta D/D_i \), but it is not appropriate to make general use of the relative fade as the parameter to discuss the results for two reasons: psychometric experiments show that the JND is approximately constant over a wide range of densities; and the consequence of division by the very small density values in the highlights is to put a numerical bias on the results because it gives undue prominence to small changes.
9.1.4 Results: variation of fade with initial density

Fig. 9.1 Characteristic curves for cyanotype sensitizers
To see how the fade varies across the tonal scale, typical results for the step-tablet tests printed by a variety of cyanotype sensitizers are plotted in Figs 9.2a–9.2f where the vertical axis is the fade, plotted against the initial reflectance density, $D_i$, of the steps which runs horizontally. The fade is seen to reach a broad maximum value (which varies between sensitizers) in the mid-tones of the density scale between $D_i$ values of ca 0.5 to 1.0, and to fall off towards both ends of the scale. This trend is broadly true for all the cyanotype sensitizers examined. The fact that the maximum fade occurs over quite a wide plateau of mid-tones is a significant, and perhaps surprising, finding. It shows that the fade is not proportional to the concentration of Prussian blue – which might have been expected if the fading were an intrinsic property of the substance. Values of the maximum fade, and the densities at which they occur for some of the specimens investigated are summarised in Table 9.3.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sensitizer type</th>
<th>Maximum fade 100ΔD</th>
<th>Over initial density range</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Smee</em></td>
<td>13</td>
<td>0.90–0.95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Herschel</em> on aquapel–sized paper</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>0.55–1.05</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Herschel</em> on gelatin–sized paper</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>0.80–1.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Lietze</em></td>
<td>10</td>
<td>0.65–0.85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Valenta</em></td>
<td>10</td>
<td>0.35–0.85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Ware</em></td>
<td>22</td>
<td>0.85–1.15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 9.3 The maximum fade for cyanotype sensitizers

The near–constancy of the maximum fade for a given specimen over quite a wide density range makes further investigation of the other variables easier, because only the density of one or two typical mid-tones need be followed and not the whole scale of 21 steps. This finding also emphasises the importance of always carrying out cyanotype fading studies on mid-tones, where the loss of picture information will be greatest, and not just on a region of maximum density, where there may be a large ‘reserve’ of Prussian blue in which little change will be observed.
Fig. 9.2 Variation of fade with initial density
The fact that the *maximum fade* of a cyanotype tends to occur in the middle tones may also account for some of the disparities in the anecdotal evidence that has been reported concerning the fading of cyanotypes and blueprints. If the original image has a high contrast, with little or no intermediate tone, then the visible fading effect will be confined to the extremes of the tonal scale where it is minimal. This is particularly the case with 'line' images, such as contact prints from engravings, or photograms of opaque objects, where the image has only two densities in the limiting case: the density of the paper base plus fog, and the maximum density of which the sensitizer is capable. As can be seen from Table 9.3 the extent of fading varies little with sensitizer composition, except the sensitizer prepared from ammonium ferric oxalate, *Ware* type, which shows a deeper initial fade. As will become apparent, this is not in fact a disadvantage.

**9.1.5 Results: variation of fade with exposure time**

To ascertain how the fade varies with fading exposure time, test strips were exposed in the artificial daylight source and monitored at regular time intervals; only 4 of the 21 steps were selected for density measurement so that the time taken to perform this did not significantly detract from the exposure times. When the densities did not undergo any further decrease with exposure, the samples were removed to dark storage at ambient temperature and humidity (in the range 18 ± 2 °C and 50 ± 10 %RH), with full access to the atmosphere, and their densities remeasured periodically.

The results are shown in Figure 9.3a–9.3f for one step only (that giving rise to the maximum fade) of the five sensitizers, in which the maximum fade is plotted vertically against time along the horizontal axis. It may be seen that the fade quickly reaches a maximum value (i.e. a minimum in the measured density) after only about a half to one hour’s exposure to 4 kilolux. Following this it tends to decrease slightly but steadily with continuing exposure up to 24 hours, when the exposure was terminated. In one case the decrease in the fade (i.e. the regain of density *during* the fading exposure) was quite marked, as illustrated in Figure 9.3f. The knowledge that the maximum fade was reached within one hour’s exposure at this illuminance greatly simplified subsequent monitoring of repeated fading tests. The regain of density in the dark was also monitored in these samples and found to be effectively complete (final densities ≥99% of the initial densities) within five days.
Fig. 9.3 Variation of fade with exposure time (at 4 kilolux)
9.1.6 Results: reversibility of repeated fade and regain

In view of the kind of exposure that cyanotypes receive when on exhibition, it was thought important to determine the reversibility of the fading, when subjected to repeated exposures. When the step densities had regained an almost steady value in the dark, the process of measurement and exposure was therefore repeated.

Figures 9.4a–9.4f show schematically the fluctuating density of one step (taken from those within the region of maximum fade), over several cycles of fade and regain. The fading exposure was 4 kilolux for half an hour, the regain period varied from one to several days in the dark. The most striking feature is the diminishing oscillation of the depth of fade, while the regain of density is usually greater than 95% within one day, and 99% within five days or more, i.e. it is complete within the limits of experimental error.

It is apparent from these results that the tendency of a cyanotype to fade may be dependent on its previous history. They are most susceptible when freshly-made, and, for some processes, each exposure to daylight levels of illumination, followed by regain, diminishes this susceptibility. The permanent loss of density incurred overall as a result of repeating the process is generally very small, representing a fade at most in the order of 3 or 4 (i.e. ≥96% regain).

It is clear from the experimental results that the fading of cyanotypes does not obey the photochemical Law of Reciprocity, but varies with the absolute exposure illuminance. At low light levels (ca 50 lux), we have the evidence of McElhone’s monitoring program on cyanotypes to show that even illumination for 2000 hours, giving an exposure totalling 100 kilolux hours, causes no detectable fading. The probable reason for this behaviour is that the rate of density regain, due to air re-oxidation of the Prussian white, is superimposed on the effect of fading, and when the illuminance is so low that the rate of fading is less than or equal to the rate of regain, no fading at all will be observed, provided sufficient air can diffuse in to the vicinity of the print. This is the situation of cyanotypes exposed to stringent gallery illumination of 50 lux. When the illuminance is much higher, such as daylight at ca 4000 lux in the present tests, an identical exposure of 100 klux hours is reached in 25 hours. This incurs a measurable maximum fade of between 10 and 20, depending on the sensitizer.
Fig. 9.4 Reversibility of fade and regain in cyanotypes
Conservators Jennifer Koerner and Karen Potje at the CCA have tested a variety of 22 blueprints to a 36 klux light source, and found that all samples reacted similarly, showing a perceptible fading within 5 minutes exposure – a light dose of 3 kilolux hours.\(^{\text{684}}\)

To demonstrate the important influence of the air on the outcome of fading, J. Dunbar performed an experiment in which cyanotype specimens were enclosed in an anoxic environment (a Marvelseal™ packet containing Ageless™ oxygen scavenger) and given a 24 hour fading exposure, which caused them to turn totally white. When opened and exposed to the air, they regained their full blue colour.

To determine the effect of very high illuminance on the fade, samples (of the Herschel and Smee sensitizer types) were given the same fading exposure as above, but to direct sunlight, \(i.e. \text{ca }\) 100 kilolux for one or two hours, which was found rapidly to cause a deep fade, as much as 40 or so, before a steady state was reached. Thus the same exposure of 100 kilolux hours, but delivered at three widely differing levels of illuminance, has three quite different outcomes in the degree of fading.

### 9.1.7 Results: effect of conditions on fading

To see if the fading of Prussian blue in cyanotypes was wavelength-sensitive, gel filters were placed around fresh specimens of Ware new cyanotype (which are the most sensitive) in the light exposure box, while still allowing access to the atmosphere; identical test strips were exposed side-by-side under red and blue filters, and compared with a strip exposed without filter.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Control</th>
<th>Red filter</th>
<th>Blue filter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Transmittance of red light %</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transmittance of blue light %</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum fade = 100ΔD</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial density = Δ(D)</td>
<td>0.85</td>
<td>0.87</td>
<td>0.83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time to maximum fade in mins</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 9.4 Effect of wavelength of light in fading cyanotypes

The results are summarised in Table 13, where it may be seen that there is no significant difference between the fading experienced by the test strips exposed to red and blue light, indicating little or no wavelength dependence of the effect over the visible spectrum. Since Prussian blue has absorption bands in both the red and blue regions of
the spectrum, presumably either is effective in promoting fading. The rates of fading are somewhat slower than the control which was exposed to unfiltered light, as might be expected from the attenuation of the illumination by the filters. It follows that there is no useful form of filtered ‘safelighting’ that can completely protect cyanotypes against fading.

To determine the effect of relative humidity on fading and regain, identical specimens of Ware new cyanotype were desiccated (both by pre-heating to 110 °C for 3 hours, and at room temperature) in an enclosure dried by silica gel to a relative humidity (RH) of \( \leq 5\% \), and then given a fading exposure of 2 kilolux-hours within their desiccator vessel, which had a thin glass lid, versus a control which was also exposed under similar glass but with full access to the ambient atmosphere (RH \( \approx 55\% \)). It was found that the initial desiccation of the specimens had no perceptible effect on their densities. The values of the maximum fade for the desiccated specimens were 16 and 12, respectively for the heated and unheated specimens, compared with a value of the maximum fade of 15 for the control specimen. The specimens were allowed to regain density in the dark, respectively, in the desiccator vessel and the ambient air. After 4 weeks the fade had returned to values of 5, 3, and 2, respectively. On removal of the desiccated specimens to ambient atmosphere and allowing them to regain for a further 5 days, the fade values were 2, 1 and 2, i.e. the samples had returned to their original densities within experimental error, with a regain of \( \geq 98\% \). It may be concluded that complete desiccation of cyanotypes has no significant effect on their tendency to fade, but it may somewhat inhibit their rate of regain. Since Prussian blue has a great avidity for water, attracting and retaining a proportion of water molecules within its structure, the effect of relative humidity on fading of cyanotypes under all normal circumstances is inconsequential.

The thoroughness of washing a newly-made cyanotype has a considerable effect on its susceptibility to fading. To demonstrate this, a Ware formulation new cyanotype, acid-developed, but which had only received a perfunctory wash of 4 minutes in running water before drying, was observed to suffer a maximum fade as high as 42 under a 2 kilolux-hour exposure. In contrast, a similar test-piece which had been washed in gently running tapwater for 20 minutes experienced a ‘standard’ maximum fade of only 16 under the same exposure. This provides further evidence that fading is promoted, at least partly, by impurities left
in the print as a result of imperfect processing, as originally suspected by Ian and Angela Moor. However such impurities cannot usually be fully washed out retrospectively, especially in old specimens, and prolonged washing in water can cause considerable loss of image by peptization of the Prussian blue, so a compromise in this regard must be reached.

To discover if there is any mitigation of fading if oxidants are incorporated in the print, specimens of Ware cyanotypes were treated, after development, with oxidants to restore fully the densities of the Prussian blue. Solutions of ferric chloride and ammonium dichromate (strength ca 3% w/v) were used, the latter being a common treatment for commercial blueprints at one time. Step tests were then densitometered and test-faded in the usual way. The results showed that these specimens were not immune from fading, indeed they showed a maximum fade of 17, comparable with the fade of 16 in an identical test that had not been treated with re-oxidants but simply allowed to regain density in the air. The only difference was that the maximum fade was reached more slowly – in about twice the time taken by the untreated specimen. This result suggests that there is no significant benefit in using the dichromate bath that has been recommended in the past. The experiment also shows that inorganic ferric salts, i.e. ferric ions per se, neither promote nor significantly inhibit the fading.

Of the many toning procedures suggested for cyanotypes, most destabilise the image, and cannot be recommended. In the lead toning method of Oscar Bolle (§8.6.1), the processed cyanotype is immersed in a 5% solution of lead(II) acetate, preferably at a pH between 7 and 8, which shifts the blue towards a beautiful deep violet. Specimens treated in this way were found to exhibit improved resistance to light fading, by a factor of about four. Analysis by X-ray spectrometry strongly indicated that the lead(II) ions are incorporated in the Prussian blue lattice. However, the strong colour shift and the toxicity of the lead acetate bath debar this as a conservation treatment, but artists originating cyanotypes might well consider incorporating this procedure into their practices if they find the colour acceptable.

9.1.8 Conclusions: mechanism of light-fading
The chemical reaction of the fading process (Appendix III.10) is essentially a light-induced reduction of Prussian blue to Prussian white, which necessarily entails the acquisition of an electron from some other substance, and an extra cation to balance this increased negative charge.
For every reduction, there must be a corresponding oxidation.\textsuperscript{685} The question naturally follows: what is there in a cyanotype print that can be oxidised? If this component can be identified, then it may be possible to prevent or inhibit fading. There are several candidates, which fall into three categories:

1. A component of Prussian blue itself.
2. Other constituents of the cyanotype print, including the substrate.
3. An impurity incorporated within the Prussian blue, arising from the circumstances of its preparation.

Let us examine each of these categories in turn:

1. **The inherent stability of Prussian blue to light**
The Colour Index describes the light-fastness of Prussian blue as ‘excellent’,\textsuperscript{686} and the manufacturers of artists’ pigments list Prussian blue as ‘durable’. Kirby has reported a fading test on Winsor and Newton’s powdered Prussian blue pigment, which was painted out as a moderately intense, simple wash with gum Arabic. The specimen was exposed continuously for 180 days to a standard artificial daylight source of 10 kilolux, which amounts to a total exposure of over 40 megalux-hours. Little or no loss of density or colour change was observed in the specimen.\textsuperscript{687}

We also have the evidence of scientific investigations of the behaviour of pure Prussian blue in highly controlled environments, where it is also found to be very stable. The pure substance (as its ‘insoluble’ variety) in aqueous suspension shows no tendency to decompose under prolonged irradiation with visible light, establishing that Prussian blue does not significantly photo-oxidise water to oxygen, or its own bound cyanide ion (to form cyanate or cyanogen) under these conditions.\textsuperscript{688} This is further discussed in Appendix III. Moreover, if Prussian blue were inherently light-sensitive we might have expected proportional behaviour for the fade, rather than the sub-proportional behaviour, which is more indicative of the presence of an impurity.

Set against these observations is the early nineteenth century report by Chevreul which suggests that very heavy exposures to UV-rich light, e.g. direct sunlight, will result in some decomposition of Prussian blue, but these are not conditions that will prevail in any gallery or archive, and they have not therefore been extensively investigated in the present work, which has adopted exposures to illumination that are likely to be encountered in exhibition and everyday handling.
2. Possible effects of the substrate and binder

In a cyanotype print, as opposed to a pure Prussian blue sol, the system is complicated by the presence of substances from the paper environment: primarily the cellulose substrate, any non-cellulosic constituents such as lignin, the sizing agent, and any other manufacturers’ additives to the paper pulp. The surface contact between the Prussian blue particles and these substances may be rather restricted, but they cannot be excluded from consideration as potential reducing agents.

A number of experiments were carried out in the course of this research to determine if the substrate itself could promote photochemical fading. Cellulose is an oxidisable material, so its possible contribution to fading was checked by preparing cyanotype test prints on a variety of other, non-oxidisable absorbent substrates, such as glass plates coated with silica or alumina (as used for thin-layer chromatography), fibreglass filter paper, and bisque-fired ceramic tile bodies. The general observation in all these tests was that cyanotypes formed on such non-reducing substrates faded in light as rapidly as those prepared similarly on pure cellulose paper. Thus, cellulose itself is not implicated as a major contributor to the fading process in cyanotype images.

The lignins that are present in inferior grades of wood-pulp paper are readily oxidisable substances and could promote the photoreduction of Prussian blue, but no tests have been made in this respect because there is every reason not to use such papers for making cyanotypes, and they are easily avoided. However, some commercial blueprint papers of the past may have contained appreciable amounts of lignin, which could contribute to their deterioration. The presence of gelatin size does not appear to increase the fading, as judged by the foregoing results.

3. Impurities destabilising Prussian blue

The most likely cause of light-sensitivity in cyanotypes is the incorporation within the image substance of impurities which derive from the sensitizer; the availability of readily oxidisable substances will facilitate the rapid photoreduction to Prussian white. This may not simply be a case of residual impurities left in the paper fibres by imperfect clearing of the chemicals during the wet-processing procedure; but there may also be a trapping of the impurity within the Prussian blue lattice, and once trapped no amount of washing may remove it. The susceptibility to fading is therefore likely to be highly dependent on the circumstances under which the Prussian blue is formed, i.e. the
formulation and concentration of the sensitizer and the processing of the print.

The variability and history–dependent character reported for the light–fading of cyanotypes therefore becomes comprehensible, but there have been few proposals as to which substances or formulations are more likely to promote fading. It has been suggested that residual ferric salts, presumably the hydrated oxides, in the print can be a cause, but these are inherently oxidising rather than reducing agents and the experimental evidence cited above shows no such effect.

Fading of Prussian blue requires the simultaneous presence of several contributing factors: light; a reducing agent (electron donor) in intimate contact with the solid; and cations to migrate into the lattice and balance the increased negative charge brought about by reduction. Molecules that are small enough to be occluded within the voids of the Prussian blue lattice should be particularly effective in promoting the photoreduction. To test this possibility, pure Prussian blue coatings on paper were prepared by successive coats of potassium ferricyanide and ferrous sulphate, then part–coated with solutions of oxidisable anions such as citrate and oxalate, and allowed to dry. The density of the impregnated Prussian blue paper was compared with the control region after a period of dark storage to ensure that there was no reduction in the dark, then the whole sheet was given a standard fading exposure. The reductant–coated area was found to fade in the light much more rapidly than the control area, showing that these oxidisable organic anions do indeed promote photoreduction of the pigment. It may be significant that the anions effective in promoting fading in Prussian blue are also those that normally render iron(III) photoactive in its salts, and are consequently present in the cyanotype sensitizer.

To improve the light fastness of cyanotypes, therefore, the presence of excesses of these free anions, such as citrate or oxalate, should be avoided. Since an acid development bath is desirable in the processing of new cyanotypes (Ware formula employing ferrioxalate sensitizer), it is better to use a very dilute mineral acid such as hydrochloric or nitric, rather than citric or oxalic acids, which have been previously recommended.

If, in the light–fading of the Prussian blue, the products of oxidation of the impurity are lost from the cyanotype (for example as carbon dioxide gas, in the case of oxalate), the impurity should be progressively and irreversibly destroyed as the dose of light accumulates, but the
Prussian white will still be fully re-oxidised by air. The quantity of impurity should therefore diminish with successive cycles of fading and regain, and eventually the susceptibility to light fading should disappear when all the impurity is ‘burnt out’. This is the behaviour observed during the experiments on cyclic fade and regain described above, although the fading never dropped to zero, so there must be some irremovable cause also. Ferrocyanide ion is cited as a common impurity in Prussian blue; the oxidation-reduction equilibrium between these two substances is finely balanced; the oxidation product of ferrocyanide is ferricyanide, which will not be lost from the system, so although fading and regain may be reversible in this case, the susceptibility to fading cannot be ‘burned out’.

9.1.9 Regain of colour by faded Prussian blue

It has long been appreciated that processing solarised or faded cyanotypes in a dilute dichromate bath re-oxidises them rapidly, but it has also been claimed that it improves their resistance to fading; presumably because this powerful oxidant will destroy most reducing impurities. There is also the (as yet unproven) possibility that some dichromate or chromate may be incorporated into the Prussian blue lattice, where its oxidising presence might continue greatly to inhibit photoreduction. However the strong yellow colour of dichromate would tend to make the hue greenish if it were so incorporated. The effect of a dichromate re-oxidation bath on the fading susceptibility of new cyanotype (Ware formula) was tested as described above and found to be ineffectual.

Regain of the Prussian blue in a faded layer requires an oxidant (electron acceptor), and probably some water to assist cation migration out of the lattice, and it will be further assisted by acid which enhances the action of most oxidising agents, such as oxygen, dichromate and hydrogen peroxide, and neutralizes the hydroxyl ions produced by them, so avoiding hydrolysis. The amount of gaseous oxygen needed to accomplish the re-oxidation of an average cyanotype is surprisingly small: a calculation for a typical coating of maximum optical density given below shows that, for an area of A4 size, the oxygen contained in about 0.7 cc of air should suffice to completely re-oxidise the Prussian white to Prussian blue:

An area of 1 m² of a Prussian blue layer of optical density 1.55 contains ca. 5x10⁻⁴ moles; this corresponds to 11.2 cc of O₂ gas at STP. (Although molecular oxygen only constitutes one quarter of the
atmosphere, one mole of dioxygen can oxidise four moles of Prussian white, so the factors approximately cancel, see Appendices II.9 and III.8):

$$4\text{Fe[Fe(CN)}_6\text{]}^{2-} + \text{O}_2 + 2\text{H}_2\text{O} \rightarrow 4\text{Fe[Fe(CN)}_6\text{]}^{3-} + 4\text{OH}^-$$

An A4 sheet has an area of $1/16 \text{ m}^2$, hence the volume of air needed to restore a completely faded A4 print is $11/16 = 0.7 \text{ cc}$.

### 9.1.10 Recent spectrometry of Prussian blue fading

Fifteen years after the work described above was concluded, further new scientific investigations were made of the fading of Prussian blue by Claire Gervaise and co-workers, using sophisticated modern X-ray spectrometric techniques (XANES), employing the Soleil proton synchrotron.$^{691}$

These new investigations have been carried out on samples of Prussian blue prepared by the direct reaction of an iron(III) salt with ferrocyanide; this form does not suffer from the same vulnerabilities typical of the kind of Prussian blue occurring in cyanotypes, which is sensitized by impurities such as citrate or oxalate. In general the directly prepared pure substance is very much more stable to light, as explained in §9.1.8 and Appendix III.10, so this new work is operating in quite a different energy regime. To obtain recordable significant fading, Gervaise and colleagues used light-fading exposures to an HMI lamp of irradiance $1200 \text{ W/m}^2$ (ca. $0.82 \text{ Mlx} @ 555 \text{ nm}$) of 5 days duration (120 hours), i.e. their exposures were in the order of $100 \text{ Mlx hr}$. These exposures are therefore about four to five orders of magnitude greater than those employed earlier in this work with cyanotypes (2 klx hr as in §9.1.2). The new work has also highlighted the importance of the cellulosic substrate in providing oxidisable material which facilitates the reductive fading by supplying electrons and $\text{K}^+$ cations to maintain charge neutrality. Interestingly, cotton and linen based samples were found to differ in their response, and so does silk. Lignin-based papers are very reactive and suffer deterioration of the Prussian blue even before light exposure. These workers also found that Prussian blue is faded by X-ray irradiation.

### 9.2 Bleaching of cyanotypes by alkali

Despite the false claim by the discoverer, Diesbach, that his blue was stable to lime, painters soon realised that this, and indeed any other alkali, rapidly destroyed Prussian blue and the pigment could not therefore be used for painting frescoes.$^{692}$ Alkaline sensitivity is the most
serious drawback with this pigment, and there have been many endeavours to diminish it.

An extensive investigation of the effect of alkali on Prussian blues has been conducted by Holtzman, who has also sought treatments to protect the pigment from this type of deterioration. He found that a buffer at pH 9.4 completely decolourises (i.e. destroys by irreversible hydrolysis) Prussian blue in 1 to 10 minutes, depending on the precise method of preparation. This is not a highly alkaline pH, and is the same, for example, as that of a saturated solution of calcium carbonate, the buffer commonly incorporated in archival papers and boards. A stronger alkali is a solution of sodium carbonate of strength 0.25 molar, which has a pH of ca 10.7; this is high enough to destroy the Prussian blue of a cyanotype in less than half a minute.

Holtzman especially recommended the incorporation of nickel ions into the Prussian blue as a means of improving its resistance to alkaline environments. This is best done at the time the blue is prepared, by forming it in the presence of nickel salts, but it can also be incorporated retrospectively in high proportion by soaking the Prussian blue in a bath of a nickel(II) salt. Holtzman found that Prussian blue so treated was ‘stable indefinitely’ at pH 9.4 (or, at least, for 4 months – the duration of the experiment), and could even withstand the pH 10.7 solution of sodium carbonate for 4 to 5 hours.

I tested the nickel treatment on Herschel and Ware cyanotypes in case it could offer a possible conservation procedure for improving the stability of cyanotypes towards alkaline hydrolysis. The process of soaking a cyanotype test strip in a solution of 10 % w/v nickel(II) sulphate for one hour caused a perceptible shift in the hue towards a more greenish–blue: from 21D8 to 23D8 in the Herschel specimen, and from 20E8 to 21E7 in the Ware specimen (see also §8.6.3 on toning). Unfortunately the treatment is also accompanied by a distinct loss of density from the mid–tones, presumably due to peptisation of the pigment: using the same units (100ΔD) as for the fade, the loss was 10 from the Herschel specimen after one hour, and 15 after a 25 hour soak at room temperature; the corresponding losses from the Ware specimen were somewhat greater: 16 and 21, respectively. These specimens were densitometered then tested for their resistance to alkali by immersing them in a buffer solution at pH 9.4 for 10 minutes, in comparison with control specimens of the major processes that had not been treated. The test strips were briefly (5 minutes) rinsed in tap water and then dried.
and re-measured. The losses (100ΔD) are shown in Table 14 for shadow-tone regions, from which it may be seen that the nickel(II) treatment is quite efficacious in protecting the Prussian blue from alkaline degradation at this pH by about an order of magnitude.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sensitizer type</th>
<th>D_i</th>
<th>Loss (100ΔD)</th>
<th>Loss %</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Smee</td>
<td>0.953</td>
<td>58</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Herschel</td>
<td>1.355</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Herschel (Ni(II) treated 1 hr)</td>
<td>1.352</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Herschel (Ni(II) treated 24 hr)</td>
<td>1.122</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lietze</td>
<td>0.952</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valenta</td>
<td>1.322</td>
<td>94</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ware</td>
<td>1.086</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ware (Ni(II) treated 1 hr)</td>
<td>0.929</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ware (Ni(II) treated 24 hr)</td>
<td>1.335</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 9.5 Effects of alkaline hydrolysis at pH 9.4 for 10 minutes

There remains the question as to whether a cyanotype image that has been bleached by alkali can be restored (see Appendix II.8). It is likely that the ‘degree of irreversibility’ of an alkaline bleached cyanotype will be dependent on the history of the object – for instance whether it has been washed after the bleaching action, which would remove the soluble ferrocyanide. When ‘freshly bleached’ there is some evidence that cyanotypes can be partially restored by dilute acid, such as hydrochloric or nitric, and added ferrocyanide, but over time the ferric oxide/hydroxide hydrolysis product becomes insoluble in dilute acid, and cannot regenerate Prussian blue. This is an area calling for further research.

Hydrolysed Prussian blue leaves behind a yellow-brown stain of iron(III) oxide–hydroxide, which may bind quite strongly to cellulose substrates – paper or fabric. If it is desired to remove this, the treatment of reductive chelation recommended for removing iron stains from Platinotypes may be the best option: an effective treatment is immersion for ca. one hour at room temperature in an aqueous solution 5% w/v in each of sodium dithionite (Na₂S₂O₄) and tetrasodium EDTA, at pH ~9. If the sodium dithionite is unavailable, sodium sulphite (Na₂SO₃) may be substituted, with some loss of effectiveness.
9.3 Peptization of Prussian blue

The tendency of Prussian blue to peptize causes one of the major problems of the traditional cyanotype process, namely, a considerable loss of image substance, which washes out of the paper during wet processing, thus necessitating heavy over-exposure (as much as two or three stops, depending on the paper substrate and its sizing) to compensate for the loss. Clearly it is desirable to inhibit the formation of ‘soluble’ Prussian Blue in favour of an ‘insoluble’ variety. Formulations for some commercial blueprint papers contain added iron(III) chloride, which may have this effect. However, if the potassium ions are eliminated from the sensitizer, then a less easily peptized form results in the first place. The use of ammonium hexacyanoferrate(III) in the sensitizer goes some way to solving this problem, with the result that the new cyanotype process described in Chapter 7 loses very little image substance on wet processing.

Similar considerations apply to conservation treatments of cyanotypes using aqueous washing. This procedure is unlikely to diminish much the susceptibility to light fading (which is substantially reversible, anyway) if the cyanotypes have been properly processed in the first place, but it is likely to cause some irreversible loss of image due to peptization.

Quantitative experimental results on this problem are scarce, but in 1989 Ian and Angela Moor reported some densitometered washing experiments on cyanotypes. The washing time was 15 minutes in all cases; in tapwater (pH 7.5–8.5) the ‘average loss in image density’ was 18%; in distilled water (pH 6–6.5) the loss was 4%; in deionised water (pH 6.3–6.6) the loss was said to be 0.00%.

In 1991 Sarah Wagner reported some research at the Library of Congress on washing cyanotypes of both recent and historical origins: specimens were bathed in neutral pH tap–water or in de–ionized water at pH 6 for a period of 1.5 hours; some loss of pigment occurred, and was especially marked with the cyanotypes of recent manufacture for which: “dramatic lightening occurred by immersion in tap water... and slight lightening for samples which were immersed in deionised water”.

The effects of aqueous washing on cyanotypes of different varieties was tested in the present work. Sets of four nearly identical test strips of a given process were immersed in a gentle flow of tap water at 20 ± 1 °C, the pH of which was monitored periodically and found to be 7.2 ± 0.1. The strips were removed successively from the washing process after
time intervals of 5 minutes, 20 minutes, 1 hour, and 4 hours, dried, and their densities remeasured. A similar test was performed in a 2 litre static bath of ‘purified’ water at 20 °C, having a pH of 6.5 ± 0.1. The results are summarised in Table 15, where the ‘Loss’ figures are 100ΔD.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sensitizer Type</th>
<th>Water quality</th>
<th>Initial density</th>
<th>Loss in 5 mins</th>
<th>Loss in 20 mins</th>
<th>Loss in 1 hour</th>
<th>Loss in 4 hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Smee</td>
<td>Tap</td>
<td>0.90</td>
<td>3.1</td>
<td>6.6</td>
<td>13.3</td>
<td>28.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smee</td>
<td>Pure</td>
<td>0.93</td>
<td>0.3</td>
<td>4.6</td>
<td>6.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Herschel</td>
<td>Tap</td>
<td>0.95</td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>2.3</td>
<td>6.4</td>
<td>13.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Herschel</td>
<td>Pure</td>
<td>0.96</td>
<td>0.1</td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>3.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lietze</td>
<td>Tap</td>
<td>0.98</td>
<td>0.1</td>
<td>2.9</td>
<td>7.0</td>
<td>17.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lietze</td>
<td>Pure</td>
<td>0.98</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>1.7</td>
<td>1.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valenta</td>
<td>Tap</td>
<td>0.86</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>3.9</td>
<td>9.6</td>
<td>30.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valenta</td>
<td>Pure</td>
<td>0.85</td>
<td>0.7</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>2.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ware</td>
<td>Tap</td>
<td>0.77</td>
<td>1.3</td>
<td>4.8</td>
<td>13.7</td>
<td>29.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ware</td>
<td>Pure</td>
<td>0.95</td>
<td>0.1</td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>2.1</td>
<td>2.2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 9.6 Effects of aqueous washing. ‘Loss’ is 100ΔD

A phenomenon called the ‘edge etch effect’ was conspicuous on some peptisation step tests and requires explanation. This was the loss of image substance from the edges of a step, where it is adjacent to the surrounding regions of maximum density. That the effect is attributable to the adjacent area of high density was demonstrated by printing the step tablet up against the boundary of the sensitized area, in which case there was no loss. The ‘edge etch effect’ is invisible immediately after the print–out exposure; it only appears during the wet–processing. Nevertheless, it can be shown not to be due to migration of ions through the solution during the wet processing; because the effect still occurs even when the entire adjacent high–density region is cut off after exposure but before the wet processing. Evidently the loss is due to ions which have migrated through the paper from the adjacent area during the exposure. These promote peptization of the Prussian blue as soon as aqueous treatment begins. If such a test strip is allowed to rest in the dark at normal humidity for a few hours after exposure and before the wet processing, the effect disappears, presumably because the continuing diffusion of the causative ions has by then led to their uniform distribution throughout the specimen, and there is no longer a local
effect. It is significant that some mobile by-product of the cyanotype photochemistry can promote peptization of the image substance; the effect is likely to cause an enhanced acutance in images. It was observed to be much worse in samples prepared from the brown variety of ammonium ferric citrate compared with the green variety. It was greatly reduced or absent in papers sized with gelatin – which may act by inhibiting the mobility of the ions causing the peptization. In general, solutions of high ionic strength tend to promote peptization of Prussian blue. Thus, treatment in a solution of sodium hexametaphosphate of strength 5–10% can be used to remove the blue in the highlights of a fogged cyanotype.

As explained in Appendix II.8, a 20% solution of potassium oxalate cleanly decomposes and dissolves Prussian blue, and can be used for stain-removal, title-writing on cyanotypes, or, at a lower concentration, for ‘reducing’ the blue density, provided the soluble products are removed afterwards by a brief wash in water.

9.4 Conservation issues with cyanotypes
9.4.1 Recognition of cyanotype
It must first be established, by a magnification of 10 to 30 times if necessary, that the object under consideration is a true photograph having a continuous tone image, and not one of the several photomechanical printing processes, of which all except Woodburytype show a tell-tale micro-texture: a dot screen for letterpress halftone, a grain pattern for photogravure, or reticulation in collotype. Cyanotypes may seem the easiest of all photographic processes to identify by virtue of their colour, but care should be taken to distinguish them from other types of photograph that can also be made in a similar blue: namely, carbon prints, blue-toned silver-gelatine prints, and Woodburytypes, plus the more recent possibilities offered by the ink-jet printer – some digital cameras even provide a ‘cyanotype’ setting, and it is easy to generate a cyanotype look for a print file in Photoshop – but electromechanical prints also have a patterned microstructure.

An essential distinguishing feature is that all the traditional processes include a binder layer of gelatin holding the pigment, which lies on the surface of the paper, and confers some lustre or reflectivity; whereas the cyanotype is a totally matte, single-layer print in which the pigment is contained within the surface fibres of the paper sheet, which should be clearly visible under magnification. However, prints made by the
(relatively rare) positive-working Pellet process will also have a deposit of insolubilised gum retaining the pigment, so will show a binder layer in relief in the shadow regions; in consequence, Pellet prints will rather resemble blue Woodburytypes or carbon prints and may be more difficult to distinguish from them.

9.4.2 Exhibition and light sensitivity
The concept of the threshold exposure was introduced in my previous book on early silver photographs with the aim of providing a useful parameter for curators and conservators to describe and discuss, in a semi-quantitative way, the vulnerability of cultural objects to light. The threshold exposure for a monochrome image is that exposure to light which results in a just noticeable density change in any significant area of it. The notion of ‘significant area’ is somewhat subjective, but could be taken to be from about 1 mm² upwards. The threshold exposure therefore defines the light exposure at which ‘perceptible damage’ begins to accumulate. It is measured in the conventional units of exposure – lux seconds (lx s) or, more conveniently, kilolux hours (klx hr).

The psychometrics of human vision find that an optical density difference between adjacent areas in the order of 0.01 is a just noticeable difference (JND) under good viewing conditions. Differences less than one JND are generally imperceptible to the unaided human eye for areas of smooth mid-tone grey, placed side-by-side under bright lighting, but they can be measured with sufficiently sensitive instrumentation (densitometers reading to 0.001). The use of optical density as the measurable unit of change presupposes a monochrome object – which is usually the case with C19th photographs. However, if a colour shift in the object is a significant possibility, the criterion for a JND is more properly expressed according to the measurements of colour science, and the change of coordinates in a colour space, such as the CIE L*a*b* system, as measured with a colour meter (chromameter). In this system, a colour change of \( \Delta E = 1 \) or 2 is approximately one JND. If there is no colour shift, \( \Delta E = \Delta L^* \), where the lightness scale \( L^* \) in the CIELAB system runs from 0 (black) to 100 (white). A practical JND of \( \Delta E = 1.5 \) is widely quoted for coloured objects.

The experimental results for cyanotypes (see §9.1.3 above) have shown that an exposure of 2 kilolux hours, i.e. half an hour at a ‘daylight’ illuminance of 4 kilolux, brings about a fade in density of ca 0.1, i.e. about 10 JNDs. This implies that the threshold exposure for cyanotypes is
only 200 lux hours, which may seem alarmingly small, being comparable with the *threshold exposure* values calculated, and observed, for photogenic drawings, which are deemed too light-sensitive for exhibition under any conditions. However, the behaviour of photogenic drawings is quite different from that of cyanotypes because the fogging of a photogenic drawing is irreversible, cumulative and permanent, but the fading of a cyanotype is reversible by air re-oxidation. As has already been explained in §9.1.6, the failure of the reciprocity law in the case of cyanotypes means that the duration of exposure at an illuminance of 50 lux needed to fade them by even one JND may be very long indeed, if not indefinite, and it is quite safe to exhibit them at, or near, this low level of illumination. Even after a cyanotype has been faded by moderate daylight exposure, the evidence is that recovery of image density will usually be effectively complete.

There is one potentially deleterious factor that should be borne in mind, however, when subjecting cyanotypes to repeated cycles of fading by light exposure and regain by aerial oxidation, namely: the build-up of alkalinity in the print. The chemistry of the re-oxidation of Prussian white by air necessarily entails the generation of hydroxide ion (see Appendix II.9), which has the capacity to permanently destroy Prussian blue by hydrolysis (see §9.2). It is therefore desirable that cyanotypes should be maintained in a mildly acidic condition, pH 4–5, to counter this hydrolytic tendency, and exhibition protocols should minimise repeated showings.

### 9.4.3 Safe copying techniques

The safe copying and exposure of photographs, and other objects potentially sensitive to light, is assisted by the knowledge of the following two parameters:

1. **the total light exposure inflicted on the object by the copying process,**
2. **the object's sensitivity to light, measured by its threshold exposure.**

A comparison of these two figures (expressed in the same units) provides a risk-assessment of the ‘potential damage’ to the object, *i.e.* the notional ‘cost’ of making one copy, and thus can inform curatorial decision-making in a semi-quantitative manner. These factors will now be quantified as far as current knowledge allows.

**a) The total dose of light to the object**

This is the exposure sustained by the object during the entire process of acquiring a copy image, or digital image file, by a specified procedure – whether by analogue or digital photography with appropriate external
lighting or photo-flash illumination, or by a scanner, or a photocopier, with their built-in light sources. Light exposure is the product of light intensity (illuminance) and duration; to quantify this the preferred Système Internationale (SI) units are lux seconds (lx s). It is convenient to build in a factor of one thousand, so kilolux seconds (klx s) will be used here as the appropriate units for camera exposures, but lux hours (lx hr) may be more convenient for measuring light exposure arising from exhibition or study: 1 lx hr = 3.6 klx s.

A number of workers have previously assessed the total exposure for several copying set-ups and systems, see Table 9.7 below for values and references. However, it is essential that individual photographers should measure the total light dose for their own copying procedures.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Typical Equipment</th>
<th>Light Level (klx)</th>
<th>Exposure time</th>
<th>Light Dose (klx s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Scanning CCD camera</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>15 minutes</td>
<td>1800</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Blackwell)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flat bed scanner</td>
<td>various</td>
<td>various</td>
<td>3.6 – 54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Vitale)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Photocopier</td>
<td>various</td>
<td>various</td>
<td>7.2 – 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Neevel)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35 mm SLR camera</td>
<td>0.6 (2x100W bulbs @ 60 cm distance)</td>
<td>~3 seconds minimum*</td>
<td>1.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with photo-flash</td>
<td>Set f/11 @100 ISO magnification 1/8</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120 roll film camera</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>~3 seconds minimum*</td>
<td>4.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with photo-flash</td>
<td>Set f/11 @100 ISO magnification 1/4</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5”x4” studio camera</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>~3 seconds minimum*</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with photo-flash</td>
<td>Set f/11 @100 ISO magnification 1/2</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exhibition Class 1</td>
<td>0.05</td>
<td>10 hours/day</td>
<td>1800/day</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 9.7 Typical light doses for copying compared with exhibition.
*Note: 3 seconds is about the minimum total time for the lights to be switched on and become thermally stable, and for the camera exposure, which is generally in the order of one second, to be made.

Some of the figures in Table 9.7 remain highly machine-dependent, and are likely to change with advancing technology, so these guidelines for scanners and photocopiers, which were typical of the 1990s, may require updating and re-calculating. For comparability these calculations all assume a common, nominal camera exposure setting. If the film speed is not 100 ISO (ASA) or the lens aperture number A differs from f/11, the figure should be adjusted accordingly. With flash, the light exposure of the object is just sufficient for the correct exposure of the camera film, so it depends only on the camera parameters, and not on the model of flashgun, which is assumed to be set correctly by the photographer.

It will be noted from Table 9.7 that the light dose to the object can be minimised by employing photo–flash illumination. The flash exposure for a given distance, as expressed in the Guide Number of the photo–flash unit, determines the camera parameters that must be set by the photographer: an effective arithmetic speed, S, in ISO (ASA), and a lens aperture setting expressed as an f/stop number, A. These two parameters are all that is needed to calculate the light dose to the object: illumination, L, in lux multiplied by time, t, in seconds, Lt, a formula for which has been derived elsewhere:

\[ Lt = 0.189(1+m)^2 \frac{A^2}{S} \]

Where: m is the magnification = image size/object size.

From this it may be seen that, for example, a camera set to a lens aperture of f/11, so A = 11, and an effective speed of S = 100 ISO, (e.g. for ‘fine grain’ film or ‘low noise’ digital imaging), the minimum light exposure of the object Lt is calculated to be 0.36 klx s or 0.1 lx hr, if m = 0.25, i.e. if the camera image is about 1/4 the size of the original object (e.g. an object ca. 10x8 in. photographed on ‘120’ roll film).

**The setting–up exposure: ‘modelling lights’**

The light exposure inflicted by the actual photography is only part of the total dose sustained by the object being copied: the exposure when setting–up, framing and focussing the image can be even greater. For instance, even if the setting–up is conducted under a low light level of 50 lux, one minute spent doing this will incur an exposure of 3 klx s, which in some cases is greater than that of the actual photographic exposure. It is important that the operating protocols for copying should minimise
unnecessary additional exposure of this kind, either by using very low level modelling lights, or preferably by setting-up on a ‘dummy’ or surrogate object of the same size, and only substituting the precious object at the last moment when ready. It is important to assess, and include in the evaluation, any exposure incurred in this way. On past occasions, more damage has been done to precious sensitive photographs by neglectful and unnecessary exposure to the full illumination at the copying easel, than has been caused by the photographic exposure itself.

(b) The sensitivity of the object to light

As stated in §9.4.2, this is conveniently expressed as the threshold exposure (also in klx s) which causes a Just Noticeable Difference (JND) in the object. The condition of the object before and after exposure cannot be directly compared, so either identical reference specimens are required as ‘controls’, or precise densitometer readings must be taken of accurately-located image regions before and after exposure. A caveat here: densitometers generally have very intense light sources (ca. 500 klx) and can cause perceptible damage to very sensitive objects over the sample area within a short time. The readout from a densitometer is in optical density, which is defined as log_{10}(opacity), where the opacity is defined as: incident light intensity/ transmitted or reflected light intensity, depending on the mode. The optical density has no units – it is a pure number.

Nearly all treatments of photographic fading published to date tend to assume that the Law of Reciprocity holds; e.g. the change (which may be fading or fogging) caused by exposure to a light source of, say, 5000 lux for one hour, will be the same as the change caused by a source of 50 lux in 100 hours. While this may be generally true for silver images, it certainly is not valid for cyanotypes, which recover from fading by aerial reoxidation.

(c) The ‘cost’ of making one copy

This is expressed in terms of the ‘potential damage’ to the object as the quotient of light dose (Table 9.7) and threshold exposure (§9.4.2):

\[ c = \frac{a}{b} \]

so \( c \) is the number of JNDs inflicted on the object by the copying procedure.

Curators and conservators are thus assisted in formulating their own criteria as to what may constitute an acceptable value of \( c \), as a compromise between the conflicting demands of conservation ethics, commercial factors, and scholarship. An acceptable value of \( c \) will usually
be fractional, i.e. smaller than 1 – probably much smaller – so a more convenient way of expressing the ‘cost’ is:

\[ \frac{1}{c} = \frac{b}{a} \] where \( \frac{1}{c} \) can be usefully regarded as the number of times that the object could be copied with the specified method before it begins to sustain a ‘perceptible change’ i.e. the accumulated exposure reaches the threshold exposure. This assumes, of course, a ‘worst case scenario’ that the potential damage is arithmetically cumulative, which may not always be the case; for example the assumption of exposure reciprocity is not valid for the fading of cyanotypes, which recover their densities on exposure to air in the dark.

An example calculation: A cyanotype photographed by photo–flash illumination, using a 35 mm camera set to a speed of 25 ISO (arithmetic) and an aperture of f/16:

The light dose (a) is calculated from the value 0.3 klx s (Table 9.7) for 100 ISO at f/11 (assuming a magnification of 1/8) modified thus: there are two ‘stops’ less film speed, and one stop smaller aperture, meaning three stops more light exposure is needed in all, arithmetically: 2x2x2 = 8 times, so the light exposure = 8 x 0.3 = 2.4 klx s.

Again, we must add the setting–up exposure, say 3 klx s, to give a total (a) = 5.4 klx s.

The sensitivity (b) of cyanotype under high intensity illumination is ca. 200 lx hr (§9.4.2) which converts to 720 klx s.

So the cost (c) is 5.4/720 = 0.0075 JNDs, which is perfectly ‘safe’. The cyanotype could be photographed in this way \( \frac{1}{0.0075} = 133 \) times before reaching the theoretical threshold of perceptible damage.

9.4.4 Avoidance of alkali

The extreme sensitivity of cyanotypes to alkali suggests that mildly acidic conditions are preferable for their storage, even if this is not deemed ideal for the paper substrate. From the evidence cited above, there can be no doubt that cyanotypes are destroyed by mild alkali (pH 8 to 10) much more rapidly than cellulose paper is destroyed by correspondingly mild acid (pH 6 to 4). Confronted with this dilemma, the conservator should be prepared to subordinate the best interests of preserving the paper substrate to the best interests of preserving the image upon it. Any sort of de–acidification treatment, aqueous or non–aqueous, is therefore out of the question for cyanotypes, because it will certainly damage, and probably totally destroy, the image. However, Prussian blue that has been treated with nickel(II) is much more resistant to alkaline hydrolysis, as
was shown by Holtzman and confirmed for cyanotypes in the present work; it opens the possibility that such cyanotypes could be treated with a de-acidifying bath at about pH 9, such as magnesium bicarbonate, without serious loss, but this has not yet been tested as a conservation procedure. The preliminary treatment with nickel(II) would itself cause some loss from the image, as indicated above, so such a treatment would have to be carefully justified in the first place. Even simple aqueous washing should be avoided because of the risk of image loss through peptisation of the Prussian blue; if washing is considered essential for preservation, then float-washing of the verso only, or damp-pack treatment might be considered.

It is fortunate for cyanotypes that, among the likely volatile impurities in the atmosphere, alkaline gases are much less common in occurrence than acidic gases. Cyanotypes should never be stored with other types of process that might emit alkaline vapours, for instance diazo-copies, which are usually treated with ammonia as part of their processing (and are also, quite commonly, blue). Care should also be exercised with proprietary cleaning agents for picture-glass, which are sometimes used when framing a work for exhibition: some such cleaners can contain ammonia, so all should be pH tested before use. Having made this warning, it should be stated that the effect of ammonia gas – which is an intensification to a violet colour – seems to be quite reversible on re-exposure to pure air. It is only aqueous ammonia that causes hydrolysis.

For the benefit of those making cyanotypes today, it may be useful to point out that precautions taken in their preparation could improve their resistance to light-fading and alkaline hydrolysis. Washing of the print should be thorough so that there is no trace of residual sensitizer. Moreover, the new cyanotype method described in Chapter 7 recommends development in dilute acid, which will destroy any unwanted alkaline buffer that may be present in the paper and ensure that the print is left in a condition favourable to the Prussian blue, possibly by the incorporation of acidic hydroxonium cations into its lattice. If a shift in colour towards greenish-blue is not unacceptable to the maker, then treatment with nickel solution might also be contemplated as a means of fortifying the resistance of the image to alkali.

9.4.5 Buffered substrates
Buffered papers and mount boards contain chalk (calcium carbonate) which, with the best of intentions, is included as a reservoir to neutralise
any excess acid from the environment or the imposed image, and to protect the cellulose molecules of paper objects against acid hydrolysis, which shortens the chain length with consequent embrittlement of the sheet. The use of buffered materials has become standard conservation practice in caring for all works of art on paper, and some types of photograph.\textsuperscript{708}

Increased awareness of the need for conservation of paper documents and works of art has led to the formulation by the International Standards Organization of specifications ISO 9706:1994 for Permanent Paper, and ISO 11108:1996 for Archival paper, whose content is summarised as follows:\textsuperscript{709}

"Permanent paper (ISO 9706 : 1994)
shall have a pH value between 7.5 and 10.0
shall have an alkali reserve at least corresponding to 0.4 moles acid [H\textsuperscript{+}] per kilogram of paper (corresponding to at least 2\% w/w calcium carbonate)
shall have tearing resistance of at least 350 mN
shall have a Kappa number less than 5, which means that the paper may contain only a small amount of easily oxidized material (e.g. lignin).
Archival paper (ISO 11108 : 1996)
shall be made from cotton, cotton linters, hemp or flax, but may contain a minor fraction of fully bleached chemical wood pulp
shall have a folding endurance of at least 2.18 (MIT–, Köhler Molin– or Lhomargy–instruments) or 2.42 (Schopper instrument)
Archival paper shall meet the requirements for permanent paper. The archival paper is stronger than the permanent paper and can withstand considerably more handling."

From these specifications, we may calculate the implications of the presence of this equivalence of 0.4 moles of alkali per kilogram of paper:

If the paper weight is, say, 250 g/m\textsuperscript{2}, then a 1 m\textsuperscript{2} sheet contains:

0.25 x 0.4 = 0.1 moles of OH\textsuperscript{−} equivalent.

If such a paper is used as the substrate for a cyanotype print by coating it with cyanotype sensitizer, we can calculate the implications for the chemistry. A typical coating weight of siderotype sensitizer would be 25 cm\textsuperscript{3}/m\textsuperscript{2} of a solution \textit{ca.} 0.5 molar in Fe(III), \textit{i.e.} a 1 m\textsuperscript{2} sheet of paper would absorb 0.0125 moles of Fe(III) on coating. It follows that, per unit area, the permanent and archival papers contain an 8–fold molar excess of alkaline reserve (equivalent to [OH\textsuperscript{−}]) available to react with and
hydrolyse the Fe(III). There is clearly great potential for damage to the sensitizer chemistry if only a fraction of the alkali in the sheet can contact the iron(III) salt, area for area, in the wet state, although the chalk buffer is quite involatile and unlikely to migrate through dry paper.

This accounts quantitatively for the fact that, over the last few decades, it has become increasingly difficult for the printer to find papers which work well for the iron-based processes: the high quality cotton papers manufactured for the fine-art market of watercolorists, sketchers and printmakers and the archival document market, all presumably conform to the above ISO standards. Such papers now always boast that they are "acid free" – implying that they probably contain an additive of chalk filler which, unfortunately, will rapidly cause the decomposition of any iron(III) sensitizer. Most contemporary practitioners have been driven to the last resort of soaking their chalk-buffered papers in dilute acid in order to destroy the calcium carbonate before coating them with iron(III) sensitizer. Unfortunately many practitioners think that oxalic acid is also suitable for this purpose, but calcium oxalate is just as insoluble as calcium carbonate. Hydrochloric acid can be used, but recently it has been found very convenient and effective to employ 10% sulphamic acid for this purpose. Nonetheless, it is a tedious and unnecessary procedure that tends to degrade the paper surface and strength.

A further caveat when mounting cyanotypes is to avoid applying any adhesive to the verso of the sheet, within the picture area. Many adhesives are alkaline and OH⁻ ions can migrate through plain paper, causing discoloration of the image.

9.4.6 Storage enclosures
In conservation practice, it is now generally advised that cyanotypes should not be mounted on, or wrapped in buffered materials, in case they suffer alkaline deterioration. A saturated solution of calcium carbonate is said to have a pH of 9.4, and we have seen that solutions of this pH can rapidly destroy Prussian blue. To test the extent of the danger from chalk buffers, processed cyanotype tests of all five sensitizers were partially coated with a paste of calcium carbonate powder and distilled water, leaving a ‘control’ area for comparison, and housed in a high humidity environment (RH ≥ 95%) at room temperature to keep the paste moist, in a simulation of the ‘worst case scenario’. Within 48 hours, there was a serious density loss (100∆D ≈ 40 to 60) in the coated areas of all the sensitizers, compared with the adjacent ‘control’ areas. Calcium
carbonate clearly poses a threat to cyanotypes when in direct contact with the image substance, although it is involatile and has little ability to migrate through cellulose. In fact, ISO 18902:2007, Imaging materials -- Processed imaging materials -- Albums, framing and storage materials now recommends the use of buffered papers for storage of all photographic materials; however, cyanotypes are not specifically discussed or excluded from this protocol.

The dangers of using chalk–buffered enclosures for cyanotypes have been recently tested by conservation scientists, Held, Burge and Nishimura, at the Image Permanence Institute. In these new experiments, papers of various pH, (3.1 and 10.3) as well as commercial buffered (pH 9.3) and non–buffered (pH 6.4) papers were contacted with test prints prepared using the three cyanotype formulations: Herschel, Lietze and Valenta (see Table 9.2, §9.1.1). The sandwiches were then artificially aged in a cabinet at 70 °C and 86% RH for 15 days. It was found that all specimens in contact with alkaline and even neutral papers were seriously faded. Only acidic paper almost fully protected the images. The Herschel formula was the least stable, followed by the Valenta formula; prints made using the Lietze formula were the most stable. The authors conclude:

"The experiments clearly showed that alkaline enclosures should not be used. However, the data also precludes making a recommendation for neutral pH enclosures as they also resulted in significant damage to the test cyanotypes especially the most sensitive formulation. On the other hand, it cannot be recommended that cyanotypes be stored in acidic enclosures as they may deteriorate the paper substrates."

With regard to wrapping materials, it is desirable that cyanotypes which receive any exposure to light should be allowed access to the air, particularly when they are returned to dark storage, thus facilitating density regain by air oxidation which reverses any fading incurred. For this reason, archival polyester sleeves cannot be recommended as ideal enclosures for cyanotypes, because they allow the ingress of light but not of air. A preferable wrapping material is an archival wrapping paper of a non–buffered type, i.e. Atlantis Silversafe Photostore, in the traditional ‘four flap folder’ style. Being fairly opaque but relatively porous, it will have the desired properties of attenuating the light but admitting the air. The volume of air required to accomplish reoxidation is surprisingly small: for a typical 10x8 inch cyanotype, it is calculated that less than one
cc of air would suffice. It has been demonstrated that cyanotypes contained in anoxic housings (with ‘ageless’ oxygen scavenger) are very susceptible to light-fading – the very converse of usual recommended conservation practice!

When on exhibition, it is obviously desirable that the mount for a cyanotype should have a deep window mat, providing a reservoir of air, and the package should not be sealed, but designed so that the pool of air in the mat can communicate with the outside atmosphere and be replenished – otherwise the limited supply of oxygen will soon be used up, and fading could become drastic. Let your cyanotypes breathe!
Appendix I Chronology of Cyanotype

1706 Prussian blue first prepared by Johann Jacob Diesbach in Berlin
1724 John Woodward publishes method of preparing Prussian blue
1785 Turnbull’s blue being manufactured in Glasgow
1811 Joseph Gay–Lussac isolates and analyses hydrocyanic acid
1818 First Law of photochemistry proposed by Christian von Grotthuss
1822 Leopold Gmelin discovers potassium ferricyanide
1828 John Mercer detects action of light on ferric salts on cloth by test formation of Prussian blue
1831 Johann Döbereiner notes action of sunlight on ferric oxalate
1839 Announcement of the invention of silver photography
1840 Alfred Smee prepares potassium ferricyanide by electrolytic oxidation of potassium ferrocyanide
1842 John Herschel discovers effect of light on Smee’s potassium ferricyanide (23 April) and ammonium ferric citrate (May) to form Prussian blue. He coins the term ‘cyanotype’ on 16 August. His paper for *Philosophical Transactions* accepted 15 June, partly read to the Royal Society 16 June, and published in September.
1843 Anonymous cyanotype album of ferns printed (March–April)
1843 Anna Atkins begins *British Algae: Cyanotype Impressions* using Herschel’s negative–working formulation
1871 Death of Sir John Herschel
1872 Marion & Co launch ‘Ferroprussiate paper’ on the market for blueprint reprography
1876 First commercial blueprinting machine introduced into the USA
1877 Henri Pellet patents his positive–working cyanotype process
1889 Peter Henry Emerson denounces cyanotype for pictorial purposes
1897 Eduard Valenta prepares green ammonium ferric citrate
1900 Dorel brothers invent gel–lithographic photomechanical process
1950 Blueprint increasingly replaced by diazo copying process
1995 Mike Ware publishes the New Cyanotype process
Appendix II Chemistry of Prussian Blue

The chemical investigation of the ‘iron blues’ – for there are several – has a long and convoluted history. Although Prussian blue has been studied for over 250 years, it is only in the last two decades that the molecular structure of one of its forms has been confidently elucidated. The interpretations put forward in chemistry texts published earlier than the 1970s are all erroneous in varying degrees, and these misconceptions have been carried over into the technical photographic literature on the blueprint, none of which now represents the process correctly.714

This appendix attempts to summarise our present understanding of Prussian blue in its various forms, without detailing the physico-chemical evidence that underpins the conclusions; those who wish to read more deeply will find citations of the key references to the primary research literature.715

Prussian blue is now recognised as a model for a whole class of transition metal hexacyanoferrates716 – insoluble mixed-valence compounds which share essentially the same cubic, cyanide-bridged, open polymeric lattice (see fig. 3.2, §3.2).717 It should be appreciated, however, that knowledge of the structures of this family of substances is even now incomplete, owing to three difficulties:

- Most preparations of Prussian blue tend to result in colloidal precipitates which preclude the obtaining of single crystals for full 3-dimensional X-ray structure determination;
- The presence of disorder due to vacancies in the lattice; and
- The Prussian blue lattice is ‘zeolitic’, in that it offers interstitial voids to accommodate substantial proportions of impurity ions and molecules, the incorporation of which complicates its analytical characterization.

Rather than forming as a single substance, of well-defined stoichiometry, the composition of Prussian blue is found to vary according to the method by which it is prepared. The inherent difficulties of characterization have been summed up by one principal group of investigators, thus:

‘In fact, the chemical designation Prussian blue should be regarded as essentially a generic term for complex materials which may contain coprecipitated or occluded ions, indefinite amounts of water, possibly hydrolysed ferrocyanide, variable stoichiometry, and structural disorder.’718
This variability often precludes Prussian blue from lending itself to the rigorous minuteness of structural analysis that is customarily employed in modern physico-chemical investigations.

II.1 Methods of preparation

Prussian blue is, in essence, ferric ferrocyanide – or (to use IUPAC chemical nomenclature henceforth) iron(III) hexacyanoferrate(II). It may be conveniently precipitated from aqueous media by any of the following three types of reaction:

1 Iron(III) salts, Fe³⁺(aq), with hexacyanoferrate(II), [Fe(CN)₆]⁴⁻.

2 Iron(II) salts, Fe²⁺(aq), with hexacyanoferrate(III), [Fe(CN)₆]³⁻. The product of this reaction was earlier thought to be a different substance, namely ferrous ferricyanide or iron(II) hexacyanoferrate(III), and was therefore distinguished by the name of Turnbull’s Blue, after the manufacturing chemists of Glasgow. Recent studies, however, have unambiguously shown it to be essentially the same as Prussian blue. Nonetheless it is convenient to retain the name as an indication of the route by which it is prepared.

3 Iron(II) salts, Fe²⁺(aq), with hexacyanoferrate(II), [Fe(CN)₆]⁴⁻. This yields initially a precipitate of the colourless iron(II) hexacyanoferrate(II), known as Prussian white (or Berlin white, Williamson’s salt or Everitt’s salt). It is readily oxidised to Prussian blue, by oxidants such as air, hydrogen peroxide, dichromate, bromate, chlorate, hypochlorite, etc. When carried out in the presence of a large excess of ammonium ions, this is the industrial method for the manufacture, from commonly available materials, of the Prussian blue pigments of commerce:⁷¹⁹

\[
\text{FeSO}_4 + \text{Na}_4[\text{Fe(CN)}_6] + (\text{NH}_4)_2\text{SO}_4 \rightarrow (\text{NH}_4)_2\text{Fe[Fe(CN)}_6] + \text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4
\]

\[
(\text{NH}_4)_2\text{Fe[Fe(CN)}_6] + \text{H}_2\text{SO}_4 + \text{NaClO}_3 \rightarrow (\text{NH}_4)\text{Fe[Fe(CN)}_6] + \text{NaCl} + (\text{NH}_4)_2\text{SO}_4
\]

The composition of Prussian blue depends on the relative proportions of the reactants used for its preparation: two formulations are usually defined, the variety resulting when the iron salt is not in excess contains alkali metal or ammonium cations is conveniently, but inappropriately termed ‘soluble’ Prussian blue; whereas that obtained with excess iron salt is called ‘insoluble’ and does not contain any alkali cations.⁷²⁰ Now, all forms of Prussian blue are highly insoluble in water, with a solubility
product of ca. $10^{-41}$, but the so-called ‘soluble’ form ($K_s = 3 \times 10^{-41}$), which contains $K^+$ cations is, in fact, most readily peptized – i.e. dispersed as a blue colloidal suspension in water (a hydrosol) – thus giving the illusion of a true solution. This tendency to peptization of Prussian blue is of great importance to the blueprint process, where its occurrence during the wet treatment is most undesirable.

Evidence from Mössbauer spectroscopy,\textsuperscript{721, 722} and photoelectron spectroscopy,\textsuperscript{723} leaves no doubt that all forms of Prussian blue and Turnbull’s blue are, essentially in terms of oxidation states, iron(III) hexacyanoferrate(II). The octahedrally-coordinated iron(II) is in the diamagnetic low-spin ($t_{2g}^6$) configuration, as would be expected for the very high ligand field of C-coordinated cyanide, while the octahedral iron(III) is in the high spin configuration ($t_{2g}^3e_g^2$), expected for the weak ligand field of the nitrogen donor atoms of the cyanide ligands, which is comparable with that of water in the spectrochemical series. These configurations account for the measured effective magnetic moment at room temperature, which corresponds to five unpaired electrons per two iron atoms.\textsuperscript{724}

Most recently, the compositions, structures, and spectral properties of several Prussian blue pigments have been determined in samples obtained by various methods of synthesis, by Louise Samain and her co-workers. To quote the authors' abstract:

“Several Prussian blue pigments have been prepared by different methods and characterized by thermogravimetric analyses, high-energy powder X-ray diffraction, atomic absorption and flame emission, UV-visible, iron-57 Mössbauer, iron K-edge X-ray absorption, and Raman spectroscopy. The type of synthesis influences the hue, tinting strength, and hiding power properties of the Prussian blue pigments. Two major features appear to be strongly dependent on the preparative methods, the particle size and the local disorder. Both a nitrogen atmosphere and an intermediate aging step of the Berlin white, $\text{Fe}^{II}_2[\text{Fe}^{II}(\text{CN})_6]$, during the synthesis are required to obtain a highly colored pigment through the optimization of particle size, minimization in the perturbations to the $\text{Fe}^{II}$–CN–$\text{Fe}^{III}$ intervalence electron transfer pathway, and the minimization of disordered vacancies.” \textsuperscript{725}

Each variety of Prussian blue will now be considered in more detail.

**II.2 ‘Soluble’ Prussian blue**

This form is obtained when potassium hexacyanoferrate(II) and the iron(III) salt are reacted in 1:1 molar proportions, or when the
hexacyanoferrate(II) is in excess. Its formula is usually written KFe[Fe(CN)_6].H_2O, although the water content is variable, and recent preparations have been reported to analyse as KFe[Fe(CN)_6].5H_2O.\textsuperscript{726} Because single crystals of this variety have not yet been obtained, its proposed structure is based only on an early powder X-ray study by Keggin and Miles.\textsuperscript{727} These authors found the powder pattern to be consistent with a face-centred cubic lattice, of probable space group \textit{Fm\textsuperscript{3}m (O\textsubscript{h}\textsuperscript{5})}: ideally the octahedral [Fe(CN)_6]\textsuperscript{4–} units are centred on all the lattice sites, and all the octahedral holes (each surrounded by six N atoms of the cyanide groups) are occupied by Fe\textsuperscript{3+}; the centres of the octant cubes of the face-centred cubic unit cell (i.e. the sites of the formal ‘tetrahedral holes’ – although they are now cubically surrounded by Fe\textsuperscript{2+} and Fe\textsuperscript{3+} alternately) were thought to be occupied alternately by K\textsuperscript{+} and H\textsubscript{2}O. The lattice parameter is a = 1016 pm, and the number of formula units per unit cell, Z = 4. This idealised structure is illustrated in Fig 3.2. This is a very roomy crystal lattice, having a density of only 1.78 g/cm\textsuperscript{3}, which is quite low for an inorganic compound. It provides the simplest and most symmetrical model for discussing the structures of the metal hexacyanometallate family of compounds, many of which have been found to be derived from it.

However, the recent investigations of Samain and co-workers have revisited the structure of this modification, and shown that it is not ideally regular, but exhibits \textasciitilde 25\% lattice vacancies, like the ‘insoluble’ version:

"It can be described with the \textit{Pm\textsuperscript{3}m} space group, where approximately one-quarter of the [Fe\textsuperscript{II}(CN)_6]\textsuperscript{4–} sites are vacant and where the potassium cation is located at a zeolitic-like position inside the lattice cavities. The degree of ordering of the [Fe\textsuperscript{II}(CN)_6]\textsuperscript{4–} vacancies in all Prussian blues was quantified using atomic pair distribution analysis, an ordering that is consistent with the iron K-edge X-ray absorption spectra."\textsuperscript{728} Samain et al propose that ‘soluble’ Prussian blue should be reformulated to take account of the presence of hydroxide ions which are required for charge neutrality in the defect lattice containing potassium cations, their formula is approximately: K\textsubscript{2}Fe\textsuperscript{III}\textsubscript{4}[Fe\textsuperscript{II}(CN)_6]\textsubscript{3}\textsubscript{.}(OH)\textsubscript{2}.7H\textsubscript{2}O.

The infrared spectrum of ‘soluble’ Prussian blue shows a single sharp peak at 2106 cm\textsuperscript{–1} in the \nu(CN) stretching region, consistent with the single infrared-active, triply degenerate fundamental, species \textit{t\textsubscript{1u}}, for a regular octahedral O\textsubscript{h} moiety [Fe(CN)_6]\textsuperscript{4–}. The Raman spectrum of
electrodeposited Prussian blue\cite{729} is reported to have peaks at 2089, 2123, and 2154 cm$^{-1}$ which is not consistent with the regular octahedral structure, for which only two Raman-active fundamentals, $a_{1g} + e_g$, are predicted. Upon electroreduction these peaks are replaced by features at 2058, 2109, and 2140 cm$^{-1}$ which are assigned to Prussian white. However, Samain et al have recently reported Raman spectra both for 'soluble' and 'insoluble' Prussian blues that are all very similar and quite consistent with the octahedral model, showing the intense $a_{1g}$ mode at 2154 cm$^{-1}$ and the weak $e_g$ mode at 2090 cm$^{-1}$, within \( \pm 2 \text{ cm}^{-1} \).

'Soluble' Prussian blues of approximate formula $M^+\text{Fe}^{III}[\text{Fe}^{II}(\text{CN})_6]^{-}$ can be prepared with other cations, $M^+$, as well as potassium, and many of these can be ion-exchanged because the the cubic cavity containing the cation is calculated to have an interior radius of 182 pm,\cite{730} compared with the following radii due to Shannon and Prewitt:\cite{731}

\[
\begin{array}{cccccc}
\text{Li}^+ & \text{Na}^+ & \text{K}^+ & \text{Rb}^+ & \text{Cs}^+ & \text{NH}_4^+ \\
90 & 116 & 152 & 166 & 181 & 164 & 151 \text{ pm} \\
& 153 & 178 & 186 & 202 & 184 \text{ pm}
\end{array}
\]

(6-coordinate crystal radii)

Thus, a soluble Prussian blue analogue may be obtained with Na$^+$, K$^+$, Rb$^+$, and NH$_4^+$ as cations in the lattice; Cs$^+$ is irreversibly trapped, and Li$^+$ cannot be incorporated at all because it is effectively much larger than the free-ion radius due to its firmly-bound primary hydration shell, Li(OH)$_2$$_4$. The preparation of Prussian blue using lithium salts yields the cation-free ‘insoluble’ form of Prussian blue (see below).\cite{732} Moreover the sodium form can be irreversibly ion-exchanged for potassium, which is preferred.\cite{733} When soluble Prussian blue is formed in the presence of acids, such as HCl, there is evidence that it incorporates some H$_3$O$^+$, which has a radius similar to NH$_4^+$.\cite{734}

As mentioned above, this misnamed ‘soluble’ form is easily dispersed in water as nanoparticles (previously termed a colloid) – a tendency which is believed to be associated with the presence of the cations in the lattice. Replacement of K$^+$ by NH$_4^+$ diminishes the tendency to peptize. ‘Soluble’ Prussian blue may also be rendered less liable to peptization by treatment with a variety of multiply-charged cations, most notably Fe$^{3+}$ and Ni$^{2+}$, which are also believed to be partially exchanged for the K$^+$ ions in the lattice. Rendering the Blue ‘insoluble’ is important, because it confers a greater degree of resistance to decomposition by alkalies.\cite{735}

The toning of cyanotypes by Pb$^{2+}$ or Tl$^+$ salts is very probably due to cation exchange in the cubic voids of the lattice. The incorporation of lead is greatly improved in slightly alkaline conditions (§8.6.1), which
suggests that it may enter the lattice as the singly-charged cation PbOH⁺, which is known to be present in the hydrolytic equilibria for lead(II).

This ability of Prussian blue, which also has a considerable affinity for the singly-charged cation, Tl⁺, has been exploited to provide a sensitive analytical electrode for determining thallium(I) ions in solution.736 Reference has already been made in §3.3 to the effective use of Prussian blue as an antidote for absorbing toxic or dangerous cations such as thallium(I) or radiooesium;737 it has the benefit that no toxic effects of administering Prussian blue have been found either in animals or humans.738

II.3 ‘Insoluble’ Prussian blue

This form results from preparations where the iron(III) salt is in large excess over the hexacyanoferrate(II), i.e. in molar proportions of 4:1 or more. It does not contain potassium ions in significant stoichiometric amounts and, ideally, it has the composition Fe₄[Fe(CN)₆]₃·14H₂O, although the water content is variable, between 14 and 16 molecules. This form has been successfully grown as single crystals, which has enabled Ludi and co-workers to carry out a full 3-dimensional X-ray diffraction study,739 and a neutron diffraction study.740 The structure determined by these authors can be conveniently described as a defect version of the ideal face-centred cubic lattice described above, in which one quarter of the [Fe(II)(CN)₆] groups are absent. Ludi et al. were able to carry out their least squares refinement in space group Pm3m (Oh₁), rather than in the Fm3m (Oh₅) of the ideal Keggin and Miles structure; the fact that the cubic cell, with a = 1017 pm, now appears primitive suggests at least a partial degree of ordering of the lattice vacancies. The cyanide sites thus emptied are reoccupied by extra water molecules to complete the octahedral coordination spheres about the remaining iron(III) centres, leading to an ‘average’ coordination sphere represented by [Fe(III)(NC)₄·5(OH)₂]₁·₅. If the Fe(II)(CN)₆ vacancies are ordered, one per unit cell as is thought by Ludi et al, then one quarter of the iron(III) sites will remain as regular octahedral [Fe(III)(NC)₆]³⁻ and three-quarters will have the distorted octahedral coordination geometry trans-[Fe(III)(NC)₄(OH)₂]⁻. If, in writing the formula, we wish to emphasise the relationship to the ideal cubic lattice of KFe(III)[Fe(II)(CN)₆], but with one quarter of the [Fe(II)(CN)₆]⁴⁻ sites vacant, the stoichiometry may be appropriately represented as Fe(III)[Fe(II)(CN)₆]₁₄·3½H₂O.741
It is possible that hydrolysis by proton loss can occur at the aquated iron(III) sites, effectively increasing the charge on the centres to [Fe\(^{III}\)(NC)\(_4\)(OH)(OH\(_2\))]\(^2-\), or even [Fe\(^{III}\)(NC)\(_4\)(OH\(_2\))]\(^3-\). The extent of this hydrolysis will depend on the pH of the system. It is possible that the dramatic effect of gaseous ammonia on the colour, which is fully reversible, may be due to this deprotonation. It has been noted that the widths of peaks in both infrared spectra and powder X-ray patterns are significantly narrower for specimens of Prussian blue prepared in acidic media.\(^{742}\) The presence of different iron(III) centres in this variety of Prussian blue is believed to be responsible for the broadening and splitting of the absorption band for \(\nu(CN)\) stretching vibrations, which are observable in the infra-red spectrum around 2080 cm\(^{-1}\), compared with the single sharp peak at 2106 cm\(^{-1}\) in the ‘soluble’ form.\(^{743}\)

If each octant cube centre in the unit cell were occupied by one water molecule, and the ‘missing’ cyanides each replaced by one water, there should be a total of 8 (‘zeolytic’) + 6 (‘coordinated’) = 14 water molecules in the unit cell. The neutron diffraction study confirms this, but with the additional proviso that some of the ‘zeolytic’ water may become hydrogen–bonded to the ‘coordinated’ water. A proton n.m.r. study of ‘insoluble’ Prussian blue demonstrates that there are, indeed, three different types of water molecule in the lattice, rather than two, and this is confirmed by thermogravimetric analysis of the thermal dehydration of the substance; but the quantitative findings are not fully in accord with the previous formulation: up to 65°C there is a continuous loss of six ‘zeolytic’ water molecules per unit cell; around 95°C there is a fairly abrupt loss of four ‘lattice’ waters (presumed to be hydrogen–bonded to the coordinated waters), and finally at 125°C there is another stepped loss of four water molecules (presumed to be coordinated in the primary coordination sphere around the iron(III) centres).\(^{744}\) Prussian blue does not begin to decompose thermally until the temperature exceeds 200°C.\(^{745}\) Dehydrated Prussian blue is extremely hygroscopic, taking up water from the atmosphere most readily. This form of Prussian blue can also take up suitably-sized cations from solution; indeed, there is evidence that it is somewhat more effective than the ‘soluble’ form as a detoxifying agent.\(^{746}\)

II.4 Turnbull’s blue

The blue precipitate obtained from the reaction of iron(II) salts with hexacyanoferrate(III) ions is definitely not iron(II) hexacyanoferrate(III), as
was originally thought; instead, irreversible electron transfer between the two iron centres immediately gives an iron(III) hexacyanoferrate(II), essentially the same as Prussian blue. However, it will be convenient to retain the historical name, Turnbull’s blue, when it is important to emphasise the route by which this modification is prepared.

Wilde and co-workers have obtained infra-red spectra to suggest that Turnbull’s blue can also exist in ‘soluble’ and ‘insoluble’ forms, with and without incorporated cation, respectively, but the evidence is indirect. Turnbull’s blue is the least well-investigated of the iron blues by analytical or spectroscopic means, but there is now some evidence emerging that it may differ significantly in composition from both the ‘soluble’ and ‘insoluble’ forms of Prussian blue previously described.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Substance</th>
<th>Formula</th>
<th>(f_r)</th>
<th>Oxidation States</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Soluble Prussian blue</td>
<td>KFe[Fe(CN)₆]₂</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>KFe³⁺[Fe²⁺(CN)₆]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insoluble Prussian blue</td>
<td>Fe₄[Fe(CN)₆]₃</td>
<td>(\frac{3}{4})</td>
<td>Fe³⁺[Fe²⁺(CN)₆]₄</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turnbull’s blue</td>
<td>Fe₃[Fe(CN)₆]₂X</td>
<td>(\frac{2}{3})</td>
<td>Fe³⁺[Fe²⁺(CN)₆]₂X (\frac{1}{3}) X(\frac{2}{3})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prussian white</td>
<td>K₂Fe[Fe(CN)₆]</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>K₂Fe²⁺[Fe²⁺(CN)₆]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Berlin green</td>
<td>[Fe(CN)₆](\frac{5}{6}) +</td>
<td>[Fe(CN)₆](\frac{5}{6}) +</td>
<td>[Fe(CN)₆](\frac{5}{6}) +</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[Fe(CN)₆](\frac{5}{6}) +</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prussian yellow</td>
<td>Fe[Fe(CN)₆]</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Fe³⁺[Fe³⁺(CN)₆]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table II.1 Varieties of Prussian blue and related compounds**

Recently, further light has been shed on the nature of Turnbull’s blue by the Mössbauer spectroscopy of Reguera and co-workers, who find that the relative intensities indicate that the two iron centres in the solid are in the stoichiometric ratio Fe(III):Fe(II) = 3:2, rather than the 1:1 ratio of ‘soluble’ Prussian blue or the 4:3 ratio of the ‘insoluble’ variety. Accordingly, they postulate that an anion must be incorporated into the structure to restore charge neutrality, suggesting formulae for Turnbull’s blue of the type Fe³⁺₂[Fe²⁺(CN)₆]₂⁺X⁻ where X⁻ is a singly charged anion such as OH⁻ or \(\frac{1}{2}SO₄^{2-}\). In keeping with the model based on a defect cubic lattice, this formula can be re-written as Fe³⁺₂[Fe²⁺(CN)₆]₂⁺X⁻, showing that one third of the hexacyanoferrate(II) ions are absent from the perfect cubic structure, giving a lattice that resembles ‘insoluble’ Prussian blue, but with an even greater proportion of vacancies, probably re-occupied by foreign anions and water. The average coordination geometry of the iron(III) centres is [Fe³⁺(NC)₄(OH₂)₂], but this is only a mean of a statistical
distribution over several coordination species. In support of this conjecture, the X-ray diffraction powder patterns for Turnbull's blue and 'insoluble' Prussian blue match rather closely, both having peaks much broader than those for 'soluble' Prussian blue, due to their disordered lattices. There is additional evidence for the incorporation of anions in Prussian blue from X-ray fluorescence element analysis, and infrared spectra. The whole family of Prussian blue related compounds is compared in Table II.1, where f, denotes the fraction of iron(III) sites occupied in the ideal cubic lattice.

II.5 Electronic spectrum of Prussian blue

The substance is a prototype for a whole class of 'mixed oxidation state' compounds, which are all characterised by intense colours. The absorption of light by Prussian blue is due to a strong broad band centred around 700 nm in the red region of the visible spectrum. Different authors vary somewhat in the value they assign to the band maximum, \( \lambda_{\text{max}} \), which may well be a reflection of the variability of the composition of the substance. Indeed, Mortimer and Rosseinsky have proposed that the value of \( \lambda_{\text{max}} \) can be used to characterise the type of Prussian blue, with the 'soluble' variety peaking at \( \lambda_{\text{max}} = 690 \text{ nm} \) (14,500 cm\(^{-1}\)) and the 'insoluble' form at \( \lambda_{\text{max}} = 730 \text{ nm} \) (13,700 cm\(^{-1}\)). This shift in \( \lambda_{\text{max}} \) could be attributed to the differing ligand field splittings in the Fe(III) centres, where N–bonded cyanide ligands are replaced partly by water in the latter compound. An alternative view has been put forward that the apparent shift may be due to partial oxidation of the hexacyanoferrate(II) centres (see below).

Values for the molar decadic extinction coefficient \( \varepsilon \) of the 'soluble' Prussian blue also range rather widely with different investigators; from \( 0.98 \times 10^4 \text{ dm}^3\text{mol}^{-1}\text{cm}^{-1} \) to \( 3 \times 10^4 \text{ dm}^3\text{mol}^{-1}\text{cm}^{-1} \). A value of \( 1.55 \times 10^4 \text{ dm}^3\text{mol}^{-1}\text{cm}^{-1} \), measured for thin films of Prussian blue, will be taken in this work as a mean value for the 'soluble' form.

The interpretation of the electronic spectrum considers the visible bands to be due to charge transfer: the 700 nm absorption corresponds to the energy change arising from the transfer of an electron from the low–spin Fe(II) to the high–spin Fe(III) centre. This transition corresponds to the change in one–electron configurations:

\[
\{\text{Fe}^{\text{III}}(t_{2g}^3e_g^2) \text{ Fe}^{\text{II}}(t_{2g}^6)\} \rightarrow \{\text{Fe}^{\text{II}}(t_{2g}^4e_g^2) \text{ Fe}^{\text{III}}(t_{2g}^5)\}^*
\]
where the star denotes an excited state. The transition is allowed because it involves transfer of an electron from a $t_{2g}$ orbital on one centre to a similar orbital on the other, with no change in net spin. There is also a weaker absorption band at 400 nm (25,000 cm$^{-1}$) in Prussian blue, corresponding to the transition arising from the configuration change:

$$\{\text{Fe}^{III}(t_{2g}^3e_g^2) \text{Fe}^{II}(t_{2g}^6)\} \rightarrow \{\text{Fe}^{III}(t_{2g}^3e_g^3) \text{Fe}^{III}(t_{2g}^5)\}^*$$

Here the electron is transferred from a $t_{2g}$ orbital on one centre to an $e_g$ orbital on the other, which is forbidden by local orthogonality. The difference in energy between the two bands can be seen to be equal to the ligand field splitting (10,500 cm$^{-1}$) for an Fe$^{II}$N$_6$ moiety, which is further evidence for the correct assignment of the iron oxidation states. More precisely expressed, the permitted absorption corresponds to a transition from the totally symmetric ground state, $^6A_{1g}$, to two near-degenerate excited states of $^6T_{1u}$ symmetry.

**II.6 Iron(III) aquapentacyanoferrate(II)**

It has long been known that the monoaqua pentacyanoferrate(II) complex anion can be obtained from hexacyanoferrate(II) by a photoaquation:

$$h\nu + [\text{Fe(CN)}_6^{4-}] + \text{H}_2\text{O} \rightarrow [\text{Fe(CN)}_5(\text{OH}_2)]^{3-} + \text{CN}^-$$

and that this complex anion is also capable of yielding an ‘iron blue’ with iron(III). Only recently, however, has this corresponding ferric aquapentacyanoferrate(II) (FAPCF) been isolated in pure form, as Fe$^{III}$[Fe$^{II}$CN$_5$(OH$_2$)$_2$], and characterised by X-ray diffraction of the powder. The substance exhibits a moderate contraction, but no significant distortion of the cubic lattice. The visible absorption spectrum differs from that of Prussian blue in that the 680 nm band suffers a bathochromic shift to around 780 nm, due to the diminished average ligand field splitting at the aquated iron(II) centres. Visually, this corresponds to a more greenish blue. The electrochemical behaviour resembles that of Prussian blue, showing reversible oxidative and reductive waves at similar potentials. The infrared spectrum of FAPCF is reported to show a strong very broad band at 2060 cm$^{-1}$.

The complex aquated anion [Fe$^{III}$CN$_5$(OH$_2$)$_2$]$^{2-}$ is likewise formed by hydrolysis of hexacyanoferrate(III), promoted by light, acids, or by ‘overoxidation’ of the hexacyanoferrate(III):

$$[\text{Fe(CN)}_6]^{3-} + \text{Cl}_2 + \text{H}_2\text{O} \rightarrow [\text{Fe(CN)}_5(\text{OH}_2)]^{2-} + \text{Cl}^- + \text{CICN}$$
It is probably present in ‘old’ solutions of potassium hexacyanoferrate(III), which discolor from yellow to olive-brown. An early investigation of this problem also noted:

‘Some crystals of potassium ferricyanide have a brownish-green tinge instead of the bright ruby-red colour...due to the presence of a small quantity of the violet aquopentacyanoferrate(III).’

The potassium salts are isomorphous and can co-crystallise as the greenish-brown salt 3K₃[Fe(CN)₆]-K₂[Fe(CN)₅(OH₂)]. The presence of the aquated complex anion may be responsible for some of the colour differences observed between cyanotypes, especially the greener tones of older 19th century specimens made with impure hexacyanoferrate(III), which was often prepared by chlorine oxidation.

II.7 Investigation of cyanotype Prussian blue

The process of forming a traditional negative-working cyanotype, where an iron(II) photoproduct encounters hexacyanoferrate(III) in the sensitizer, corresponds in part to the preparative method for Turnbull’s blue, with the hexacyanoferrate(III) always in excess; however it should also be born in mind that some of the image substance (that which has been ‘solarized’) will result from the re-oxidation of Prussian white by air, which is believed to yield the ‘soluble’ form of Prussian blue. The crucial question for the present investigation is: which of the forms of Prussian blue described above most nearly represents the pigment of a cyanotype? Or are the process and the substance so variable as to make this question meaningless? In situ analysis and spectroscopic investigation of the Prussian blue of a cyanotype are made difficult by the relatively small amounts of the substance present and the predominance of the cellulose substrate. Infrared spectroscopy usually provides a diagnostic ‘fingerprint’ for a substance; although the various types of Prussian blue are not very well differentiated by their infrared spectra, it is possible to distinguish the ‘pure, undiluted’ forms by the stretching vibrations of the cyanide groups, \( \nu(CN) \), as indicated in Table II.2.

In the case of the simple, non-defect, face-centred cubic lattice assumed for ‘soluble’ Prussian blue, Prussian white and Prussian brown, the site symmetry for the Fe(CN)₆ moities is regular octahedral, point group \( O_h \). Vibrational theory leads us to expect a single feature in the \( \nu(CN) \) region of the infrared: the triply degenerate infrared active \( t_{1u} \) normal mode. For the lattices having anion vacancies, the consequent
lowering of site symmetries will give rise to broadening and splitting of this degenerate fundamental, as is seen in the spectra of ‘insoluble’ Prussian blue and Turnbull’s blue which have envelopes containing unresolved bands.

The infrared spectra of cyanotypes, prepared by various formulae, were obtained using a Matson ‘Genesis’ Fourier–transform infrared instrument with diffuse reflectance attachment, at the Chemistry Department of Manchester University.\(^{762}\) Results were found to be essentially the same for all preparations involving the two–component sensitizers, regardless of their composition. All these cyanotype spectra showed a single ν(CN) absorption band peaking at 2090 cm\(^{-1}\) which was broad and had indications of a shoulder at ca. 2060 cm\(^{-1}\); this pattern does not correspond exactly with any of the ‘control’ spectra.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Substance</th>
<th>Formula</th>
<th>ν(CN)/cm(^{-1})</th>
<th>Fe(II) Sites</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Soluble Prussian blue</td>
<td>KFe(^{III})[Fe(^{II})(CN)(_6)].H(_2)O</td>
<td>2106 vs sp</td>
<td>Oh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insoluble Prussian blue</td>
<td>Fe(^{III})[Fe(^{II})(CN)(<em>6)](</em>{3.5}).(\frac{3}{2})H(_2)O</td>
<td>2106 m 2080 vs</td>
<td>Oh ((\frac{1}{4})) D(_{4h}) ((\frac{3}{4}))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turnbull’s blue</td>
<td>Fe(^{III})[Fe(^{II})(CN)(<em>6)](</em>{3/2})X(_{1/2}).H(_2)O</td>
<td>2112 vs 2052 m</td>
<td>Oh ((\frac{1}{2})) D(_{4h}) (?(\frac{3}{2}))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prussian white</td>
<td>K(_2)Fe(^{II})[Fe(^{II})(CN)(_6)]</td>
<td>2085 vs sp</td>
<td>Oh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Berlin green</td>
<td>K(_{10/3})[Fe(^{III})(CN)(<em>6)](</em>{3/2})[Fe(^{II})(CN)(<em>6)](</em>{1/4})</td>
<td>2074 2169</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prussian brown</td>
<td>Fe(^{III})[Fe(^{II})(CN)(_6)]</td>
<td>2175 vs</td>
<td>Oh (Fe(III))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyanotype blue (Herschel)</td>
<td>Fe(^{III})[Fe(^{II})(CN)(_6)]X.nH(_2)O</td>
<td>2090 vs bd 2063 sh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proto–Cyanotype blue (Smee)</td>
<td>Fe(^{III})[Fe(^{II})(CN)(_5)(OH)(_2)]</td>
<td>2060 vs bd</td>
<td>C(_{4v})</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Abbreviations: vs, very strong; m, medium; sp, sharp; bd, broad

**Table II.2 Infrared spectra ν(CN) of Prussian blues and derivatives**

The rather inconclusive inference to be made from these spectra is that ‘cyanotype Prussian blue’ is not identical with any one of the ‘established’ varieties, but it more nearly resembles ‘insoluble’ and Turnbull’s blue than ‘soluble’ Prussian blue. It does not have the regular crystalline structure, but is defective, possibly amorphous, and most of the iron(III) centres are likely to be aquated, and some partially
hydrolysed. Prussian blue nanoparticles synthesised by the same photochemical method as used in new cyanotypes have been synthesised in emulsions and studied by electron microscopy, electron diffraction and energy–dispersive x–ray analysis. The unit cell parameter was found to be 1013 pm and the TEM showed regular cubic Prussian blue nanoparticles, 12 nm in size. The visible absorption band was broad 680 nm and the infrared spectrum showed a peak at 2069 cm$^{-1}$.

The only cyanotypes that produced a significantly different infrared spectrum were those prepared from the single–component sensitizer of potassium hexacyanoferrate(III) alone: the peak here is at 2060 cm$^{-1}$. This lower frequency is an indication of an increase in the $t_{2g} \rightarrow \pi^*$ back–bonding from iron(II) d orbitals to the antibonding molecular orbitals of the cyanide, which would be consistent with the complex anion being aquated $[Fe(CN)_5(OH_2)]^{2-}$, as might be expected from the known photochemistry of hexacyanoferrate(III). Further evidence supporting this supposition comes from the visible spectra.

UV–Visible absorption spectra (220 – 880 nm) of these varieties of cyanotype were obtained using a Shimadzu UV–260 instrument in reflectance mode at the Chemistry Department of Manchester University. There is little difference between the specimens prepared from the various two–component sensitizers, all show a broad absorption peaking at ca. 700 nm. But, once again the cyanotypes prepared from potassium hexacyanoferrate(III) alone are significantly different, in that the band maximum is shifted to 780 nm. Taken together with the infrared spectra, this evidence suggests that the form of Prussian blue produced by the ‘proto–cyanotype’ process is the variety with the aquated anion, FAPCF, $Fe^{III}[Fe^{II}(CN)_5(OH_2)]$.

II.8 Hydrolysis of Prussian blue

Prussian blue is stable in the presence of acids of moderate strength, down to pH 1 or 2, below which there is some risk of release of toxic HCN, but it is very readily decomposed by alkalies at pH 10 and above, which hydrolyse the iron(III), and take the hexacyanoferrate(II) into solution, thus:

$$Fe[Fe(CN)_6]^- + 3OH^- \rightarrow 'Fe(OH)_3' + [Fe(CN)_6]^{4-}$$

‘Ferric hydroxide’, which is more accurately described as a precipitated hydrous iron(III) oxide gel, only retains the capability of being dissolved by dilute acids while freshly precipitated; immediate
acidification can therefore reverse this hydrolysis reaction, regenerating Prussian blue. However, ‘ferric hydroxide’ slowly transforms, over a period of a few days, to more highly polymerized crystalline forms, such as goethite, $\alpha$–FeO(OH), which cannot be readily dissolved in dilute acids. With time, therefore, the alkaline destruction of Prussian blue becomes permanent and irreversible.

This is an appropriate point to note that the ‘bleaching’ of Prussian blue by a concentrated solution of an oxalate is neither a hydrolysis nor a reduction, but a destruction of the Prussian blue lattice by the small oxalate ion penetrating it and complexing the iron(III); the products are completely soluble:

$$\text{Fe}[\text{Fe(CN)}_6]^{2–} + 3\text{C}_2\text{O}_4^{2–} \rightarrow [\text{Fe(C}_2\text{O}_4)_3]^{3–} + [\text{Fe(CN)}_6]^{4+}$$

A 20% solution of potassium oxalate cleanly decolorises and dissolves Prussian blue, and can be used for stain-removal, writing or drawing on cyanotypes, or, at a lower concentration, for ‘reducing’ the blue density, provided the soluble products are removed afterwards by a brief wash in water.

II.9 Prussian white

The colourless, insoluble reduction product of Prussian blue is iron(II) hexacyanoferrate(II), otherwise known as Prussian white, Berlin white, Everitt’s salt or Williamson’s salt. If the two types of iron centre are equal in number, as is generally believed, the formula must incorporate two cationic charges for electroneutrality: $\text{M}_2\text{Fe}^{II}[\text{Fe}^{II}(\text{CN})_6]$, where M is a singly charged cation, usually $\text{K}^+$ or $\text{NH}_4^+$.

The substance is readily oxidised by air, in the presence of water molecules, to Prussian blue:

$$4\text{Fe}[\text{Fe(CN)}_6]^{2–} + \text{O}_2 + 2\text{H}_2\text{O} \rightarrow 4\text{Fe}[\text{Fe(CN)}_6]^{1–} + 4\text{OH}^–$$

Many other oxidants will also effect this transformation, e.g. chlorate, bromate, dichromate, permanganate, and hydrogen peroxide:

$$2\text{Fe}[\text{Fe(CN)}_6]^{2–} + \text{H}_2\text{O}_2 \rightarrow 2\text{Fe}[\text{Fe(CN)}_6]^{1–} + 2\text{OH}^–$$

There is analytical evidence that the Prussian blue formed by oxidation of Prussian white is of the ‘soluble’ – i.e. cation-containing – variety. It should be especially noted that all these oxidations generate hydroxyl ions, tending to make the system more alkaline, and this is supported by some analytical evidence for the formation of hydroxide in the system. If hydrolysis of the resulting Prussian blue is to be avoided,
such re-oxidations are best carried out under acidic conditions. The electrochemical reduction of Prussian blue by cyclic voltammetry (see below) shows that the process is fully reversible provided an adequate supply of suitable cations is available to diffuse in and out of the lattice to maintain charge neutrality.

The structure of Prussian white has not been fully determined, due to lack of single crystals, but Keggin and Miles reported observing a cubic X-ray diffraction pattern for the powder, similar to that of Prussian blue itself, and with a slightly larger lattice parameter, for which a value of 1036 pm has been proposed. It is generally supposed, therefore, that the structure is regular face-centred cubic, like that proposed for ‘soluble’ Prussian blue, but with all the octant cube centres, which have a slightly larger radius of 192 pm, occupied by cations, usually K⁺ or NH₄⁺, although H₃O⁺ is also a possibility. The absence of colour in the substance is obviously due to the lack of any facile transition involving inter-valence electron charge transfer.

II.10 Berlin green

Oxidation of Prussian blue by nitric acid results in ‘Berlin green’ or ‘Prussian green’, which can also be obtained by heating iron(III) chloride and potassium hexacyanoferrate(III) in the dark, or by the action of chlorine on a boiling solution of potassium hexacyanoferrate(II). It was originally formulated as iron(III) hexacyanoferrate(III), Fe[Fe(CN)₆], but this presumption is now known to be incorrect. Keggin and Miles found its X-ray powder diffraction pattern to be cubic, with similar unit cell dimensions to Prussian blue, and presumed that the lattice was the same as that proposed for ‘soluble’ Prussian blue and Prussian white, but with no cations at all in the octant cube centres.

However, this green substance turns out to be an intermediate, which always contains some iron(II); from electrochemical studies the complex anion has been formulated as:

\[ [\text{Fe}^{\text{III}}(\text{CN})_6]_{\frac{2}{3}}[\text{Fe}^{\text{II}}(\text{CN})_6]_{\frac{1}{3}}^{10/3} \]

although the extent of oxidation of Prussian blue has been shown to be cation dependent, and alternative formulations have been proposed.

It was first pointed out by de Wet and Rolle that a mixture of iron(III) chloride and hexacyanoferrate(III) is evidently powerfully oxidising, because the chloride anion is oxidised with the evolution of chlorine:
\[
\text{FeCl}_3 + [\text{Fe(CN)}_6]^{3-} \rightarrow \text{Berlin Green} + \text{Cl}_2
\]

which, with excess ferric chloride, leads to the formation of Prussian blue and more chlorine. For this reason, any inclusion of ferric ions in the developer for a cyanotype leads to blue fogging of the background, due to reaction with excess hexacyanoferrate(III).

II.11 Prussian brown or yellow

The brown mixture of iron(III) and hexacyanoferrate(III) also rapidly turns blue when spotted onto cellulose filter paper or any other oxidisable substrate. Ferric ion in the presence of hexacyanoferrate(III) has a very high oxidising power, much stronger than either ion separately, because the insolubility of the reduction product, Prussian blue, drives the reaction and makes the redox potential about +1.5V, and so it forms in the presence of almost any oxidisable substance. This has provided the basis for a qualitative analytical spot-test — a "classic reaction for the detection of H\textsubscript{2}O\textsubscript{2}" — but it must be a very non-specific unless H\textsubscript{2}O\textsubscript{2} is the only oxidisable species present.

It has been suggested that in this system bound cyanide ions themselves may be oxidised, even in the solid state:

\[
\text{Fe}^{3+} + [\text{Fe(CN)}_6]^{3-} + 2\text{H}_2\text{O} \rightarrow \text{Fe}^{2+} + [\text{Fe(CN)}_5]^{3-} + \text{NH}_4^+ + \text{CO}_2
\]

accounting for the fact that solid iron(III) hexacyanoferrate(III) cannot be isolated from the aqueous system, and the product is always green.

Recently, the sophisticated techniques of cyclic scanning voltammetry (see below) have enabled the preparation of pure Prussian yellow, presumed to correspond to Fe\textsuperscript{III}[Fe\textsuperscript{III}(CN)\textsubscript{6}], on a platinum electrode surface when the potential reaches ca. +1.5 V on the Hydrogen Scale. This potential is high enough to bring about the oxidation of water, which provides another reason why the substance cannot be isolated in pure form from aqueous solution:

\[
4\text{Fe}[\text{Fe(CN)}_6] + 6\text{H}_2\text{O} \rightarrow 4(\text{H}_3\text{O})\text{Fe}[\text{Fe(CN)}_6] + \text{O}_2
\]

II.12 Electrochemical studies of redox behaviour

The standard redox potentials for iron(III)/iron(II) couples only have a limited utility when applied to the Prussian blue family of substances, owing to the large influence that insolubility has on the positions of equilibria. For instance, it was once argued that the formulation of
Prussian blue itself as iron(III) hexacyanoferrate(II) was contrary to the standard redox potentials:

\[ E^{0}(\text{Fe}^{3+}/\text{Fe}^{2+}) = +0.771 \text{ V} \]
\[ E^{0}([\text{Fe(CN)}_{6}]^{3-}/[\text{Fe(CN)}_{6}]^{4-}) = +0.356 \text{ V} \]

which would imply that \( \text{Fe}^{3+} \) will oxidise hexacyanoferrate(II), and that the stable form of the compound ought to be iron(II) hexacyanoferrate(III). Clearly the iron(III)/iron(II) redox potentials are considerably raised from their standard values by the formation of insoluble reaction products such as Berlin green and Prussian blue, so that a mixture of \( \text{Fe}^{3+} \) and \( [\text{Fe(CN)}_{6}]^{3-} \) becomes capable of oxidising chloride ions:

\[ E^{0}(\text{Cl}_2/\text{Cl}^{-}) = +1.358 \text{ V} \]

or cellulose:

\[ E^{0}(\text{RCHO}, 2\text{H}^{+}/\text{RCH}_2\text{OH}) = +0.18 \text{ V} \]

The magnitude of this insolubility effect on the iron(III)/iron(II) redox couples is highlighted by the fact that the reverse reaction occurs under ‘standard’ conditions: hexacyanoferrate(III) may be prepared from hexacyanoferrate(II) by oxidation with chlorine gas:

\[ \text{Cl}_2 + [\text{Fe(CN)}_6]^{4-} \rightarrow [\text{Fe(CN)}_6]^{3-} + \text{Cl}^{-} \]

Owing to the high insolubility of Prussian blue (solubility product, \( K_s \approx 10^{-41} \)) modifying the standard potentials,\(^776\) the electrochemistry has to be studied by cyclic voltammetry of the solid coated on an inert electrode surface dipped into suitable electrolytes. It was first shown by Neff in 1978 that a platinum electrode can be coated with Prussian blue.\(^777\) Since then, thin films of the substance, prepared by reductive electrodeposition from an electrolyte solution containing iron(III) and hexacyanoferrate(III), have been extensively studied, because of the potential commercial applications for electrochromic display devices.\(^778\) The thin films so deposited have coating weights comparable with those obtained in cyanotypes. The precise nature of the Prussian blue obtained electrochemically has been disputed, but it is now thought that the ‘insoluble’ variety is deposited initially for kinetic reasons connected with faster flocculation, but the process of reductive cycling of the electrode through a voltage range in a potassium ion electrolyte leads to its conversion to the ‘soluble’ form, incorporating potassium ions, which is the more thermodynamically stable,\(^779\) although there is evidence from infra-red spectroscopy that this conversion may not be complete.\(^780\) The voltammograms show anodic waves, occurring approximately at the...
following values, expressed on a scale relative to the Standard Hydrogen Electrode:

\[
E(\text{Fe}^{\text{III}}[\text{Fe}^{\text{II}}(\text{CN})_6]^2^- / \text{Fe}^{\text{II}}[\text{Fe}^{\text{II}}(\text{CN})_6]) = +0.46 \text{ V} \quad \text{(White → Blue)}
\]

\[
E(\text{Berliner Green} / \text{Fe}^{\text{III}}[\text{Fe}^{\text{II}}(\text{CN})_6]) = +1.17 \text{ V} \quad \text{(Blue → Green)}
\]

\[
E(\text{Fe}^{\text{III}}[\text{Fe}^{\text{III}}(\text{CN})_6] / \text{Berlin Green}) \approx +1.5 \text{ V} \quad \text{(Green → Yellow)}
\]

The first two waves are fully reversible in an appropriate electrolyte, for instance the White → Blue transition has been cycled as many as \(10^7\) times in a single sample; but the last oxidation wave to Prussian yellow is irreversible. Although these potentials are not strictly comparable with standard redox potentials, they do convey a qualitative idea of the redox chemistry, and explain why Prussian blue is the most stable member of this family of substances. The anodic oxidation wave occurring at a potential of ca. +0.46 V on the Standard Hydrogen Electrode scale implies that Prussian blue, in its ground-state, is not significantly oxidising in general chemical terms; it also explains why Prussian white is readily oxidised by air because \(E^0(\text{O}_2, 4\text{H}^+ / 2\text{H}_2\text{O}) = +1.229 \text{ V}\), and why, by the same token, Prussian yellow, with a potential of +1.5 V, can oxidise water to oxygen gas, as was noted above.

It has recently been shown that microcrystalline solid particles of Prussian blue or Turnbull’s blue, prepared by conventional aqueous precipitation, can be mechanically attached to suitable electrodes and that they also display very similar redox properties to the thin films of Prussian blue generated electrochemically, so the observations summarised above also seem generally valid for the ‘bulk material’.782
Fig. II A cyanotype print featured on the cover of the American Chemical Society's *Journal of Chemical Education* for May 2008, which contains an article by the author on Prussian blue.
Appendix III Photochemistry of Cyanotype

The phenomenology of the cyanotype process has not yet received a full chemical explanation, nor has its mechanism been completely elucidated. Published accounts agree in outline that photo-induced reduction of iron(III) to iron(II) is the primary reaction, and the iron(II) then reacts with hexacyanoferrate(III) to give ‘Turnbull’s blue’; but this blue was long believed, mistakenly, to be iron(II) hexacyanoferrate(III).\textsuperscript{783,784,785,786,787} It has not previously been pointed out that the photochemically-produced iron(II) is still coordinated by carboxylates, and must be divested of its ligands before it can be incorporated into the Turnbull’s blue lattice. Furthermore, the extensive ‘solarization’, or tonal reversal which is observed when most cyanotype sensitizers are well-exposed, has received explanations which are neither in agreement with one another, nor photochemically plausible. None of the existing texts gives any account of the more recent commercial blueprint sensitizers, called Type B and Type C, which operate on chemical principles somewhat different to the traditional Type A.

It is the author’s conviction that the solarization of cyanotypes observed during the printing exposure has a commonality with the photochemical fading of processed cyanotypes. Both phenomena become explicable on the basis that \textit{Prussian blue itself is a highly photoactive substance – but only when in intimate contact with an electron donor}. The eventual purpose of this Appendix is to offer some background to, and evidence for, this assertion, which will help remove apparent contradictions in the anecdotal evidence regarding the stability of Prussian blue and the fading and reversal of blueprints and cyanotypes. However, the appropriate point to begin this appendix is with a detailed account of the photochemistry underpinning the cyanotype sensitizers, as far as it is currently understood.

III.1 Light-sensitive iron(III) carboxylates

Photosensitivity has been noted in a number of salts or, more properly, complexes of iron(III) with the carboxylic acids which are listed in the Table III.1; many of these occur naturally in the plant kingdom, most notably oxalic, citric, and tartaric acids. On irradiating the iron(III) salts or complexes of these acids with light having some blue or ultra-violet content, electron charge is transferred from ligand to metal: the iron(III)
is reduced to iron(II) and the ligand subsequently undergoes oxidative decarboxylation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Carboxylic Acid</th>
<th>Structure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>oxalic acid</td>
<td>COOH.COOH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glyoxylic acid</td>
<td>CHO.COOH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>formic acid</td>
<td>HCOOH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pyruvic acid</td>
<td>CH₃CO.COOH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lactic acid</td>
<td>CH₃CH(OH)COOH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phenyllactic acid</td>
<td>CH₃C(C₆H₅)(OH)COOH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>citric acid</td>
<td>CH₂COOH.C(OH)COOH.CH₂COOH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isocitric acid</td>
<td>CH(OH)COOH.CHCOOH.CH₂COOH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tartaric acid</td>
<td>CH(OH)COOH.CH(OH)COOH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>malic acid</td>
<td>CH(OH)COOH.CH₂COOH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glycolic acid</td>
<td>CH₂(OH)COOH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mandelic acid</td>
<td>C₆H₅CH(OH)COOH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hydroxybutyric acid</td>
<td>CH₂CH₂CH(OH)COOH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>malonic acid</td>
<td>HOOCCH₂COOH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>succinic acid</td>
<td>HOOCCH₂.CH₂COOH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fumaric acid</td>
<td>HOOCCH=CHCOOH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aconitic acid</td>
<td>HOOCCH₂C(COOH)=CHCOOH</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table III.1 Carboxylic acids having photosensitive iron(III) salts

It appears that one structural feature of such ligands that enhances photosensitivity, but is not essential for it in all cases, is the presence of an α-hydroxy group, which enables the oxidative decarboxylation to proceed without leaving behind an energetically unfavourable carbonium ion. Thus ferric acetate, by contrast, shows no evidence of photoactivity at all, and the succinate has only low sensitivity.

A general mechanism for the photochemistry of the α-hydroxycarboxylato-iron(III) salts was first proposed by Balzani and Carrassiti:⁷⁸⁸

\[ hν + [Fe^{III}(RCH(OH)COO)]^{2+} \rightarrow [Fe^{II}(RCH(OH)COO⁻)]^{2+} \]

\[ Fe^{III} + [Fe^{II}(RCH(OH)COO⁻)]^{2+} \rightarrow 2Fe^{II} + RCHO + CO₂ + H⁺ \]

In a number of cases for the acids listed above, the expected ketonic oxidation products have been identified. The primary photochemical reaction is assumed to be an intramolecular redox process in the complex caused by electron transfer from a coordinated anion to iron(III);
the radical formed in the primary process can then reduce an unexcited complex, leading to the formation of the final products with a theoretical quantum yield (in terms of Fe\(^{2+}\)) of \(\phi = 2.0\), but \(\phi\) is generally observed to be lower than this owing to competition from the reverse dark reaction.

![Fig. III.1 Quantum yield of Fe(C\(_2\)O\(_4\))\(_3^{2-}\)](image)

### III.2 Quantitative aspects of the photochemistry

The yield of photoproduct for an iron–based process has been calculated for typical parameters in a platinum/palladium sensitizer.\(^7\)\(^8\)\(^9\) To obtain a full scale image, exposure times in the order of two minutes were predicted for a UVA light source delivering a power flux of 50 W/m\(^2\) at a wavelength of 365 nm. This calculation is born out in practice. A similar approximate calculation for cyanotype, where the formation of the Prussian blue image is not so efficient, now follows.

The exposure, \(It\), needed to bring about photochemical change in \(m\) moles of substance is given approximately by:

\[
It = mNh\sqrt{c}/\lambda f
\]

Where:
\[ I = \text{irradiance in } \text{W/m}^2 \]
\[ t = \text{exposure time in } \text{s} \]
\[ m = \text{number of moles of substance transformed by light} \]
\[ N = \text{Avogadro’s number} = 6.023 \times 10^{23} \text{ mol}^{-1} \]
\[ h = \text{Planck’s constant} = 6.626 \times 10^{-34} \text{ J s} \]
\[ c = \text{speed of light} = 2.998 \times 10^8 \text{ m/s} \]
\[ A = \text{area of normal surface irradiated in } \text{m}^2 \]
\[ \lambda = \text{wavelength of radiation in } \text{m} \text{ (assumed monochromatic)} \]
\[ \phi = \text{quantum efficiency of the photoactive species at wavelength } \lambda \]
\[ f = \text{fraction of the incident radiation absorbed by the photoactive substance at wavelength } \lambda \text{ (} f \text{ is assumed, for simplicity, to be independent of the exposure – an assumption that will only be good for small changes).}^{790} \]

Fig. III.2 UV–Visible absorption spectrum of Fe(C₂O₄)₃²⁻

For a two–component system, in which \( \varepsilon_P \) and \( C_P \) denote the molar absorptivity and molar concentration of the photoactive component, \( P \), and \( \varepsilon_F \) and \( C_F \) denote the same for the inert filter, \( F \), the fraction of light absorbed by \( P \) in the sensitized layer is given by:

\[
f = (1 - 10^{-D}) \varepsilon_P C_P \frac{d}{D}
\]
where the absorbance or optical density $D$ of the layer, assuming the Beer–Lambert law holds, is given by:

$$D = (\varepsilon_P C_P + \varepsilon_F C_F) \cdot d$$

where $d$ is the layer thickness in cm, but cancels out in the expression for $f$. In cyanotype sensitized layers, $f$ is strongly wavelength–dependent owing to the intense absorption spectrum of the hexacyanoferrate(III) anion, which acts as an ‘internal filter’. Knowing the absorption spectra of the two components, figs. III.2 & III.3 $P$ (trisoxalatoferrate) and $F$ (hexacyanoferrate) and the coating weight of the sensitizer, $f$ can be calculated at various wavelengths. At 365 nm, for a typical cyanotype coating, $f = 0.65$, but this falls off rapidly towards longer wavelengths as the absorption of hexacyanoferrate increases and that of trisoxalatoferrate decreases, so that at 420 nm, $f = 0.03$.

![Graph of Fe(CN)$_6^{3-}$ absorption spectrum](image)

**Fig. III.3 UV–Visible absorption spectrum of Fe(CN)$_6^{3-}$**

If the waveband of useful available actinic light is taken as 320–410 nm, a median value is $\lambda = 365$ nm, (corresponding with the atomic mercury line at the maximum emission of most UVA lamps). Then, inserting values for the physical constants:

$$Nhc/\lambda = 3.28 \times 10^5 \text{ J/mol}$$
We may estimate an ‘order of magnitude’ figure for the limiting maximum sensitivity to light of any photochemical system without amplification, if we assume optimum conditions for the photochemistry by setting $\phi = f = 1$, giving:

$$\text{It} = 3.28 \times 10^5 \ m/A \ J/m^2$$

If it is further assumed that all the photoproduct is converted into image pigment, and that a just-perceptible image ($D_{\text{min}} = 0.02$) is provided by a coating weight of pigment $m/A = 10^{-4} \ \text{mol/m}^2$,\(^7\) we arrive at a minimum exposure:

$$\text{It} = 32.8 \ J/m^2$$

To obtain a tone of mid-density, would require about ten to twenty times this much exposure,\(^7\) to obtain the maximum optical density, $D_{\text{max}}$, corresponding to an image coating weight of about $m/A = 10^{-2} \ \text{mol/m}^2$,\(^7\) would require about 3000 J/m\(^2\). These figures for the sensitivity at the limiting assumption of $\phi = f = 1$ may be compared with the calculations of Brinckman et al, who arrived at a typical figure of only 82 J/m\(^2\) for an image of maximum density.\(^7\)

In the case of cyanotype, the molar coating weight, $W$, of Prussian blue needed to provide a maximum optical reflectance density ($D_{\text{max}} \sim 1.55$) may be calculated from its molar extinction coefficient, or absorptivity, $\varepsilon$.\(^7\)

$$W = 5 \ D_{\text{max}}/\varepsilon$$

inserting a value of $\varepsilon$ for 'soluble' Prussian blue (Appendix II.5):

$$\varepsilon = 1.55 \times 10^4 \ \text{dm}^3/\text{mol/cm}$$

the image coating weight $W$ for a typical $D_{\text{max}} \sim 1.55$ is then:

$$W = 5 \times 10^{-4} \ \text{mol/m}^2$$

but we cannot identify this with the coating weight, $m/A$, of the photoproduct because the reaction forming Prussian blue from the iron(II) oxalato complex may be less than 100% efficient. (We will assume the RMM for 'soluble' Prussian blue, requiring one mole of Fe(II) photoproduct per mole of SPB.

For a UVA source delivering 50 W/m\(^2\), the time required in practice for a full exposure of such a cyanotype sensitizer is found to be about two minutes, corresponding to an exposure $\text{lt} = 6000 \ J/m^2$. This would be
sufficient to produce an approximate photoproduct coating weight of $m/A = 10^{-2} \text{ mol/m}^2$. (Expressed per mole of Fe(II)).

Clearly the performance of the sensitizer falls well short of the ideal in converting iron(II) photoproduct into pigment. Some of the light may be absorbed by the self-masking effect of the Prussian blue product as it is formed. It is also instructive to compare the coating weight of image pigment with the original coating weight of the sensitizer before exposure and processing. For a typical coating, experience shows that an appropriately-sized paper will absorb, per square meter, ca. 25 cm$^3$ of sensitizer solution, which has a concentration, typically, of 0.3 M, giving a sensitizer molar coating weight of $7.5 \times 10^{-3} \text{ mol/m}^2$. Comparison with the value found for the coating weight, $W$, of Prussian blue actually formed shows that, even for the maximum densities, only about 6% of the sensitizer is converted into image substance.?

**III.3 The Jones–Condit Equation**

The standard camera–image equation connecting subject luminance with image–forming illumination at the focal plane is:

$$E = L(1-f/u)^2(\cos \theta)^4 V T F/4A^2$$

Where:
- $E$ is the illumination at the focal plane in lux
- $L$ is the subject luminance in apostilbs
- $f$ is the lens focal length in m
- $u$ is the subject distance in m
- $\theta$ is the ‘off-axis’ angle (assumed to be 12°)
- $V$ is the vignetting factor (assumed to be 1.0)
- $T$ is the lens transmittance (assumed to be 0.9)
- $F$ is the flare factor (assumed to be 1.03)
- $A$ is the lens aperture $f/d$

Taking the case where the subject is focused at infinity, and inserting approximate values for the other parameters we get:

$$E = 0.212 \frac{L}{A^2} \text{ lux}$$

Which is the usual numerical form of the Jones–Condit equation.

Now, converting from illuminance, $E$, to actinic irradiance, $I$, and taking the subject to be mid-grey, reflectivity 0.18, and irradiated at an average actinic solar value of 38 W/m$^2$ we get:

$$I = 1.45/A^2 \text{ W/m}^2$$
Inserting the value of \( \text{It} \) from Appendix I, we find the exposure time, \( t \), to produce a mid-density image is given by:

\[
\begin{align*}
  t &= 258 \text{ A}^2 \text{ seconds} \\
  t &= 4 \text{ A}^2 \text{ minutes}
\end{align*}
\]

as a convenient approximation for the ‘order of magnitude’ calculations.

**III.4 Photochemistry of trisoxalatoferrate(III)**

Of the several photosensitive carboxylato–complexes of iron(III), the trisoxalatoferrate(III) anion is well–characterised by the determination of its structure, both in the solid and in aqueous solution.\(^{798}\) As the potassium or ammonium salt, its photochemistry has been by far the most extensively investigated,\(^{799}\) and it provides the basis for a well–known chemical actinometer.\(^{800}\) The stoichiometry of the overall photochemistry is:

\[
\text{hv} + 2[\text{Fe(C}_2\text{O}_4)_3]^{3-} \rightarrow 2[\text{Fe(C}_2\text{O}_4)_2]^{2-} + \text{C}_2\text{O}_4^{2-} + 2\text{CO}_2
\]

The measured quantum yield per mole of iron(II) formed in aqueous solution is approximately 1.2 for radiation of wavelengths between 250 and 420 nm, falling slightly to 0.9 at 500 nm, but very sharply thereafter.\(^{801}\) For the photolysis of the potassium salt in the crystalline solid state, however, the quantum yield is significantly lower,\(^{802}\) and the iron(II) photoproduct does not appear to be the simple oxalate, \( \text{FeC}_2\text{O}_4 \), but may be a bridged dimer, \( \text{K}_6[\text{Fe}^{\text{II}}_2(\text{C}_2\text{O}_4)_5] \).\(^{803}\)

A mechanism for the photolysis in aqueous solution was first suggested by Hatchard and Parker; it proceeds from the initial formation of a radical anion by electron transfer from one oxalate ligand to the iron(III), reducing it to iron(II):\(^{804}\)

\[
\text{hv} + [\text{Fe}^{\text{III}}(\text{C}_2\text{O}_4)_3]^{3-} \rightarrow [\text{Fe}^{\text{II}}(\text{C}_2\text{O}_4)_2(\cdot \text{C}_2\text{O}_4)]^{3-}
\]

The ligand radical will be in dissociative equilibrium with the complex:

\[
[\text{Fe}^{\text{II}}(\text{C}_2\text{O}_4)_2(\cdot \text{C}_2\text{O}_4)]^{3-} = [\text{Fe}^{\text{II}}(\text{C}_2\text{O}_4)_2]^{2-} + \cdot \text{C}_2\text{O}_4^{-}
\]

Reaction of the radical anion, \( \cdot \text{C}_2\text{O}_4^{-} \), or even its partially coordinated complex, with a further molecule of the original iron(III) complex enables the transfer of the second electron from the ligand, which is then lost as two molecules of carbon dioxide, leaving another mole of the iron(II) oxalato complex:

\[
[\text{Fe}^{\text{III}}(\text{C}_2\text{O}_4)_3]^{3-} + \cdot \text{C}_2\text{O}_4^{-} \rightarrow [\text{Fe}^{\text{II}}(\text{C}_2\text{O}_4)_2]^{2-} + \text{C}_2\text{O}_4^{2-} + 2\text{CO}_2
\]
The quantum yield for ferrioxalate photoreduction in this process should ideally be \( \phi = 2 \); but the competing reverse dark reaction tends to diminish this. The quantum yield is found to be largely independent of pH. Under acidic conditions, ca. pH 2, the colour of a solution of trisoxalatoferrate(III) changes from emerald green to light yellow, corresponding to the formation, as the predominant species, of the hydrated complex ion \([\text{Fe}^{III}(\text{C}_2\text{O}_4)_2(\text{H}_2\text{O})_2]^-\) which may be isolated as a crystalline solid with suitable large cations; it is still light-sensitive with approximately the same quantum yield.\(^{805}\)

The iron(II) oxalato-complex photoproduct is a moderate reducing agent as can be seen from its redox potential:

\[
E^0([\text{Fe(C}_2\text{O}_4)_3]^{3-}/[\text{Fe(C}_2\text{O}_4)_2]^{2-}) = +0.02 \text{ V}
\]

and it is capable of liberating ‘noble’ metals from their complexes, kinetic factors permitting, thus:

\[
[\text{MX}_4]^{2-} + 2[\text{Fe}^{II}(\text{C}_2\text{O}_4)_2]^{2-} + 2\text{H}_2\text{O} \rightarrow \text{M} + 4\text{X}^- + 2[\text{Fe}^{III}(\text{C}_2\text{O}_4)_2(\text{H}_2\text{O})_2]^{-}
\]

That the noble metal complexes or salts are reducible thermodynamically is evident from their large positive redox potentials:

\[
\begin{align*}
E(\text{PtCl}_4^{2-}/\text{Pt}) &= +0.73 \text{ V} \\
E(\text{PdCl}_4^{2-}/\text{Pd}) &= +0.62 \text{ V} \\
E(\text{Ag}^+/\text{Ag}) &= +0.80 \text{ V} \\
E(\text{Hg}^{2+}/\text{Hg}) &= +0.85 \text{ V} \\
E(\text{AuCl}_4^-/\text{Au}) &= +1.00 \text{ V}
\end{align*}
\]

Photographic images have been printed by this means in platinum, palladium, silver, mercury and gold. In principle, complexes of ruthenium, rhodium, rhenium, osmium, and iridium are also reducible, but their use for imaging is inhibited by kinetic factors in some cases, and by sheer expense in others.

**III.5 Composition of ammonium iron(III) citrate**

This substance has been available since the 1840s in a variety of ill-characterised forms, see §4.3. The pharmacopoeias listed it traditionally as *Ferri et Ammoniae Citras* and recognised that the ‘...want of chemical compactness, the loose state in which the iron is combined, precludes their recognition as well-defined chemical compounds.’\(^{806}\) As a convenient source of biologically assimilable iron, it has been used extensively in iron-deficiency therapy.\(^{807}\) It is usually obtained as glassy amorphous flakes – the ‘scale salts’ of iron – which can have an iron
content ranging from 14% to 28%, the colour varying correspondingly from a light green to a deep red–brown as the iron:citrate ratio increases. All cyanotypes prior to 1897 were made with varieties of the ‘brown’ scale salt, for which Valenta gave the analysis shown in Table III.2. The so-called ‘green’ salt was first prepared in 1897 by Valenta,\(^8\) who gave the analysis as conforming to the composition shown in Table III.2, in which cit\(^4^-\) represents the fully deprotonated citrate anion \(\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{O}_7^{4-}\), and Hcit\(^3^-\) denotes the tribasic anion \(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{O}_7^{3-}\). L.P. Clerc, in a later publication (1937), gives somewhat different formulations of the two varieties,\(^8\) but in a subsequent edition of his manual (1954) he declines to offer any formulae at all, implying just how “ill-characterised” these salts must be. Most present-day catalogues of the chemical supply houses offer a product described as the ‘green’ salt which contains rather more than 14% iron – commonly up to about 18% – and this product frequently does not appear green at all, but light brown. However, it appears to perform well enough as a sensitizer, especially if excess citric acid is added to redress the ratio in the composition. Many present-day varieties of the ‘brown’ salt likewise offered in the chemical catalogues are stated to contain much more iron than 19% – even up to 28% in one instance. The variety used in the experimental work described in §9 had an iron content of 19% like that of the 19th century product.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Formula</th>
<th>FW</th>
<th>Fe % w/w</th>
<th>FW per Fe</th>
<th>Mole Fe:cit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Brown form</strong> (Valenta)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(4\text{Fe(Hcit).3(NH}_4\text{)(Hcit).3Fe(OH)}_3)</td>
<td>2030</td>
<td>19.26</td>
<td>290</td>
<td>7 : 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Green form</strong> (Valenta)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(5\text{Fe(Hcit).2(NH}_4\text{)(Hcit).NH}_4\text{(H}3\text{cit).2H}_2\text{O} )</td>
<td>1956</td>
<td>14.27</td>
<td>391</td>
<td>5 : 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Brown form</strong> (Clerc)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\text{Fe(Hcit).}(\text{NH}_4\text{)(H}3\text{cit).Fe(OH)}_3\cdot3\text{H}_2\text{O} )</td>
<td>615</td>
<td>18.16</td>
<td>308</td>
<td>2 : 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Green form</strong> (Clerc)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2\text{Fe(Hcit).}(\text{NH}_4\text{)}_3\text{(Hcit)} )</td>
<td>733</td>
<td>15.29</td>
<td>367</td>
<td>2 : 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table III.2 Analyses of ammonium ferric citrates**

\(\text{cit}^4^- = \text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{O}_7^{4-}\) \(\text{Hcit}^3^- = \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{O}_7^{3-}\) \(\text{H}_3\text{cit}^- = \text{C}_6\text{H}_7\text{O}_7^-\)
The only structural information available on these ill-characterised salts is an investigation by electron paramagnetic resonance spectroscopy, which has revealed that the ‘green’ and ‘brown’ varieties differ profoundly. The spectrum of the green salt shows specific resonances close to the values found in ferric citrate, indicating a definite complex or mixture of oligomeric complexes, with a specific stoichiometry. On the other hand, the brown salt exhibits a broad featureless resonance of the same character as that seen in hydrated ferric oxide. It is reasonable to assume that the brown salt is the more highly polymerized species, consisting of large aggregates of hydrated iron(III) oxide gel, bound with citrate ligands only on the exterior.

Solution studies on the alkaline hydrolysis of ferric citrate have shown that the simple anions present at low pH begin to polymerise in the region of pH 8 to 9, and finally result in a polymer consisting of nanometer-sized particles containing around 1200 iron atoms linked by hydroxy and oxy bridges. It seems likely that these extensively hydrolysed forms of the substance will have a much greater tendency to leave residues of hydrated ferric oxide in the paper, with consequences both for the colour and the stability of the resulting cyanotypes.

III.6 Photochemistry of citratoferrate(III)

Studies of the speciation of the iron(III)/citrate system in aqueous solution have shown that a photo–inactive monomer predominates between pH 0.5 and 1.5, but a photo–active dimer is formed above pH 2. The quantum yield at 365 nm has a maximum value of 0.45 at pH 4, but then tends to drop with increasing pH, possibly owing to hydrolysis of the iron(III) and further oligomerization. Previous studies have shown that the rates of attainment of equilibrium become slow above pH 3.

The existence of dimeric iron(III)/citrate species in solution has recently received confirmation from the successful isolation of two crystalline dinuclear citratoferrate(III) complexes with suitable cations, and the determination of their structures by X–Ray diffraction. One dimeric anion is $[\text{Fe}_2\text{cit}_2(\text{OH}_2)_2]^2^-$, which has a centrosymmetric structure, and the other $[\text{Fe}_2(\text{Hcit})_3]^3^-$, where cit$^4^-$ represents the fully deprotonated citrate anion, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{O}_7^4^-$. In both complex anions the iron(III) centres are octahedrally coordinated, and they are oxy–bridged by the two or three available alkoxide groups of the ligands, respectively. The carboxylate groups coordinate in a monodentate fashion. The ability to crystallise either anion selectively from an aqueous solution containing excess citric
acid suggests that these two species are present in equilibrium. It is likely that they play an important role in the complex biochemistry of iron transport within living cells.

The initial photochemical reaction product of citratoferrate(III) has been identified as acetone dicarboxylic acid, but the nature of the iron(II) photoproduct remains unknown:

$$h\nu + [\text{Fe}_2(\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{O}_7)_2(\text{OH}_2)_2]^{2-} \rightarrow 2[\text{Fe}^{II}] + \text{CO(CH}_2\text{COOH})_2 + \text{CO}_2$$

The acetone dicarboxylic acid may suffer further decarboxylation to yield acetone finally:

$$\text{CO(CH}_2\text{COOH})_2 \rightarrow \text{CO(CH}_3)_2 + 2\text{CO}_2$$

The quantum yield of 0.45 at 365 nm drops to a value of 0.28 at 436 nm. Photolysis by sunlight of iron(III) polycarboxylates occurring naturally in surface waters has important effects on the complex speciation of iron, with consequences for its availability in numerous biogeochemical processes.

### III.7 Photochemistry of hexacyanoferate(III)

It has long been known that the photochemical decomposition of the hexacyanoferate(III) anion is complicated, with several possible reaction products, including Prussian blue as first observed by Herschel. The reaction scheme is summarised in the monograph by Balzani and Carassiti; although the reaction paths are not yet fully mapped out, it is well-established that the first step is a photoaquation with the formation of aquapentacyanoferate(III):

$$h\nu + [\text{Fe}^{III}(\text{CN})_6]^{3-} + 2\text{H}_2\text{O} \rightarrow [\text{Fe}^{III}(\text{CN})_5(\text{OH}_2)]^{2-} + \text{HCN} + \text{OH}^-$$

Due to the weakness of hydrocyanic acid, the pH tends to rise during irradiation. At high pH, a protolytic reaction yields the corresponding hydroxo complex anion:

$$[\text{Fe}^{III}(\text{CN})_5(\text{OH}_2)]^{2-} + \text{OH}^- \rightarrow [\text{Fe}^{III}(\text{CN})_5(\text{OH})]^{3-} + \text{H}_2\text{O}$$

A stepwise continuance of this reaction can ultimately produce a precipitate of ferric hydroxide. The aquapentacyanoferate(III) ion has also been shown to undergo a facile reduction to aquapentacyanoferate(II), which can ultimately yield iron(II) by hydrolysis, so the ingredients are available to form Prussian blue, or its aquated analogue, iron(III) aquapentacyanoferate(II), Fe$^{III}$[Fe$^{II}$(CN)$_5$H$_2$O].
It has also been shown that the free cyanide ion released in the photoaquation is photo-oxidised by iron(III) species:

\[ \text{hv} + 2[\text{Fe(CN)}_6]^3^- + \text{CN}^- + \text{H}_2\text{O} \rightarrow 2[\text{Fe(CN)}_6]^4^- + \text{OCN}^- + 2\text{H}^+ \]

The resulting hexacyanoferrate(II) is then available to form Prussian blue with any liberated iron(III). Quantum yields are very low for all these photolysis reactions of hexacyanoferrate(III); reported values for the aquation and reduction reactions are in the order of \( \phi = 0.01 \), which explains why Herschel’s first method, the ‘proto-cyanotype’, using hexacyanoferrate(III) by itself, is very ‘slow’ compared with the method employing ferricitrate, where the quantum yield is around \( \phi = 0.4 \).

III.8 Photochemistry of the blueprint process: 1

In the usual negative-working process, the sensitizer consists of a mixture of potassium hexacyanoferrate(III) with a photosensitive iron(III) salt – ammonium iron(III) citrate in Herschel’s original recipe, which is replaced by ammonium trisoxalatoferrate(III) in later commercial blueprint papers. Upon exposure to ultraviolet light, the iron(II) salt is formed photochemically in situ as described above:

\[ \text{hv} + 2[\text{Fe}^\text{III}(\text{C}_2\text{O}_4)_3]^3^- \rightarrow 2[\text{Fe}^\text{II}(\text{C}_2\text{O}_4)_2]^2^- + \text{C}_2\text{O}_4^{2-} + 2\text{CO}_2 \]

In the case of the citrate system the precise identity of the iron(II) photoproduct is not known, but it is likely to be a citrato- complex.

Prussian blue is then supposed to be formed via the Turnbull’s blue route, presumably by an overall reaction such as:

\[ [\text{Fe}^\text{II}(\text{C}_2\text{O}_4)_2]^2^- + [\text{Fe}^\text{III}(\text{CN})_6]^3^- \rightarrow \text{Fe}^\text{III}[\text{Fe}^\text{II}(\text{CN})_6]^- + 2\text{C}_2\text{O}_4^{2-} \]

However, this complex reaction cannot occur in one concerted step, because the carboxylate ligands must be stripped off the iron(II) before it can be incorporated in the Prussian blue lattice. There is a simple piece of experimental evidence to show that this overall reaction does not take place readily: if a solution of trisoxalatoferrate(III) is irradiated with UV light then added to a solution of hexacyanoferrate(III), little or no Prussian blue is formed. It is more probable that the initial reaction is direct reduction of the hexacyanoferrate(III):

\[ [\text{Fe}^\text{II}(\text{C}_2\text{O}_4)_2]^2^- + [\text{Fe}^\text{III}(\text{CN})_6]^3^- \rightarrow [\text{Fe}^\text{III}(\text{C}_2\text{O}_4)_2]^2^- + [\text{Fe}^\text{II}(\text{CN})_6]^4^- \]

which is a simple electron transfer, favoured by the relevant redox potentials:

\[ E([\text{Fe}^\text{III}(\text{CN})_6]^3^-/[\text{Fe}^\text{II}(\text{CN})_6]^4^-) = +0.356 \text{ V} \]
\[ \text{E(}[\text{Fe}^{\text{III}}(\text{C}_2\text{O}_4)_3]^3-/[\text{Fe}^{\text{II}}(\text{C}_2\text{O}_4)_2]^2-] = +0.02 \text{ V} \]

The production of more iron(II) during the ongoing exposure then provides the material to form the pigment after the attendant ligands are removed. Iron(II) does not bind oxalate very strongly, as may be seen from the overall dissociation constant:

\[ [\text{Fe}^{\text{II}}(\text{C}_2\text{O}_4)_2]^2- = \text{Fe}^{2+} + 2\text{C}_2\text{O}_4^{2-} \quad \beta_2 = 4 \times 10^{-7} \]

Removal of oxalate will be promoted by the presence of hydrogen ions, which compete with the metal to form undissociated oxalic acid, for which the overall equilibrium constant is:

\[ \text{C}_2\text{O}_4^{2-} + 2\text{H}^+ = \text{H}_2\text{C}_2\text{O}_4 \quad K_a = 3.24 \times 10^5 \]

Accordingly, the equilibrium:

\[ [\text{Fe}^{\text{II}}(\text{C}_2\text{O}_4)_2]^2- + 4\text{H}^+ = \text{Fe}^{2+}(\text{aq}) + 2\text{H}_2\text{C}_2\text{O}_4 \]

lies to the right hand side, with \( K = K_a^2\beta_2 = 4.2 \times 10^4 \).

The development of the image from such a sensitizer is strongly promoted by initial treatment in a bath of dilute acid, rather than water, as may be seen from the D/logH curves in Figs 7.1 and 7.2 in §7.3.10. Dissociation of the iron(II) oxalato complex thus releases ferrous ions, which will be competed for by both hexacyanoferrate(III) and hexacyanoferrate(II), to form both Prussian blue and Prussian white:

\[ \text{Fe}^{2+}(\text{aq}) + [\text{Fe}^{\text{III}}(\text{CN})_6]^3- \rightarrow \text{Fe}^{\text{III}}[\text{Fe}^{\text{II}}(\text{CN})_6]^2- \]

\[ \text{Fe}^{2+}(\text{aq}) + [\text{Fe}^{\text{II}}(\text{CN})_6]^4- \rightarrow \text{Fe}^{\text{II}}[\text{Fe}^{\text{II}}(\text{CN})_6]^2- \]

The relative proportions of the two products will depend on the hexacyanoferrate concentrations: in regions of very low exposure, hexacyanoferrate(III) will predominate, producing Prussian blue; in regions of heavy exposure the main species present will be hexacyanoferrate(II), and Prussian white will result. Thus, we are led to an explanation of the phenomenon of cyanotype ‘solarization’ i.e. the reversal of the tonal scale in the shadow areas, which fade to a pale bluish-grey as the exposure proceeds.

Previously, two different explanations have been put forward for this effect. One, due to Suzuki maintains that it is the direct photoreduction of hexacyanoferrate(III) on prolonged exposure that provides the hexacyanoferrate(II) which reacts with the iron(II) oxalato photoproduct to give Prussian white: \(^{821,822}\)

\[ \text{hv} + [\text{Fe}^{\text{III}}(\text{CN})_6]^3- \rightarrow [\text{Fe}^{\text{II}}(\text{CN})_6]^4- \]
The low value of the quantum yield for hexacyanoferrate(III) photoreduction, mentioned previously, would seem to disallow this mechanism as a significant contributor to blueprint ‘solarization’. Moreover, there is no explanation of how this addition of a small proportion of white pigment to the image can be responsible for the extensive solarization that is actually observed, in which Prussian blue already formed is seen to be reduced. The other explanation, offered by Murray, is more plausible: the heavy exposure in the shadow areas forms excess iron(II) oxalato complex, which reduces the Prussian blue already-formed to Prussian white: 

\[
[\text{Fe}^{\text{II}}(C_2O_4)_2]^{2-} + \text{Fe}^{\text{III}}[\text{Fe}^{\text{II}}(\text{CN})_6]^{4-} \rightarrow \text{Fe}^{\text{II}}[\text{Fe}^{\text{II}}(\text{CN})_6]^{2-} + 2\text{C}_2\text{O}_4^{2-}
\]

This explanation is also supported by the values of the relevant redox potentials:

\[
E([\text{Fe}(C_2O_4)_3]^{3-}/[\text{Fe}(C_2O_4)_2]^{2-}) = +0.02 \text{ V}
\]

\[
E(\text{Fe}^{\text{III}}[\text{Fe}^{\text{II}}(\text{CN})_6]^{4-}/\text{Fe}^{\text{II}}[\text{Fe}^{\text{II}}(\text{CN})_6]^{2-}) = +0.46 \text{ V}
\]

It should be noted that, in order to bring about this reduction, the iron(II) complex does not have to be divested of its ligands. Furthermore, it has been shown that ‘soluble’ Prussian blue has a high ionic mobility and can perform electrochemistry even in the absence of a liquid electrolyte.

The partial correctness of Murray’s explanation was confirmed experimentally by irradiating a solution of pure ammonium trisoxalatoferrate(III) under a UV lamp for ten minutes, then immersing a washed and processed cyanotype step test in the solution for five minutes. The test strip was partially bleached, in comparison with a control strip that was immersed in an identical, but unirradiated, solution for the same length of time, and suffered little or no loss. Evidently the photoproduct is capable of reducing Prussian blue. After washing and drying this test, it slowly re-oxidised in the air to Prussian white, demonstrating that the bleaching reaction had indeed been a reduction to Prussian white and not a hydrolysis or peptization. An identical experiment was also made using a solution of ammonium iron(III) citrate, with the same result. This mechanism may therefore contribute to the solarization.

However, a further experiment demonstrated that the simple thermal reaction between the iron(II) photoproducts and Prussian blue does not
fully account for the phenomenon. Solutions identical to those in the previous experiment were irradiated with a test strip of processed Prussian blue immersed in situ and exposed to the UV lamp. In these circumstances the reduction to Prussian white was observed to be much faster and more complete even in the regions of high density. It may be inferred that the Prussian blue itself becomes photochemically activated, making it easier to reduce:

\[ h\nu + \text{Fe}^{III}[\text{Fe}^{II}(\text{CN})_6]^2- \rightarrow \{\text{Fe}^{II}[\text{Fe}^{III}(\text{CN})_6]\}^* \]

\[ [\text{Fe}^{II}(\text{C}_2\text{O}_4)_2]^{2-} + \{\text{Fe}^{II}[\text{Fe}^{III}(\text{CN})_6]\}^* \rightarrow [\text{Fe}^{III}(\text{C}_2\text{O}_4)_2]^1- + \text{Fe}^{II}[\text{Fe}^{II}(\text{CN})_6]^{2-} \]

where the formulation \{Fe\text{II}[Fe\text{III}(CN)\text{6}]\}^* represents an electronically excited charge-transfer state of Prussian blue – essentially, iron(II) hexacyanoferrate(III).

It has been shown that Prussian white can reduce molecular oxygen to water in aqueous acidic electrolytes. The Prussian white in the ‘solarized’ regions of a cyanotype is therefore re-oxidised to Prussian blue by the oxygen of the air during processing and drying, so the shadow values slowly regain their density over a period of several hours, because the oxygen molecule is small enough to diffuse through the pores in the lattice:

\[ 4\text{Fe}^{II}[\text{Fe}^{II}(\text{CN})_6]^{2-} + \text{O}_2 + 2\text{H}_2\text{O} \rightarrow 4\text{Fe}^{III}[\text{Fe}^{II}(\text{CN})_6]^1- + 4\text{OH}^- \]

Alternatively, for a rapid result, re-oxidation may be accomplished by a bath of dilute (0.3%) hydrogen peroxide:

\[ 2\text{Fe}^{II}[\text{Fe}^{II}(\text{CN})_6]^{2-} + \text{H}_2\text{O}_2 \rightarrow 2\text{Fe}^{III}[\text{Fe}^{II}(\text{CN})_6]^1- + 2\text{OH}^- \]

In the past, a bath of potassium dichromate (ca. 5% to 10%) was commonly employed as the oxidant:

\[ 6\text{Fe}^{II}[\text{Fe}^{II}(\text{CN})_6]^{2-} + \text{Cr}_2\text{O}_7^{2-} + 7\text{H}^+ \rightarrow 6\text{Fe}^{III}[\text{Fe}^{II}(\text{CN})_6]^1- + 2\text{Cr}^{3+} + 6\text{OH}^- \]

but its high toxicity now discourages this practice.

It should be noted that each of these oxidations consumes protons, so generating hydroxyl ions, which may build up sufficiently to cause some hydrolysis of the Prussian blue. The oxidations should therefore be carried out for preference under acidic conditions.

**III.9 Photochemistry of the blueprint process: 2**

In the mid-1930s a number of patents were granted claiming improvements in blueprint sensitizers which operated on a rather different principle from the traditional mixtures. The photosensitive
component was still, almost universally, ammonium trisoxalatoferrate(III), but the hexacyanoferrate(III) was replaced, partially or wholly, by potassium hexacyanoferrate(II). It might be expected that mixing these two compounds would instantly lead to the precipitation of Prussian blue, but this is not so: the stability constants of the iron(III) oxalato complex are so high, that there is very little free ferric iron present, especially if the solution is neutral or slightly alkaline, or if the equilibrium is suppressed by the presence of excess oxalate ligand. The overall dissociation constants for the complex species are: 

\[
[\text{Fe(C}_2\text{O}_4)_3\text{]}^{3-} = \text{Fe}^{3+} + 3\text{C}_2\text{O}_4^{2-} \quad \beta_3 = 4 \times 10^{-21}
\]

\[
[\text{Fe(C}_2\text{O}_4)_2\text{]}^{-} = \text{Fe}^{3+} + 2\text{C}_2\text{O}_4^{2-} \quad \beta_2 = 6.3 \times 10^{-17}
\]

\[
[\text{Fe(C}_2\text{O}_4)\text{]}^{+} = \text{Fe}^{3+} + \text{C}_2\text{O}_4^{2-} \quad \beta_1 = 4 \times 10^{-10}
\]

These very small values governing the concentration of free ferric iron explain why only a trace of Prussian blue is formed when the sensitizer components are mixed. The dissociation of the iron(III) citrato complexes is slightly greater (\(\beta = 6.3 \times 10^{-14}\)), but in either case only sufficient colloidal Prussian blue is formed at equilibrium to impart a blue colour to the sensitizer solution, and the equilibrium lies well to the left hand side in the reaction:

\[
[\text{Fe}^{III}(\text{C}_2\text{O}_4)_3]^{3-} + [\text{Fe}^{II}(\text{CN})_6]^{4-} \rightarrow \text{Prussian blue}
\]

Upon irradiation, such a sensitizer will form Prussian white directly when the iron(II) photoproduct reacts with hexacyanoferrate(II) according to the overall equation:

\[
h\nu + [\text{Fe}^{III}(\text{C}_2\text{O}_4)_3]^{3-} + [\text{Fe}^{II}(\text{CN})_6]^{4-} \rightarrow \text{Fe}^{II}[\text{Fe}^{II}(\text{CN})_6]^{2-} + 2\text{C}_2\text{O}_4^{2-} + 2\text{CO}_2
\]

The dissociation constants listed above show that the displacement of oxalate ligands from iron(II) is much easier than from iron(III), as might be expected. The Prussian white image is subsequently oxidised to Prussian blue during wet processing. This procedure for making blueprints offers the possibility of achieving a higher Dmax than the traditional method, while maintaining high printing speeds, for two reasons:

1. Hexacyanoferrate(II) has a much lower optical absorbance in the blue and near ultraviolet regions of the spectrum, so it offers less of an internal filter effect than hexacyanoferrate(III), which absorbs strongly, as described above. Hexacyanoferrate(II) may therefore be used in higher, even equimolar, concentrations without greatly diminishing the speed.
2. The colourless Prussian white photoproduct offers less self-masking to the incident light, which is altogether more efficiently used for the photochemistry, and not wastefully absorbed by the photo-inactive components in the system.

Sensitized papers using hexacyanoferrate(II) are referred to in the industry as ‘blue layers’, or ‘latitude papers’ to distinguish them from the ‘yellow layers’ of the traditional hexacyanoferrate(III) papers (see Chapter 4). Because the unexposed paper has a blue background that is bleached by light, the exposure initially gives a positive-working image, which is gradually transformed into a negative-working image by the wet processing and action of air. The greatest problem with ‘blue layer’ papers is that the background fog of Prussian blue pigment must be completely washed out of the highlights before the bulk of the Prussian white is oxidized. This ‘wash–out’ is assisted by dispersing agents such as sodium hexametaphosphate, (NaPO$_3$)$_6$.\(^{828}\) It appears that this whole procedure is feasible because Prussian blue is readily peptized whereas Prussian white is not; the latter does not easily form a colloid, but immediately flocculates when precipitated.\(^{829}\) To suppress excessive Prussian blue formation in the sensitizer, extra quantities of alkali–metal oxalates, citrates, or phosphates can be added, but in moderation, otherwise they impair the quality of colour and reduce the speed.\(^{830}\)

These two different types of blueprint sensitizer have been termed Type A (‘yellow layer’) and Type B (‘blue layer’). Mixtures, Type AB, were also recommended in the patent literature.\(^{831}\) There is additionally a Type C sensitizer, also ‘blue layer’ in appearance, but differing in its constituents: it uses a mixture of iron(II) oxalate or the bisoxalatoiron(II) complex with hexacyanoferrate(III).\(^{832}\) Again it may seem surprising that the equilibria do not allow the instant formation of Prussian blue in copious amounts from these two components, but excess oxalate is added to suppress the free ferrous iron concentration. Although the mixture does become quite strongly coloured, the amount of colloidal Prussian blue formed is still quite small. Redox potential data (see the values quoted above) suggest that substantial electron transfer should take place between these two components to give a mixture of an iron(III) oxalato complex (which will be photosensitive) and hexacyanoferrate(II):

\[
[\text{Fe}^{\text{II}}(\text{C}_2\text{O}_4)_2]^{2-} + [\text{Fe}^{\text{III}}(\text{CN})_6]^{3-} \rightarrow [\text{Fe}^{\text{III}}(\text{C}_2\text{O}_4)_2]^{-} + [\text{Fe}^{\text{II}}(\text{CN})_6]^{4-}
\]
so that one ends up with a light-sensitive mixture essentially resembling Type B. The printing characteristics of Types B and C are indeed similar, and a mixture of the two, Type BC, has also been recommended.

### III.10 Photochemical reduction of Prussian blue

In spite of the well-known tendency of blueprints to fade in light, it is important to acknowledge that there is good evidence for pure Prussian blue being photochemically inert to a high degree. Thus, the *Colour Index* lists its lightfastness as ‘excellent’.\(^{833}\) Recent studies of an aqueous suspension of pure ‘insoluble’ Prussian blue by Harriman and co-workers found that irradiation with visible light causes no perceptible photodecomposition, which would be marked by loss of optical density and/or the evolution of oxygen, due to the oxidation of water.\(^{834}\)

The early reports by Desmortiers and Chevreul that prolonged exposure to sunlight causes bleaching of Prussian blue and the formation of some cyanogen, and a shift of colour to a greener hue on re-oxidation, suggests that very high exposures (ca. 50 Mlx hr) to light with some ultraviolet content (the sun) may bring about oxidation of some of the cyanide ligands, with formation of the aquopentacyano complex, possibly by reactions such as:

\[
\text{hv} + 2\text{Fe}^{3+}[\text{Fe}^{2+}(\text{CN})_6]^- + 2\text{H}_2\text{O} \rightarrow 2\text{Fe}^{2+}[\text{Fe}^{2+}(\text{CN})_5(\text{OH}_2)]^- + (\text{CN})_2
\]

However, Harriman et al further observed that the introduction of trisbipyridylruthenium(II) cation into the system of the aqueous Prussian blue sol renders it photochemically active and enables rapid photoreduction of the Prussian blue to Prussian white, and the concomitant oxidation of water. This is a complex system because the trisbipyridylruthenium(II) cation is itself highly photoactive, but one of the reactions considered is:

\[
\text{hv} + [\text{bipy}_3\text{Ru}]^{2+} + \text{Fe}^{3+}[\text{Fe}^{2+}(\text{CN})_6]^- \rightarrow [\text{bipy}_3\text{Ru}]^{3+} + \text{Fe}^{2+}[\text{Fe}^{2+}(\text{CN})_6]^{2-}
\]

in which photoexcitation of Prussian blue as well as the ruthenium complex may play a part. In another recent experiment, methanol was the chosen electron donor, but the electron transfer was mediated by the presence of titanium dioxide, which is photoactive in generating electron/hole pairs under irradiation; its presence facilitated rapid photobleaching to Prussian white under visible light.\(^{835}\) These two experiments were carried out in rather complex systems, differing from the cyanotype environment, but they do show that the photoreduction of
Prussian blue is critically dependent on the presence of other electron-donating species.

Absorption of light at 400 or 700 nm by the ligand-to-metal charge transfer transitions in the Prussian blue (see Appendix II.5) leads to an excited state which can be described approximately as iron(II) hexacyanoferrate(III), \( \text{Fe}^{\text{II}}[\text{Fe}^{\text{III}}(\text{CN})_6]^- \), and which is a more powerful oxidising agent than Prussian blue in its ground state. Such enhancement of redox activity in electronically excited states by the absorption of visible light has been extensively studied in some inorganic complexes such as the trisbipyridylruthenium(II) cation, but there has been little report of the phenomenon in Prussian blue, whose excited electronic states have not been fully characterised.

If there is an oxidisable species accessible to the photoexcited Prussian blue, electron transfer could occur to bring about bleaching of the blue to Prussian white and oxidation of the electron donor. However, this mechanism is critically dependent on the half-life of the electronically–excited state of Prussian blue, which must be long enough to permit chemical reaction to occur more rapidly than thermal relaxation to the ground state. In view of the insolubility of Prussian blue, this reaction would have to proceed in the solid state, and it could only be facile if the Prussian blue and its electron donor were in close contact. This becomes possible if the reducing agent is incorporated into the zeolitic cavities or the anion vacancies of the Prussian blue lattice. Surface adsorption onto nanoparticle Prussian blue is also a possibility, because of the high surface area and the fact that Prussian blue has been shown to be a photoconductive material. In view of the increased negative charge in the Prussian white lattice, neutrality must be maintained by the migration of cations into the lattice on reduction, as described in Appendix II; so a supply of appropriately–sized cations is also necessary for photo–reduction to take place.

The reaction is easily demonstrated experimentally, and effective reducing agents can be readily identified, as follows. The potential reducing agent is applied in solution (concentration ca 5–10%), under subdued lighting, to half of a small area of paper coated with Prussian blue, which may be prepared either by exposing and processing cyanotype paper, or by chemical metathesis and precipitation. The two areas are compared, still under subdued illumination, for any signs of a ‘dark’ thermal reduction reaction. If there is none, the dry sheet is then irradiated with visible light, for an exposure of about one kilolux hour.
(i.e. 15 minutes exposure to a 4 kilolux artificial daylight source, provided by four standard daylight fluorescent tubes). Fading of the coated area versus the uncoated control area should be apparent in this time. Substances that have been found to promote such photochemically-induced bleaching of Prussian blue include alkali metal or ammonium citrates and oxalates, and the iron(II) oxalato complex as demonstrated above. This reaction would appear to offer a possible mechanism to explain the fading of cyanotypes, by reactions such as:

\[
h\nu + \text{Fe}^{III}[\text{Fe}^{II}(\text{CN})_6]^\cdot \rightarrow \{\text{Fe}^{II}[\text{Fe}^{III}(\text{CN})_6]^\cdot\}^* \\
2\{\text{Fe}^{II}[\text{Fe}^{III}(\text{CN})_6]^\cdot\}^* + \text{C}_2\text{O}_4^{2-} \rightarrow 2\text{Fe}^{II}[\text{Fe}^{II}(\text{CN})_6]^{2-} + 2\text{CO}_2
\]

where the oxalate may be replaced by other oxidisable species, e.g. citrate. The implications of this type of photochemical sensitization of Prussian blue for the conservation of cyanotypes are discussed in §9.1.
Appendix IV Units of Concentration

The concentration of a solution can be specified in a variety of different ways, the choice of which may depend on whether the user is a chemist or a lay person. Those who have worked with or researched early photographic processes will be aware of this diversity and the occasional difficulty in making comparisons. Reconciling or interconverting these different modes of expressing concentration is not altogether trivial, and sometimes even impossible with complete exactness. Fortunately, high precision is not usually a prerequisite in this area. The usual measures of concentration that need be considered are as follows.

IV.1 Concentration as weight percent volume (% w/v)

If a solution is said to have a concentration of C % w/v, this implies that C grams (g) of the solute are contained in 100 cubic centimeters (cc) of the solution. This measure of concentration only has meaning if the units are appropriately chosen – usually as grams per decilitre.

(1 decilitre = 0.1 litre = 100 millilitres or 100 cubic centimeters)

The convenience of this mode of expression is obvious, because solutions are most easily dispensed by liquid volume, and the measured volume in decilitres multiplied by the concentration in these units provides an exact statement of the weight in grams of solute that is present in the volume dispensed.

IV.2 Concentration as molarity

This is the ‘chemist’s unit’ of concentration. A molarity of M, implies that the solution contains M gram molecular weights (or ‘moles’ or ‘formula weights’) of the solute in one litre (= 1000 cc = 1 cubic decimeter) of the solution.

A knowledge of molarities enables the chemist to predict exactly the equivalent combining volumes of solutions of reacting substances. Molarity is the basis for all analytical chemistry in solution, especially titrations. Although its use is not necessary in everyday photographic practice, it is desirable to be able to calculate concentrations as molarities when devising new formulations, or reviewing old ones in which the level of chemical understanding may not have been accurate.

It is easy to convert the expression for concentration as C % w/v into the molarity, M, by multiplying by 10 and dividing by the gram molecular weight, R, (also called the relative molecular mass, or formula weight).
R is found by summing the atomic weights of the component elements in the molecular formula.

IV.3 Concentration as weight percent weight (% w/w)

If a solution is specified as having a concentration of $C_w \% w/w$, then $C_w$ grams of the solute are contained in 100 grams of the solution (and likewise for any other unit of weight). Since it is much less convenient to measure and deliver samples of solutions by weight, rather than by liquid volume (a balance is much more costly than a measuring cylinder or pipette), this is a less practical mode of expression. The only advantage is its independence of the units of weight used, provided they are both the same; i.e. no units need to be specified.

IV.4 Concentration as volume percent volume (% v/v)

If a solution is specified as having a concentration of $C_v \% v/v$, then a volume $C_v \text{cc}$ of the solute is contained in 100 cc of the solution. This is obviously a useful measure when the solute is commonly obtained in liquid form.

IV.5 Early formulations and recipes

Most of the older formulations and recipes for making up historic photographic preparations usually prescribe a procedure of the form:

‘$X$ parts (by weight) of solute are dissolved in $V$ parts (by volume) of water (or other solvent).’

While it is easy to specify and carry out the making-up of a solution in this way, it also creates a quantitative difficulty, because the dissolution of the solute in the solvent changes the total volume, so that the solution finally obtained no longer has a volume equal to $V$, but one that has been increased by an unspecified and unpredictable amount that depends on the individual chemical identity of the solute. Only for very dilute solutions, say 1% or less, is it a reasonable approximation to assume that $V$ remains unchanged, and that the concentration may therefore be taken as % w/v, once the units have been converted to g/100cc.

The concentration of a solution made up in such a way can be calculated exactly as $C_w \% w/w$ by:

$$C_w = \frac{100 \times X}{X + V}$$
where \( d \) is the density (or specific gravity) of the solvent in appropriate units. If the solvent is water at room temperature, the assumption that \( d = 1 \text{ g/cc} \) is generally accurate enough, so the expression may be simplified to:

\[
C_w = 100 \frac{X}{(X + V)}
\]

provided that \( X \) is expressed in g and \( V \) in cc.

Unfortunately, if a solution is made up in this way it becomes impossible to relate its concentration accurately to the more useful, rational, and chemically significant units of \( C \% \text{ w/v} \), unless further information – the density – is available (see below).

**IV.6 Modern formulations and recipes**

Most practising photographers have some experience in making up solutions for darkroom work,\(^840\) and will be aware that the instructions in modern formularies now tend to take the form:

‘Dissolve \( X \) g of the substance in water (an approximate volume may be indicated as a guide) and make up the solution with water, with thorough mixing, to a final volume of \( V \) cc.’

It is obvious that this way of making up solutions can be accurately expressed by a concentration of \( C \% \text{ w/v} \) simply defined by:

\[
C = 100 \frac{X}{V} \text{ g/decilitre}
\]

This method is greatly to be preferred, especially if quantitative chemical reasoning is to be employed, and it is also the way of working that is natural for any trained chemist.

**IV.7 Interconversion of \( C_w \) and \( C \)**

The information needed to relate values of \( C_w \) and \( C \) is the specific gravity or density, \( D \), of the solution in appropriate units:

\[
D = \frac{C}{C_w} \text{ g/cc}
\]

In general, information regarding the density, \( D \), of a solution of any particular strength is not readily available (although it has been tabulated for aqueous solutions of a limited number of common chemicals in the CRC Handbook,\(^841\) for example)

However, tables of *solubility* in the Merck Handbook\(^842\) do provide values of \( C \), \( C_w \), and \( D \) for *saturated* solutions of quite a large number of substances, at room temperature. By making an assumption concerning the effect of the solute in modifying the final volume of solution, it is
possible to derive a factor, called f, for any substance, which may then be used to make an approximate conversion between C and \( C_w \) for any value of the concentration. This assumption is that the ‘effective volume’ occupied by unit mass of dissolved solute is independent of the concentration. Given this, it can be shown that:

\[
\frac{1}{C} = \frac{1}{C_w} - f
\]

and this formula can be used to find a value for C, given \( C_w \), where the incremental factor f is conveniently defined by either:

\[
f = \frac{(D_{\text{sat}} - 1)}{C_{\text{sat}}}
\]

or:

\[
f = \frac{1}{C_{w\text{sat}}} - \frac{1}{C_{\text{sat}}}
\]

in which \( D_{\text{sat}} \), \( C_{w\text{sat}} \), and \( C_{\text{sat}} \) are the density and concentrations of the saturated solution, at the same temperature. The factor, f, for a variety of chemicals important to alternative photography, has been calculated from the Merck Tables as shown in Table 21

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Substance</th>
<th>( D_{\text{sat}} ) g/cc</th>
<th>( C_{\text{sat}} ) % w/v</th>
<th>( C_{w\text{sat}} ) % w/w</th>
<th>f</th>
<th>( V_g ) 1–100f</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ammonium dichromate</td>
<td>1.18</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>27.9</td>
<td>0.00545</td>
<td>0.455</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potassium dichromate</td>
<td>1.092</td>
<td>14.2</td>
<td>13.0</td>
<td>0.00648</td>
<td>0.352</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ammonium ferric citrate</td>
<td>1.43</td>
<td>97</td>
<td>67.7</td>
<td>0.00443</td>
<td>0.557</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ammonium ferric oxalate</td>
<td>1.26</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>51.5</td>
<td>0.00400</td>
<td>0.600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potassium ferricyanide</td>
<td>1.187</td>
<td>38.1</td>
<td>32.1</td>
<td>0.00491</td>
<td>0.509</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potassium ferrocyanide</td>
<td>1.173</td>
<td>28.2</td>
<td>24.0</td>
<td>0.00613</td>
<td>0.387</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Silver nitrate</td>
<td>2.29</td>
<td>164</td>
<td>71.5</td>
<td>0.00787</td>
<td>0.213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Citric acid</td>
<td>1.311</td>
<td>88.6</td>
<td>67.5</td>
<td>0.00351</td>
<td>0.649</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trisodium citrate</td>
<td>1.272</td>
<td>61.2</td>
<td>48.1</td>
<td>0.00445</td>
<td>0.555</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sodium chloride</td>
<td>1.198</td>
<td>31.7</td>
<td>26.5</td>
<td>0.00625</td>
<td>0.375</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potassium bromide</td>
<td>1.380</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>40.6</td>
<td>0.00679</td>
<td>0.321</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potassium iodide</td>
<td>1.721</td>
<td>103.2</td>
<td>59.8</td>
<td>0.00699</td>
<td>0.301</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potassium oxalate</td>
<td>1.20</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>28.3</td>
<td>0.00592</td>
<td>0.408</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table IV.1 Solubility data for relevant chemicals

\( V_g \) is the effective volume in cc ‘occupied’ by the solute per gram of its weight dissolved, and can be useful for estimating the final volume of the solution, knowing the volume of solvent taken.
IV.8 Conversion of units in obsolete formulae

When working with ‘historic’ formulations, it is advisable to convert all units of weight to grams, and all volumes to cubic centimeters. To assist this, the following conversions may be useful.

**Apothecaries’ measure** was used by early scientists for weighing out solids and making up formulae:

- 1 grain = 0.0648 g
- 1 scruple = 20 grains = 1.296 g
- 1 drachm = 3 scruples (60 grains) = 3.888 g
- 1 ounce = 8 drachms (480 grains) = 31.104 g
- 1 pound = 12 ounces (5760 grains) = 373.242 g

**Troy weight** has the same basis as Apothecaries measure, the grain, and was always used for weighing precious materials such as gold and silver metal:

- 1 grain Troy = 1 grain Apothecaries = 0.0648 g
- 1 pennyweight = 24 grains = 1.555 g
- 1 ounce = 20 pennyweight (480 grains) = 31.104 g
- 1 pound = 12 ounces (5760 grains) = 373.242 g

**Avoirdupois measure** was the common system for weighing and selling solids; it was adopted by the British Pharmacopoeia in 1864:

- 1 grain = 1 grain Troy = 0.0648 g
- 1 ounce = 437.5 grains = 28.35 g
- 1 pound = 16 ounces (7000 grains) = 453.59 g

Texts do not always make clear which system their ‘ounces’ (abbreviated ‘oz.’) refer to, but they are more likely to be avoirdupois.

**British fluid measure** was used for making up volumes of solutions:

- 1 minim (ca. 1 drop) = 0.0592 cc
- 1 fluid drachm = 60 minims = 3.552 cc
- 1 fluid ounce = 8 fluid drachms = 28.413 cc
- 1 gill = 5 fluid ounces = 142.065 cc
- 1 pint = 20 fluid ounces = 568.261 cc
- 1 quart = 8 pints = 1136.522 cc
- 1 gallon = 8 pints = 4546.087 cc
1 fluid ounce of water weighs approximately 1 ounce avoirdupois. A concentration of 1 grain/fluid ounce = 2.28 g/l = 0.228 % w/v

**US volume measurement** differs from that used in Britain:

- 1 minim (USA) = 0.0616 cc
- 1 fluid dram (USA) = 60 minims = 3.697 cc
- 1 fluid ounce (USA) = 8 fluid drams = 29.574 cc
- 1 pint (USA) = 16 fluid ounces (USA) = 473.176 cc
- 1 gallon (USA) = 8 pints (USA) = 3785.412 cc

**Specific gravity** was commonly used to indicate the strength of some concentrated solutions, because these could be readily determined with a hydrometer or areometer. Unfortunately the scale often employed was the now long–obsolete (and ambiguous):

**Beaumé hydrometer scale.**

For liquids denser than water, the number on the Beaumé scale, 0, 1, 2, 3, etc., denotes the specific gravity of an aqueous solution containing 0, 1, 2, 3, etc., % w/w of sodium chloride (common salt). If B represents the Beaumé number, and D is the specific gravity (or density in g/cc) as above, the relationships between them are:

\[
D = 1/(1 - B/m)
\]

or, conversely:

\[
B = m(1 - 1/D)
\]

where the parameter, m, has been assigned various values between 144 and 147 on slightly differing definitions of the scale, but may be taken approximately as m = 145 for nineteenth century measurements at 20°C.

**Twaddell’s Hydrometer Scale.**

If T represents the reading on the Twaddell scale, the specific gravity D is given by:

\[
D = 1 + 0.005 T
\]
Notes and References

Newhall, B, *The History of Photography, 1839 to the Present Day*, (New York: Museum of Modern Art, 1949);
The essential idea of photosensitivity in silver halides can be traced back to Schulze in 1727.


4 Our awareness of this aspect of early photography has been greatly enhanced by Dr. Larry Schaaf’s scholarly contributions to its historical study.


6 Letter, Brewster to Talbot, 18 November 1843, Science Museum Library, London


I am indebted to Roger Taylor for this reference.

9 Emerson, P H, *Naturalistic Photography for Students of the Art*, (London: Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Rivington, 1889)


12 Sutcliffe, Francis Madingly, *The Photogram*, (1901), pii
I thank Philip Jackson for this quotation

13 See his archive at the Museum of the History of Science, Oxford: [http://www.mhs.ox.ac.uk/collections/imu-search-page/results/?query=Teasdale&thumbnails=on&querytype=basic](http://www.mhs.ox.ac.uk/collections/imu-search-page/results/?query=Teasdale&thumbnails=on&querytype=basic)

I am grateful to Pam Roberts, Curator of the RPS Collection, for information.

15 I thank Sara Stevenson, quondam Chief Curator of the Scottish National Photography Collection at the Scottish National Portrait Gallery, for information on the collection. Dr. Stevenson’s numerous fine publications on this collection are listed by Buchanan, W, ‘Snapshot


17 Coe, B, Collings, T J, and Gill, A T, ‘The Recognition of Photographic Processes’, (Royal Photographic Society Historical Group, 1976), republished as a supplement to The Photohistorian, 119 (Bath: Royal Photographic Society, November 1997); Collings, T J, Archival Care of Still Photographs, (Sheffield: Society of Archivists Information Leaflet, nd)


I am grateful to Judy Seigel for providing this reference.


1s. 6d. in Sterling was the same as 7.5 p (new pence, or £0.075).


25 I am grateful to Reginald Heron for this information.


27 There is a physico–chemical explanation for this, founded on the energetics of the transitions between molecular electronic states responsible for the absorption of visible light. Most stable substances have a relatively large energy gap between their highest occupied molecular orbitals (HOMOs) and their lowest unoccupied molecular orbitals (LUMOs), corresponding to absorption of blue and UV light. Transitions of a different sort are generally required for the low energy changes associated with the absorption of red light. These d–d transitions occur in compounds of the transition metals.


29 For readers in the USA, the blueberry is, of course, the exception that proves the rule.
The intensity of the Rayleigh scattering is inversely proportional to the fourth power of the wavelength. Thus, blue light with its smaller wavelength is scattered most by the atmosphere. This is also responsible for the yellowness of direct sunlight; our sun is actually a blue–white star. The effect is most marked at sunset, when the path length of light through the atmosphere is greatest.


‘Structural’ coloration is due to optical effects such as diffraction, scattering or interference, in which a selective reflection of some wavelengths of light occurs through a re-direction of the energy without loss by absorption.

*New Scientist*, 162, 2192 (26 June 1999), pp34–37


It might be noted that neither the *Indigofera* plant nor the woad plant (*Isatis*) are blue: they contain the dye in a colourless or *leuco* molecular form, which only acquires colour upon chemical oxidation.

The chromatic shift is explained by its modified chemical composition as dibromo-indigo.


46 The *Wilton Diptych*, in the National Gallery, London, is a superb example.

   I am grateful to Patricia Kumar for this reference.


52 Lapis lazuli is probably the same blue gemstone referred to as ‘*Kyanos*’ by writers of classical antiquity such as Dioscorides, Theophrastus, and Pliny. See: Stillman, J M, *The Story of Early Chemistry*, (New York: Appleton and Company, 1924), pp19, 44. The mineral has been mined in the mountains of the Hindu Kush for 6000 years. Chemically it is a sodium/calcium aluminosilicate, \((\text{Na,Ca})_8(\text{AlSiO}_4)_6(S,\text{SO}_4,\text{Cl})_{1–2}\) but the blue colour is imparted by the presence of the unusual trisulphide radical anion, \(\text{S}_3^–\).

53 Irene Brückle, ”The Historical Manufacture of Blue–Coloured Paper”, *The Paper Conservator*, 17, 1993, 20–31. Smalt, a cobalt potassium silicate glass, has the nominal formula, \(\text{K}_2\text{CoSi}_3\text{O}_8\).


55 Thénard’s blue is a cobalt(II) aluminate \(\text{CoAl}_2\text{O}_4\); it is also known as Gahn’s ultramarine. Cerulean blue, first marketed in 1860, is a cobalt(II) stannate, \(\text{CoSnO}_3\).


58 In the eighteenth century the price of ultramarine was as high as five guineas an ounce. Following the discovery by Guimet in 1828 of a method for preparing it synthetically as \(\text{Na}_7\text{Al}_6\text{Si}_6\text{O}_{24}\text{S}_3\) from materials as common as clay, sulphur, and soda, the price fell to about a shilling per pound.
The English language is full of metaphors involving ‘blue’ in this context. It is a moot point whether the language determines the visual connotation or derives from it.


The scientific system for the measurement of colour is based in the recommendations of the Commission Internationale de l’Eclairage (CIE) and is expressed as three coordinates, L*a*b*, in a defined colour space. However, this system conveys little or nothing to the general reader, and for a visual reference one of the preferred industry standards is the Munsell system of hue, value and chroma, which is embodied in a colour atlas, which is however a rather expensive reference work. Munsell Book of Color, Munsell Color, Macbeth Division of Kollmorgen Corporation (Baltimore: 1976)

Kornerup, A, and Wanscher, J H, Methuen Handbook of Colour, (London: Eyre Methuen Ltd., 1978)


Regrettably, Bismarck was not referring to the manufacture of a pigment at the time. (The fact that the only dyestuff to be named after him should be brown, can be considered an ‘irony’.)


A decisive experiment in 1828 was F Wöhler's simple conversion by heat of the inorganic salt, ammonium cyanate NH₄NCO, into its isomer, the organic animal natural product, urea (NH₂)₂CO. See: *Poggendorff's Annalen*, 12 (1828), p253.

The name “Prussian Blue” has been reappropriated in the early 21st century by a young duo of female pop singers – whose fascist lyrics prove to be far from ‘politically correct’. Internet searchers beware!

There was a school of rabbinical thought that identified the dyestuff called *tekhelet* in the Bible, which was prescribed for the woollen yarn of priestly apparel, as Prussian blue, but this has been disqualified; see: Ziderman, I I, ‘Blue Thread of the Tzitzit: Was the Ancient Dye a Prussian Blue or Tyrian Purple?’ *Journal of the Society of Dyers and Colourists*, 97 (1981), pp362–4

Egyptian blue must take the title of the earliest synthetic pigment, but its formula was lost for many centuries, see §1.8.


Stahl, G E, *Experimenta, Observationes, Animadversiones*, (Berlin: 1731) p281

Johann Konrad Dippel was born in Castle Frankenstein in 1673. Having failed to make gold, he launched an ‘animal oil’ upon the public in 1700. It was hailed as a panacea, presumably on the widely–held premise that anything so obnoxious must be beneficial. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Johann_Conrad_Dippel](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Johann_Conrad_Dippel)

A mixture of alkyl cyanides and nitrogenous organic bases, such as pyrrole, quinoline and pyridine, obtained by the destructive distillation of blood, bones and offal. It was also used by Niépce as a solvent for bitumen.
Campbell, A, ‘Keep on taking the oil’, *Chemistry in Britain*, 33 6 (June 1997), p54.


The French name for the pigment was *Bleu de Prusse*. An alternative German name was *Preussisches Ultra–Marin*.

There is a dangerous inconsistency here in the early nomenclature: although ‘prussic acid’ is unambiguously hydrogen cyanide (or hydrocyanic acid); ‘prussiate of potash’ does *not* generally signify potassium cyanide (also highly toxic), but potassium ferrocyanide (which is relatively innocuous). This possibly lethal ambiguity is resolved by some authors, who refer to the latter as ‘yellow prussiate of potash’ or ‘ferroprussiate of potash’. The German name for this salt was *Blutlaugensaltz* – ‘blood residue salt’ – acknowledging one method of its preparation.


Scheele, *Traite de l’Air et du feu*

Nitrogen had meanwhile been identified by Daniel Rutherford in 1772 as ‘dephlogisticated air’.


In Homeric Greek there is evidence that *kyanos* did not in fact mean ‘blue’ but simply ‘dark’; see Chapter 1.

Prussian blue can also claim the more arcane chemical distinction of being the first coordination compound, or ‘complex’ of a metal to be synthesised. See Powell, *loc cit*.

The bond here between the atoms of carbon and nitrogen is very strong – a ‘triple bond’ in chemists’ parlance – so the two bound atoms tend to act as a single entity, the cyanide radical.


Their ‘Pyroligneous acid’ works were at 100 Camlachie Street, see Royal Commission on the Ancient and Historical Monuments of Scotland, John Hume Collection

*The New Statistical Account of Scotland (1845)*, Volume VI – Lanark, City of Glasgow. I thank Dr. Sara Stevenson for this reference.


I am indebted to Dr. Roger Taylor for this information.


transliterations from the Russian vary.


106 The yellow solution of ferric chloride is rendered colourless by sunlight, corresponding to the reduction of iron(III) to iron(II); some of the organic component is correspondingly oxidised.


112 Eder, *op. cit.*, p107

113 Parnell, E, *The Life and Labours of John Mercer*, (London: Longmans, Green & Co., 1886). I am indebted to Owain Davies for bringing this quotation to my attention, and to the late Harry Milligan for first acquainting me in 1984 with Mercer’s researches. Although ferric nitrate is not an organic salt of iron, it was doubtless the cellulose of the cloth that provided the oxidisable material.

114 His later contributions are summarised in Parnell, *op cit*, and in Dr Stella Butler’s lecture, *Colouring Material: John Mercer (1791–1866) and his Photographs on Cloth*, delivered to the Historical Section of the Royal Society of Chemistry, in June 1987 at the Maritime Museum, Liverpool.


116 Talbot, W H F, *Notebook M, Folio 34*, (before March 1835). ‘Paper wetted with common mur. acid, & then with Pruss. Potash, turns blue owing to the presence of iron in the acid.’ I am indebted to Michael Gray, curator of the Fox Talbot Museum, Lacock, for this transcription from Talbot’s notes.


118 MS 478, Archive Collection, Science Museum Library, London.

119 Gernsheim Photography Collection, HRHRC.

120 I am grateful to the Harry Ransom Humanities Research Center, University of Texas at Austin for supplying photocopies and for permission to quote from this material.

121 Herschel, Sir John F.W., ‘On the Chemical Action of the Rays of the Solar Spectrum on Preparations of Silver and other Substances, both metallic and non–metallic, and on some Photographic Processes’,

122 In the Museum of the History of Science, Oxford, and at the Harry Ransom Center, University of Texas at Austin.


124 Fabbri, Malin, Anthotypes (Stockholm: Alternativephotography.com, 2012).


126 The sun was, of course, the only practicable light source available to the early pioneers in photography, and all experiments were at the mercy of the vagaries of the weather.


130 Schaaf, op cit, p127

131 Smee, A, Elements of Electro–metallurgy, see also: Smee, A, ‘The Principle, Construction and Use of Smee’s Battery’ (transcribed from a paper read at the Society of Arts, 1 June 1840), Appendix V in Smee–Odling, E M, Memoir of the Late Alfred Smee, FRS, (London: George Bell and Sons, 1878)


133 See note 15. The ‘sesqui–’ prefix in the first of these names arose through a misconception at the time of the chemical formulation of this salt.

134 The name, ‘potassium ferricyanide’ does not conform to the most recent international (IUPAC) recommendations for chemical nomenclature, but it probably has wider currency than the approved form ‘potassium hexacyanoferrate(III)’. It also trips more easily off the tongue. It is regrettable that the important difference between this substance and potassium ferrocy anide should reside entirely in a single vowel. The IUPAC nomenclature is no better, because the latter becomes potassium hexacyanoferrate(II). Numerous errors have resulted from misreading this fine distinction. Caveat lector!
Potassium ferrocyanide was then prepared, as a first step in the manufacture of the important pigment Prussian blue, by an obnoxious process of heating potash with animal residues such as blood and offal or parings of hoof and horn; hence its original German name *Blutlaugensaltz* (‘blood–residue salt’).

‘F$_{3/2}$CP’ is the personal abbreviation that Herschel commonly used in his notes for ‘ferrosesquicyanuret of potash’ as potassium ferricyanide was then known.

The pathways of photochemical decomposition of potassium ferricyanide are complex, and have not been fully mapped out even today – see Appendix III.

The adjective 'chalybeate' derives from the tribe of Chalybes, metallurgists of Anatolia, living on the east coast of the Black Sea, who are credited with the first extraction of metallic iron from its ores, some time around 1500 BCE.


Herschel’s personal diary entry for 17 June 1846 records that he was prescribed ACI for his stomach complaints. An irony indeed!

Smee’s biography by his daughter, which is otherwise fulsome in cataloguing his achievements, (which were indeed considerable) makes no mention of this correspondence and collaboration with Sir John Herschel. See: Elizabeth Mary Sme Odling, *Memoir of the Late Alfred Sme Odling, FRS*, (London: George Bell and Sons, 1878)

Draft of a letter, Herschel to Smee, 15 June 1842. Royal Society Library.

Although Herschel also thought of platinum as an ideal image substance, he was unable to make it work with the chemicals


Herschel’s chrysotype (Greek: χρυσός = ‘gold’) furnished permanent, deep red images made of nanoparticle gold (the ‘Purple of Cassius’ used by ceramicists and stained glass artists), but it failed to gain acceptance into the photographic repertoire – partly owing to its obvious expense, but partly also on account of chemical difficulties over controlling the colour, tonality and contrast of the image. Only in the last two decades of the 20th century have the photochemical problems of chrysotype been resolved, see: Mike Ware, Gold in Photography: the history and art of Chrysotype (Brighton: ffotoffilm publishing, 2006). See also: Mike Ware, ‘Herschel’s Chrysotype: A Golden Legend Re-told’, History of Photography, 30, 1, (Spring 2006), pp. 1–24.

The later platinum & palladium printing processes due to William Willis used ferric oxalate.

Towards the end of the nineteenth century, Herschel’s argentotype process suddenly fathered a whole family of derivative iron–silver processes: Van Dyke Brown; Kallitype (Greek: καλλί = beautiful); Sepiaprint; and Brownprint are the self-descriptive names for these essentially similar processes. Unfortunately they did not enjoy a high reputation for permanence, unless toned with gold or platinum, but some are still practised today by the devotees of the hand-made photograph, see: Christopher James, The Book of Alternative Photographic Processes, 2nd edn. (New York: Delmar Cengage Learning, 2008).

The application of some modern chemistry, 150 years later, has enabled me to devise a latter-day version of the chrysotype process that is less profligate in its consumption of gold, and is capable of providing images as fine and permanent even as those obtained by platinotype, but of a more remarkable range of colours. See: Ware, M J, ‘Prints of Gold: The Chrysotype Process Re-invented’, *Scottish Photography Bulletin*, No 1, (1991), pp6–8; *idem*, ‘Photographic Printing in Colloidal Gold’, *Journal of Photographic Science*, 42, 5 (1994), pp157–161.


Herschel wrote four papers on photographic processes, of which three were published in the *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society*, in 1840, 1842 and 1843. The first paper, written in 1839, was withdrawn before publication, and was long thought lost until the MS copy was discovered by Schaaf. See: Schaaf, L J, ‘Sir John Herschel’s 1839 Royal Society paper on photography’, *History of Photography*, 3, 1 (1979), pp47–60.

For ease of future reference, Herschel numbered his ‘articles’ throughout these three published papers: the 1840 paper comprises §1 to §148; the 1842 paper comprises §149 to §216, and its postscript §217 to §230; the 1843 paper comprises §231 to §241.


Now in the photographic collection of the Harry Ransom Center of the University of Texas at Austin. The items are listed in the Center’s Photographic Collections Database, with the engraving title and year of publication: [http://norman.hrc.utexas.edu/photoPublic/fullDisplay.cfm?CollID=73](http://norman.hrc.utexas.edu/photoPublic/fullDisplay.cfm?CollID=73)

The other solution referred to here by Herschel, is the subject of his preceding articles §202 to §205, *viz* Smee’s potassium ferricyanide.


The first use of ammonium ferric citrate (coated, by itself, on prepared paper number 724) is recorded in the Memoranda on 22 July, but the entry also carries Herschel’s parenthetical remark ‘(omitted before)’; moreover, a later note on 26 August states that paper 724 was
'prepared two months ago ±’. It seems likely that Herschel forgot to allocate a prepared paper number to it at the time.

Today we would say ‘reducing’ behaviour

After the Greek for “dark” kelaino = κελαινό

Herschel, op. cit., p214

Herschel made strenuous efforts in trying to secure a viable mercury-printing process, which he had christened ‘kelainotype’ or ‘celaenotype’. At Talbot’s suggestion this was temporarily re-named ‘amphitype’, although that same title was later re-adopted for other processes. But ultimately Herschel was unsuccessful, and the mercury process came to nothing, probably because the metal of the image is sufficiently volatile to evaporate completely within a few days. The amphitypes that can be identified among the 43 indexed Herschel specimens at HRHRC are completely blank.


Herschel, op. cit, p210


Letter, Smee to Herschel, 29 September 1842. Royal Society Library.

Fisher, George Thomas, Photogenic Manipulation, (London: George Knight and Sons, 1843), p36

Thornthwaite, W H, Photogenic Manipulation, (London: Edward Palmer, 1843), p43


Bingham, Robert J, Photogenic Manipulation, 9th edn., (London: George Knight and Sons, 1852), p66

Sutton, Thomas, and Dawson, George, A Dictionary of Photography, (London: Sampson Low, Son & Marston, 1867), p79–80

Snelling, Henry H, History and Practice of Photography, (New York: 1845), p

Humphrey, S D, A System of Photography, (Albany: C. van Benthuysen, 1849), p121


Herschel, J F W, ‘Sir John Herschel ‘on certain photographic effects’, The Athenæum, 773, (20 August 1842), 748

Maunder, M, 'Herschel's Genius', Ag 41, (Autumn, 2005), p56

Mrhar, Peter, Cyanotype: Historical and Alternative Photography, 2013.
http://www.petermrhar.com/alternative
see also: http://www.f295.org/main/showthread.php?16962-Cyanotype-10-times-faster
http://jorj.org/blog/?p=2541

Döbereiner, J W, 'Chemische Thätigkeit des Lichts und Erzeugung des (neutralen) Humboldtits auf Chemischem Wege', Schweigger's Jahrbuch, 62 (1831), p86, pp90–96. An abstract of this paper was published in Pharmaceutisches Central Blatt, 2 (August 1831), pp383–5. It was subsequently translated into French as ‘Influence chimique de la lumière et formation de la humboldtite neutre par un moyen photométrique’ [sic], Journal de Pharmacie et des Sciences Accessoires, 18, 3 (March, 1832), pp117–123

Herschel, Sir J F W, The Photographic News, 8, 278 (12 February 1864), p82


Most importantly, it formed the basis for Willis’s Platinotype (1873) and Nicol’s Kallitype (1889) processes.

The circumstances of this discovery and its future significance have been described by Schaaf. The substance is now more correctly described as calcium hexahydroxyplatinate(IV).

Herschel saw a copy of Döbereiner’s paper while he was visiting Hamburg; it stimulated him to write on 12 June 1832 to Daubeny, who agreed to read Herschel’s paper on the photosensitivity of platinum(IV) chloride in solution to the Oxford meeting of the British Association for the Advancement of Science on 22 June 1832. This was subsequently published as: Herschel, Sir J F W, ‘On the Action of Light in determining the Precipitation of Muriate of Platinum by Lime-water’, London, Edinburgh, and Dublin Philosophical Magazine, 1 (July, 1832), pp58–60


This transcript carries a long editorial footnote (signed only ‘Br.’) referring to Döbereiner’s work, part of which can be translated from the German thus: ‘Following this communication from Döbereiner we further note that we have repeated Herschel’s experiment and found it to be confirmed...Thus a compound of platinum oxide with calcium oxide has been formed through the action of light. We have not made any analysis of this compound, however, in order not to anticipate Herr Herschel, and content ourselves by confirming the facts.’


This application was finally accomplished in 1898 in a tri-colour printing method due to Brewerton.

The prepared paper numbers in the Memoranda referring to the standard negative–working cyanotype process are 780, 784, and 793 – three out of a total of twenty-six prepared papers devoted to cyanotype processes of all kinds.

‘Photographic Society Committee on Positive Printing’, *Journal of the Photographic Society*, 2, (21 May 1855), p160


The process is not unlike the tanning of leather, and uses the same chemical agents – dichromates. The pigmented gelatin is rendered insoluble where the light falls; the unexposed regions remain soluble and are washed away with water to develop the image.


In modern nomenclature: iron(III) hexacyanoferrate(II)
When iron (symbol Fe, from the Latin *Ferrum*) is chemically combined with other elements, its atoms acquire a positive electric charge by transferring two or three of their (negatively charged) electrons onto atoms of other elements. (It is a law of nature that electric charge has to balance. Electrons are the fundamental particles of negative electricity, and form the outer cloud of every atom, surrounding a positively-charged nucleus). So each iron atom ends up in one of two states: ‘ferrous’ iron – also called iron(II), denoted by Fe$^{2+}$ for short, or ‘ferric’ iron – also called iron(III), denoted by Fe$^{3+}$. The superscripted number, 2+ or 3+, is called the *oxidation state* of the iron, and signifies the positive electric charge that the iron atom has acquired in the reaction. Electrically charged atoms are given the general name of *ions*: *cations* are positive, *anions* are negative.

As an example of the ‘mixed valence’ iron minerals that occur naturally, one of the best-known is the ‘lodestone’, magnetite, Fe$_3$O$_4$, which is so intensely coloured that it often appears black. Special magnetic properties are often a characteristic of mixed-valence compounds.

It is a consequence of the quantum theory of Max Planck, that the smaller the energy needed to promote such a transition, then the longer is the wavelength of light absorbed. Prussian blue absorbs long-wavelength light in the red region of the spectrum (around 700 nm).


Dr Bader offered a £1000 reward for evidence leading to the identification of the author of his painting, which was awarded to Dee Cook in 2001 for naming him as Thomas Phillips; see *Chemistry in Britain*, 37, 7, (July 2001) p99.


Ware, Mike, ‘Prussian Blue: Artists’ Pigment and Chemists’ Sponge’, *Journal of Chemical Education*, 85, 5, (May 2008), pp612–621


Maunder, M, ‘Herschel’s Genius and Testing Herschel’, The PhotoHistorian, 149, (January 2007), pp 14–21: “What you get is the first fallacy – it’s not Prussian blue but Turnbull’s blue. Something I learnt in the 1950s for my A–Levels. Thus, anyone who says you get Prussian blue is wrong. This piece of evidence was more than enough for me to stick to scientific method and protocol and not use modern historians’ documents.”


Formula Fe$_4$(Fe(CN)$_6$)$_3$.15H$_2$O.

Formula KFe[Fe(CN)$_6$].H$_2$O.


The etymology of peptise, from the Greek ‘to digest’, is appropriate.

The technical definition of a colloid is determined by the size of its particles, which lie within a range intermediate between molecular dimensions and the crystals of a normal solid. The usual criterion is that the particles should be smaller than the wavelengths of visible light, so that they cannot be discerned under a normal optical microscope. The name ‘nanoparticles’ is now preferred to colloid because the latter no longer necessarily implies (as its Greek root might suggest) that the material is ‘gluey’ – although substances such as gum and gelatin do indeed constitute another class of colloid, different in physical properties from colloids such as Prussian blue.

Having the formula NH$_4$Fe[Fe(CN)$_6$].H$_2$O.


The cations of caesium and thallium, Cs$^+$ and Tl$^+$, are both singly-charged, and of similar size to potassium, K$^+$.

Pearce, J, ‘Studies of any Toxicological Effects of Prussian–Blue Compounds in Mammals – A Review’, Food and Chemical Toxicology, 32, 6 (1994), pp577–582


http://www.utexas.edu/courses/sami/dieda/socio/chernobyl.htm

University of Texas, Sociology Department.  
http://www.utexas.edu/courses/sami/dieda/socio/chernobyl.htm


241 Center for Disease Control.  
http://www.bt.cdc.gov/radiation/prussianblue.asp


246 Oxidation is the process of making atoms or molecules more positive (or less negative) in the electrical sense. So when iron forms compounds, it is oxidized. Reduction is the converse: making atoms or molecules less positive (or more negative), e.g. oxygen gas, which consists of molecules containing two linked atoms of oxygen, \( \text{O}_2 \), is reduced to form oxides, which contain the \( \text{O}^{2-} \) anion. Both processes involve the transfer of electrons. Oxidation is the removal of electrons, reduction is their addition. When iron(III) is transformed to iron(II), it is reduced.

247 These organic acids, originally referred to as ‘vegetable acids’ by Herschel, are all familiar ‘household chemicals’ – even the poisonous oxalic acid, which occurs (in small amounts) in the leaves of rhubarb, spinach and sorrel.


250 For biographical background on the scientists, see: Roger Jones and Mike Ware, *What’s Who?*, (Leicester: Troubadour Publishing Ltd, 2010)
The quantum yield (defined as number of molecules changed divided by number of photons absorbed) is then said to be equal to one. Departures from this value significantly greater than one can apparently arise when the light triggers a chain reaction, but this is not the case in iron-based photographic processes. The quantum yield can quite commonly appear to be less than 1.0, however, due to competing reactions which diminish the efficiency of the photochemical process.

A ‘print–out’ material acquires its image by the action of light alone; there is no chemical amplification of the effect by development with added chemicals.

The ISO (arithmetic) speed is defined as 0.8/exposure in lux–seconds to give a just–perceptible image. A minimal exposure of one second to the sun’s illumination (on average, say, 80,000 lux) gives a speed of about $1/100,000 = 10^{-5}$ ISO.

Power in Watts is the rate of delivering energy: 1 Watt = 1 Joule per second.


Hydrogen cyanide is recognisable by a smell of ‘bitter almonds’. It is highly toxic.

A mixture of ferric and ferricyanide ions is powerful enough to oxidise the cellulose of paper, forming Prussian blue. Further explanation for the chemistry can be found in Appendix II.


Patterson, Jim, 'Ferricyanide Carbon'.

https://docs.google.com/document/d/1_zsPv2lWko-mdc5T7tg6XVEza_OKFfeFPordvBbzlY/pub

Herschel Memoranda, HRHRC, Austin, Texas.

This represents yet another enduring contribution by Herschel to the vocabulary of photography, joining his better–known usage of the terms ‘negative’, ‘positive’ and, indeed, the invention of the word ‘photography’ itself. Herschel did not, unfortunately, use the word ‘solarising’ in his publications, so he has not been accorded the
credit for coining it. Prof. John W. Draper also used the word in 1840 to describe the overexposure of daguerreotypes: *Philosophical Magazine, 17*, (1840), p217

266 Herschel Memoranda, HRHRC, Austin, Texas


268 Prof. Alexander Herschel’s account of his father’s recipe (according to the “London Photo News”) is cited by Ernst Lietze, *Modern Heliographic Processes*, (New York: D. Van Nostrand, 1888), p56


270 Hunt, R, *Researches on Light*, (London: Longman, Brown, Green, and Longmans, 1844) pp139–144. The ‘hydrargyrocyanotype’ is one of the seven cyanotype processes that Hunt lists as ‘the most interesting of this class’. It is remarkable that he does not list, in its own right, Herschel’s standard negative–working method (a), except as a preliminary to this process. The making of negative images may have seemed less important to him.

271 Mercury(I) nitrate, Hg₂(NO₃)₂.

272 ‘Corrosive sublimate’ is the alchemical name for mercuric chloride, or mercury(II) chloride, HgCl₂; it is an extremely toxic salt: ingestion of only 0.05 g can be fatal.


276 Pellet, H, *British Patent no. 4632*, (6 December 1877)


Ducochois, P C, *Photographic Reproduction Processes*, (London: Hampton Judd, 1892) p33: ‘We have used Pellet’s paper imported from Paris, which it was impossible to work satisfactorily...’


Obtained by diluting the concentrated acid 10 times: always adding 100 cc of the acid to 1 litre of water, not vice versa.


Ducochois, *op cit*, p29

This is a solution of 45° Baumé = SG 1.453 = 50% FeCl₃ w/w – see Appendix IV.

I am grateful to John Falconer, Keeper of the Oriental and India Office Collections of the British Library for providing information concerning Waterhouse.


Valenta, E, *Photographisches Correspondenz* (1897), p74


J Merk in Darmstadt, and Dr. Theodor Schuchardt, Chemische Fabrik, in Goerlitz.

It is an oversimplification to suggest that there are just two varieties of this substance. In fact, ammonium ferric citrate is an ‘ill-characterised’ compound whose composition depends on the method of preparation, and it may vary in iron content from 14% to 28%, corresponding to a colour shift from green to brown.

The main bibliographic sources of the cyanotype formulations in this survey were:


Jones B E, (ed.), *Cassell's Cyclopaedia of Photography*, (London: Cassell and Co, 1911)

A concentration of X % w/v (read as ‘X weight per cent volume’) means that a weight, X grams (g), of the solute is contained in a volume, 100 cubic centimeters (cc), of the solution. For further details of the various means of expressing concentration see Appendix IV.


‘Early Photographs by Robert Hunt’, *The Year–Book of Photography and Photographic News Almanac*, (1890), pp193–4


But see, for an account of mordanting by iron: Mercer, John, *The British Journal of Photography*, 42 (1895), p557

The standard histories of photography make no mention of John Mercer. His contributions to photography were only brought to public knowledge recently, by Dr. Stella Butler, curator of the North West Museum of Science and Industry in a lecture to the Historical Group of the Royal Society of Chemistry, at Liverpool in June 1987. 

Letter, Burnett to Church, dated 1 September 1855. I am indebted to Sara Stevenson for bringing this letter to my attention.

‘Ferricyanide’ is an obsolete alternative for ferricyanide. It had the merit of amplifying the difference between this, and ferrocyanide.

Catalogue of the exhibition of Glasgow Photographic Association, staged for the British Association meeting in Glasgow, September, 1855. I am indebted to Roger Taylor for producing this catalogue entry from his database.


Sodium nitroprusside is now correctly called sodium nitrosylpentacyanoferrate, Na₂Fe(NO)(CN)₅.

“Description of Mr. Burnett’s Pictures in the Photographic Exhibition, Suffolk Street”, *Journal of the Photographic Society*, (5 February, 1859), p182

West, Redfield B., “Photosensitive Composition”, *US patent no. 625,527*, 23 May 1899.


The solubility of potassium iron(III) oxalate is only 6.6 g in 100 cc of water at 16°C


Valenta, E, ‘Verwendung von Ferrialkalioxalat als Ersatz für Ferriammoniumzitrat beim Zyanotypverfahren’, *Photographische Korrespondenz*, 728 (May 1921), p107

The guanidinium cation has the formula C(NH₂)₃⁺


http://thecarbonworks.com/blog/?p=1286


King, Terry, 'Changing the Blueprint', *op. cit.*

Maunder, Michael, 'Ironing Wrinkles', *Ag 40*, (Summer 2005), pp78–83


Maunder, Michael, “Herschel’s genius”, *Ag 41*, (Autumn 2005), pp54–63,

[https://www.facebook.com/groups/68142897748/permalink/10151454186012749/?comment_id=10151454267582749&offset=0&total_comments=6](https://www.facebook.com/groups/68142897748/permalink/10151454186012749/?comment_id=10151454267582749&offset=0&total_comments=6)


Townsend, N, and Ware, M J, *unpublished observations*, 1990


[http://unblinkingeye.com/Articles/Uranium/uranium.html](http://unblinkingeye.com/Articles/Uranium/uranium.html)


http://www.johnEBphotography.com


https://www.reddit.com/r/Darkroom/comments/4a000o/im_building_my_own_enlarger_for_making_cyanotypes/

http://imgur.com/a/ed8cE

https://slykasstuff.tumblr.com/post/155772150296/comparing-different-cyanotype-techniques

http://www.glithero.com/blueware-tiles

http://www.glithero.com/blueware-vases

Muspratt, S, *Chemistry, Theoretical, Practical and Analytical, as Applied and Relating to the Arts and Manufactures*, (Glasgow: William Mackenzie, 1860), pp647–9


Lucas, A D, ‘Health Hazards Associated with the Cyanotype Printing Process’, *Journal of Environmental Pathology, Toxicology and Oncology*, 11, 1 (1992), pp18–20

*Amateur Photographer Booklet No. 9*. Nashua Pillow Co., Manufacturers of Silkdow™ Specialities, Pillows, Cushions, and Photographic Blue Print Covers. 6–18 Pearsons Avenue, Nashua NH, (1900).

I am indebted to the late Peter Palmquist, curator of the *Women in
Photography International Archive, for supplying me with a photocopy of this catalogue.

I thank Hazel McKenzie and Ann Thomas of the NGC for making this item available to me.


http://www.alternativephotography.com/linda-stemers-cyanotype-business/
http://www.blueprintsonfabric.com/
http://www.stonecreeksilk.co.uk/


Dorel, Felix, *US patent no 1,386,995* (filed 1918, awarded 1921)


Farnham, Roger, “Gel Lithography”, in *Blueprint: Photography and Engineering*, Roger Farnham and Harry Magee (eds.), (Glasgow: Print Studio and Street Level Photoworks, 2013)

http://www.blueprint2013.com


Lundgren, Adrienne and Mintie, Katherine, *email communication 22 June 2016*. Schindler Brothers, Drawing and Process Papers, 26 Beekman Street, New York


Kwech, R E, ‘Commercial Blue–print Papers’, *The British Journal of Photography*, 71 (15 August 1924), pp491–3; this is a reprint of an article first published in *American Photography*.


Neblette, *op cit*, pp697–700


Jahoda, E, *US Patent* no 2,517,111 (1 August 1950)


Heron, R, ‘Blueprint into Blackprint’, *Afterimage*, 1, 9 (December 1973), pp4–7, 12

I am indebted to Reginald Heron for information on this paper and the loan of specimen prints.


By the Huey Company of Chicago, and the Universal Blueprint Paper Company of Denver and Fort Worth.

The paper may be obtained from NaturePrint™, P.O.Box 314 Moraga, California 94556, USA.

Knierim, David, *personal communication*.

The only camera negatives known to have been made by John Herschel are views of his father’s 40–foot telescope at Slough. Specimens of these negatives are in the collections of the Museum of the History of Science, in Oxford, and the National Museum of Photography, Film & Television.


Herschel recorded in his diary on 14 February 1839: ‘...pursued without intermission the Photographic transfer of engravings. Prepared and set going a lot sent me by P. Stewi ...’
I shall use the terms ‘correct’ and ‘reversed’ to denote the chirality (handedness) of an image with respect to the original object. A spatially ‘reversed’ photograph depicts the mirror image of the original, when viewed from the recto. Herschel also used this word, but rather than ‘correct’ he used ‘direct’ – which I shall avoid because it might be taken today to imply a different meaning. These adjectives will be used in conjunction with the nouns ‘positive’ or ‘negative’ to denote the tonality of the image. This should be carefully distinguished from a third characteristic: the intrinsic response of the process itself, which may be inherently either positive-working or negative-working.

This he first did on 31 January 1839, and showed the result to Talbot on 1 February 1839.

Thus, the result of making a negative of a negative is a positive, just as \(-1 \times -1 = +1\); while a negative of a positive is still a negative:

\[-1 \times +1 = -1,\]

and a positive of a positive is a positive:

\[+1 \times +1 = +1.\]

The analogy could also be argued that the ‘sum’ of a negative and a positive is blank, i.e. zero: \(-1 + 1 = 0\).


The concepts of optical densitometry and the characteristic curve of a photosensitive layer lay several decades into the future.

There is just one engraving diaphane in the NMPFT collection, and it has not been completely cropped, so the partly excised title can be matched to one of Herschel’s titles: *Rosolia*. There are frequent references to this title in the *Memoranda*; one of Herschel’s positive cyanotypes of this image has been published by Schaaf.

Art Libraries Association Portrait Index, p1377


*British Museum Catalogue of Engraved British Portraits*, p553

Pringle, T, (ed.), *Friendship’s Offering; and Winter’s Wreath: A Christmas and New Year’s Present for MCCCCXXXVIII*, (London: Smith, Elder & Co., 1838), Plate IV, facing p73
A postcard reproduction of a negative cyanotype made by Herschel from this engraving is obtainable from the Museum of the History of Science at Oxford.

Many of the library holdings of *Friendship's Offering* are incomplete. The National Arts Library, the British Library, the Bodleian Library, Oxford, and Birmingham Public Library have almost complete runs.

In the archive at the Museum of the History of Science, at Oxford, on a packet labelled '1 Cyanotype, 2 Amphitypes' there is a note in Herschel's hand which reads: 'Dr. Sir, when done with...sent to care of Mr Stewart, 65 Cornhill. They will come safe to hand.'


http://norman.hrc.utexas.edu/photoPublic/fullDisplay.cfm?CollID=73


For a transcription of this MS see: Helmut Gernsheim, *Julia Margaret Cameron*, (London: The Fountain Press, 1948), p71, Plates 4 and 51

Schultze, *loc. cit.*

The validity of these arguments rests on two assumptions, which are justified by the generally sharp quality of the resulting images: namely, that Herschel did not make more than two successive derivative contact prints from an engraving, and that he did not print through the verso of an engraving to obtain an image of the same chirality in one step.

Cat. no. 1943–39/72


The original engraving diaphane of *Rosolia* is also in the NMPFT. It comes from *Friendship's Offering* for 1837, Plate X, p289.

These four sheets of specimens are now in the Harry Ransom Humanities Research Centre, at Austin, Texas.

http://norman.hrc.utexas.edu/photoPublic/fullDisplay.cfm?CollID=73

The ‘coating weight’ is defined as the weight of a specified component per unit area of the surface.

Which corresponds typically to a volume of 1.4 cc applied to an A4 sheet.

Schaaf, op. cit., p24

‘Fac-simile of a Photogenic Drawing’, The Mirror of Literature, Amusement, and Instruction, 33, 945 (20 April 1839), p241


A. A. [Atkins, Anna], Photographs of British Algae. Cyanotype Impressions., (Halstead Place, Sevenoaks: privately printed, 1843–53)


As with most claims to be ‘first’, this can be disputed – depending on the precise interpretation that is placed on the expression ‘photographically illustrated book’. The debate does not detract one scintilla from Anna Atkins’s achievement, however.


https://www.chatsworth.org/art-archives/devonshire-collections/photographs/cyanotype-photograph/

https://blogs.royalsociety.org/history-of-science/2018/05/22/gift-1843/

http://digitalgallery.nypl.org/nypldigital/dgtitle_tree.cfm?title_id=100174&level=1&parent_id=288165&word=&s=&notword=&d=&c=&f=&k=0&sScope=&sLevel=&sLabel=&lword=&lfield=&imgs=20&snum=0


Anne Dixon (1799–1864) was born Anne Austen (a second cousin to the novelist); she married Henry Dixon, the vicar of Ferring, Sussex, in 1837; the couples spent much time together, including botanising on the Sussex seashores.

Atkins, A, Memoir of John George Children, Esq., Including Some Unpublished Poetry by His Father and Himself, (London: John Bowyer Nichols & Sons, 1853)

Wilson, J L, Some aspects of the photographically illustrated book, a lecture delivered to the Historical Group of the Royal Photographic Society, (20 January 1988).


The Athenaeum, 1657, (30 July 1859), pp149–150

The Athenaeum Review Database, III, 1713, (25 August 1860), 293; ibid., IV, 1714, (1 September 1860), 262

This album, lent from the collection of Hans Kraus Jnr., was displayed in the exhibition ‘Photography in Science: Beauty of Another Order’ at the National Gallery of Canada, Ottawa, in 1997. I am indebted to Hans Kraus for kindly affording me the opportunity to examine it.

The Photographic Journal, 137, 7 (September 1997), p281. See also ibid. 135, 10 (November 1995), pp418–420


Schaaf, L J, Sun Gardens; an Exhibition of Victorian Photograms by Anna Atkins, Crawford Centre for the Arts, The University of St. Andrews, 1988

For the ‘Meteorological Observations’ for these months, see, for example, The Philosophical Magazine, 22, 146 and 148, (May and June 1843), pp415 and 503 respectively.

Stulik, Dusan, Kaplan, Art, Clark, Susie, Wright, Philippa, and Liddy, Brian, private communication, National Museum of Photography, Film and Television, August, 2006.

The handwriting is also not that of two other possible candidates for authorship, Michael Pakenham Edgeworth and Hugh Cleghorn

The question is further complicated by the fact that some of the author’s pencilled annotations refer to ‘modifications of the Herschel
formula’, labelled by the author as A, B, and C. There is no obvious difference between the resulting prints so labelled, and despite the coincidence, this notation cannot be identified with Herschel’s own ‘varieties (a), (b), and (c)’, because (b) and (c) were positive–working processes, as has been deduced earlier, but all the cyanotypes in Dried Ferns were obviously made by a negative–working process. It seems likely that these ‘modifications’ A, B, and C, were only minor variants in the processing, because they have not given rise to any sensible difference in the final images.


I am indebted to John Sullivan, curator of the photographic archive of the National Library of New Zealand, for this information. See also: Sampson, F B, Early New Zealand Botanical Art, (Reed Methuen, 1985), pp109–110


[Julia Herschel], A handbook for Greek and Roman lace making, London: R. Barrett & Sons, 1869. A copy in the NYPL may be viewed online: https://digitalcollections.nypl.org/items/7dd58e00-0898-0133-038f-58d385a7bbd0

[Julia Herschel], A handbook of Greek lace making, London: R. Barrett & Sons, 1870. A copy in the JPMG may be downloaded from: https://archive.org/details/handbookofgreekl00hers


Le Secq’s negatives were made exclusively by the waxed paper process.

Janis, E P and Sartre, J, op. cit., p39


Heilbrun, F, and Bajac Q, Paul Burty Haviland (1880–1950), photographe, (Paris: Éditions de la Réunion des musées nationaux,
1996), p84. I am indebted to Roger Wilson and Pamela Roberts for first bringing this work to my attention.

491 Heilbrun, F, and Bajac Q, *op cit.*, p66

492 I thank the owner of the album, John Moran and his family, for the kind provision of information on this work.


494 http://www.mhs.ox.ac.uk/collections/imu-search-page/results/?query=Teasdale&thumbnails=on&querytype=basic

495 http://www.mhs.ox.ac.uk/collections/search/display-narrative/?irn=14216&index=1

496 http://www.luminous-lint.com/app/photographer/Washington__Teasdale/A/


498 Many of the Rijksmuseum’s 611 cyanotypes may be viewed online: https://www.rijksmuseum.nl/en/search?p=1&ps=12&technique=cyanotypie&ii=3

499 I thank Photograph Conservator, Martin Jürgens for this information.

500 https://library.usu.edu/Specol/photoarchive/cyanotypes/LARGE/P001_4.html

501 https://library.usu.edu/Specol/photoarchive/cyanotypes/about.html

502 Braun, Marta, 'Muybridge's *Animal Locomotion*: The Director's Cut', *History of Photography*, 24, 1, (Spring 2000), pp52–54

503 Information posted to the PhotoHistory List of the Internet by Debbie Griggs Carter. One such strip was exhibited at the Cinema’s Centennial Exhibition in 1995.

504 Bartholomew, E, Curator, Photographic & Film Collection, National Railway Museum, York, *a private communication*.


506 Stevenson, S, *Light from the Dark Room*, (Edinburgh: National Galleries of Scotland, 1995), p113


509 Album of cyanotypes, *Percement du Canal de Panama*, (1888–ca.1903), (Canberra:National Library of Australia,)

I am indebted to Philip Jackson of the National Library of Australia for this information.

Conner, Michael, ‘Henry Bosse and Samuel Clemens as Mark Twain – Parallel Lives on the Mighty Mississippi’, Ramsey County History, 33, 3, (Fall 1998), pp18–25

Wehrenberg, Charles, Mississippi Blue – Henry P. Bosse and his Views on the Mississippi River Between Minneapolis and St. Louis, 1883–1891, (Twin Palms Publishers 2002)

http://www.mvp.usace.army.mil/About/HenryPeterBossePhotos.aspx

http://reflections.mndigital.org/cdm/landingpage/collection/army/

Neuzil, Mark, Views on the Mississippi: The Photographs of Henry Peter Bosse (Minneapolis: University of Minnesota press, 2001).

Johnson, Earl, e-mail communication to the author, February 2014. I thank Earl Johnson for information regarding Bosse.

Neuzil, 2001, p.4. Ref 496.

https://www.google.com/culturalinstitute/asset-viewer/u-s-dredge-phoenix/AAHc4n1oP5z0-A?hl=en


https://archive.org/details/howtopaintinstru00asal

Pullis, Pierre, cyanotypes of New York City Subway construction 1901–09:


http://tinyurl.com/q6ps8md

http://www.luminous-lint.com/app/home/?action=ACT_VEX&p1=_PROCESS_Cyanotype_01&p2=1&p3=0&p4=0


The account is slightly obscured by the common error of transposing ferrocyanide for ferricyanide.


The Dictionary of National Biography has his forename as “Edwin”.

I thank Julia Findlater, Curator of Leighton House, for showing me this material.


https://www.facebook.com/groups/13488949283/

http://www.flickr.com/photos/tags/cyanotype/
An exception to this was the solar microscope, which harnessed the sun’s rays to project an enlarged image with sufficient intensity to...
be printable on the very insensitive papers of the time. A primitive enlarger employing the sun’s light was also described by John Stewart, the brother-in-law of Sir John Herschel, in the *Journal of the Photographic Society*, 1, 8 (22 August 1853), pp101–3.

Herschel is generally acknowledged as the author of the word *photograph*: he first used it in his diary on 13 February 1839; on 28 February 1839 he commended it to Talbot, and on 14 March he made the first use of it publicly. Many of his initial specimens are annotated ‘J.F.W.H. Photogr.’, the earliest of these being dated 10 February, 1839. Simcock has pointed out that it is not clear exactly what Herschel intended by this abbreviation, *i.e.*, ‘Photograph’, ‘Photographer’ or ‘Photographsit’, analogous to the ‘pinxit’ of painters. The word ‘photograph’ first appeared in print on 25 February, 1839.


Talbot originally named such images *skiagraphs*, which translates as ‘shadow–writings’, but he later changed the name to *photogenic drawings*.

A cyanotype made from this anatomical specimen in the 1960s was exhibited at the National Gallery of Canada, Ottawa, in 1997 in *Photography in Science: Beauty of Another Order*.

The paucity of our language in this respect is highlighted by the fact that, just to describe the simple concept of a shadow–cast image, we have had to enlist the surname of a Frenchman, M. Étienne de Silhouette (1709–1767). Duchocois (*op cit*, p22) offers us another French word, ‘Cliché’, explaining in a footnote, ‘Cliché is the term applied by photographers to the negatives and diapositives, and by extension to any drawing or print on transparent materials, employed in the photo–mechanical and other photographic printing methods.’ The OED definition of *cliché* as ‘a metal stereotype of a wood engraving used to print from’ implies that this is a rather inappropriate usage. However the word was also used by Waterhouse to describe Schulze’s cut–out letters, as if it were then current parlance. See *The Photographic Journal*, (June 30 1903), p166.

The Shorter Oxford English Dictionary: ‘*Diaphane*. 1. A transparent body or substance; a transparency 1840. 2. A silk stuff having transparent coloured figures 1824.’ The well–known adjective ‘diaphanous’ derives from it and was used by Herschel in his 1839 paper, but it has now degenerated to a rather hackneyed stock–in–trade of the romantic novelist!

It may be objected that *diaphane* is inappropriate for totally opaque objects – in which case *skiaphane* or *scotophane* might be considered.


Among the several techniques of ‘diaphanie’, one describes the application of engravings to glass with ‘washable varnish’ followed by treatment with a ‘clearing liquid’. The special solutions for this purpose were available commercially from Jabez Barnard, an artists’ colourman of Oxford Street. I am grateful to Roger Taylor for discovering this reference.


Unfortunately the word ‘skiography’ has now been widely reappropriated by the devotees of the piste, so I have had to replace it with ‘skiagraphy’ in the present text. However, even this usage is somewhat ambiguous, since this word was also used to refer to early images obtained by X-rays.

An angle is defined in radians as the ratio of the length of the subtended arc of a circle to its radius. Since the circumference of a circle is, by definition, $2\pi$ times its radius, it follows that the conversion between the two systems of angular measurement is given by: 360 degrees $\equiv 2\pi$ radians, whence 1 radian $\equiv \frac{180}{\pi} = 57.296^\circ$ (degrees of arc). When angles are small (in the order of 25° or less), the length of the short arc of the circle’s circumference is closely approximated (with a precision better than 1%) by the (slightly shorter) straight line spanning the same arc (called in geometry, the ‘chord’), and we shall make frequent use of this approximation to determine small angular measures easily.

The light sensitive receptors in the most sensitive region of the retina, the fovea, are the cones, packed together and each subtending an angle of 0.5 minutes of arc at the pupil – *i.e.* the critical limit of angular resolution by the eye is twice this: about 1 minute of arc or ca. $1/3420$ radian.

The reader can easily test these figures personally, by viewing the millimeter scale of a ruler (preferably one of white plastic with black calibrations) in a good light, at distances measured with a tape, to
determine the distance (in mm) at which the mm calibrations just become discernable; the reciprocal of this distance gives the angular resolution of vision in radians.


Or 1/100th of an inch at a distance of 10 inches.

The sun's diameter is about 864,000 miles (1,391,000 kilometers). The Earth orbits the sun at an average distance of about 92,960,000 miles (149,600,000 kilometers). The angular diameter is therefore 864,000/92,960,000 = 1/108 rad or 0.533 degrees. Data from: Weast, R C, (ed.), *CRC Handbook of Chemistry and Physics*, (Boca Raton: CRC Press, 1980).


The umbra and penumbra are most conspicuous at the time of a solar eclipse. For details of this calculation see Ware, Mike, ‘Prolegomena…’, *loc. cit.*

Likewise, any diffusion of the sunlight by clouds would also have blurred a projected image by increasing the effective size of the light source.

The new cyanotype process used for these photograms requires shorter exposures: one minute suffices in the Aegean sun.

Is there a case for coining a neologism here – a *tenebrogram*?


These conditions are often agreeably met with in a Mediterranean climate!

http://www.mikeware.co.uk/mikeware/HellenImp.html


http://www.ruscombepaper.com/index1.html

UVB lies below 320 nm, at which point ordinary glass begins to absorb strongly, and UVC lies below 280 nm.

http://www.pictorico.eu/productsshop/?no_cache=1&L=2 http://www.permajet.com/ProductGrp/Permajet-Digital-Transfer-Negative-Film-165u


Matzapetakis, M., Raptopoulou, C.P., Tsohos, A., Papaeftymiou, V., Moon, N. and Salifoglou, A., ‘Synthesis, Spectroscopic and Structural Characterization of the First Mononuclear, Water Soluble Iron–Citrate Complex, \((\text{NH}_4)_5\text{Fe(C}_6\text{H}_4\text{O}_7)_2\cdot 2\text{H}_2\text{O}\).’ *Journal of the American Chemical Society*, 1998, 120, 13266–7. DOI 10.1021/ja9807035


The solubility of \(\text{K}_3\text{Fe(C}_2\text{O}_4)_3\cdot 3\text{H}_2\text{O}\) is 6.6 g in 100 cc of water at 15ºC


Fabbri, Malin, and Fabbri, Gary, *Blueprint to cyanotypes: exploring a historical alternative photographic process*,


One well–respected practitioner complained of having to reject three bottles of the chemical before finding a satisfactory one: Judy Seigel, *World Journal of Post-Factory Photography*.

i.e. ca. 10% w/v potassium ferricyanide, corresponding to 0.3 molar

The solubility of potassium ferric oxalate is 6.6 g per 100 cc of water at 15 °C.

If ammonium ferricyanide were available, making up the sensitizer would be very easy, as follows: dissolve 8 g of it in ca. 70 cc of water; add 17 g of ammonium ferric oxalate, dissolve it, and make up to 100 cc.

called a “graduate” in the USA

The chemical explanation is given in Appendix III, where it is shown why, for ferrioxalate sensitizers, acid conditions greatly promote the formation of Prussian blue after exposure.

Summa, Tim, Alternativephotography.com forum, 30 July 2009

The Materials Safety Data Sheets can be found on the World Wide Web

http://www.ilpi.com/msds/index.html


http://www.ilpi.com/msds/ref/hmis.html

Lucas, A D, ‘Health Hazards Associated with the Cyanotype Printing Process’, *Journal of Environmental Pathology, Toxicology and Oncology*, 11, 1 (1992), pp18–20

Dating from 1901, when Andrew Greig Barr of Glasgow adopted ammonium ferric citrate as the essential active ingredient for Scotland’s other national drink: *Irn-Bru*. This beverage contains 0.002% ammonium ferric citrate – regrettably too dilute for making cyanotypes!

http://www.nontoxicprint.com/safetyinphotography.htm


http://infohouse.p2ric.org/ref/19/18012.pdf

It is conjectured that this effect may be due to ammonia causing a reversible deprotonation of water coordinated to Fe(III); transformation of the ligands from OH$_2^-$ to OH$^-$ would affect the energy of the electron charge-transfer transition between Fe(III) and Fe(II), and change the colour.

These deeply coloured iron complexes, when prepared directly from iron salts and an infusion of oak–galls, have provided the basis for iron–gall writing inks since medieval times.

The chemical formula of gallic acid is C$_6$H$_2$(OH)$_3$COOH, or C$_7$H$_6$O$_5$, for short. It is found in plants, both free and as a constituent part of hydrolyzable tannins. When heated, it loses carbon dioxide and becomes pyrogallol, a well-known developer.

Its molecular formula is C$_{76}$H$_{52}$O$_{46}$ with a molecular mass of 1701 grams/mole. Its name is β-D-gluco-pentakis(3,4-dihydroxy-5-((3,4,5-trihydroxybenzoyl)oxy)benzoate).

I acknowledge the late Harry Milligan FRPS, former Curator of Photographs at the Greater Manchester Museum of Science and Industry, for first drawing my attention in 1984 to the unpublished endeavours of John Mercer.
One of Mercer’s ferric processes was based on the formation of insoluble cuprous thiocyanate, which could then be toned in various ways, such as conversion to the brown cuprous ferricyanide. Mercer’s work therefore antedates the ‘cuprotype’ process attributed to J B Obernetter, which was published in 1864.

‘Box of Experiments in Chromatic Photography by John Mercer’, UDCL-8/19, Lancashire County Record Office, Bow Lane, Preston.

I thank Jenny Wetton, curator at the Museum of Science and Industry in Manchester, for access to this item.


660 Anthony’s Photographic Bulletin, (1901), 444. I thank Christopher James for this reference.

661 Planchon, V, French Patent no 639,189 (13 January 1927)

662 Heron, R, ‘Blueprint into Blackprint’, Afterimage, 1, 9 (December 1973), pp4–7, 12

663 Heron, Reginald, private communication to the author, 1998


665 Ware, Mike, unpublished observations, 1999


667 Ware, Mike, unpublished observations, 1998

668 http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Lead_poisoning#History


671 Murray, H D, Ferro–prussiate printing, British patent no. 713,944, (10 March 1933); United States patent no. 2,014,692, (17 September 1935)

672 Hammond, A, How to Tone Prints, (Boston: American Photographic Publishing Co., 1940), pp60–63


676 ‘Lead white’ is a basic lead carbonate, PbCO₃.Pb(OH)₂. It is possible that the basic nature of this pigment may contribute to the deterioration of Prussian blue by causing alkaline hydrolysis.

677 Kirby, J, and Saunders, D, to be published

*Ibid*, p190–192


I am indebted to John McElhone and the National Gallery of Canada for permission to quote these findings in advance of publication.


I am grateful to Peter Bower, paper historian, for advice and for supplying the samples of these historic papers.

I am indebted to Judy Seigel for supplying me with these useful step tablets.

Since exposure is defined as the product of illumination and time, these two parameters must be combined in reciprocal proportion to achieve the same result, i.e. if the illumination is halved, the time must be doubled to give the same exposure. However, there comes a point with all real photosensitive materials when this inverse proportionality ceases to apply – this is the point of ‘reciprocity failure’ – and very weak illumination must be compensated by disproportionately lengthy exposure times.


Except in electrochemical cells where the two processes may be separated by an electric current.

The molecule contains both primary and secondary alcohol and ether functions, which can be oxidized to give a range of substances, loosely referred to as ‘oxycellulose’.


Kirby, *loc cit*


Holtzman’s buffer of pH 9.4 consists of a mixture which is 0.05 molar in sodium hydrogen carbonate and 0.0165 molar in sodium carbonate.

The buffer was the same as that employed by Holtzman: the solution was 0.05 molar in sodium hydrogen carbonate and 0.0165 molar in sodium carbonate.


This was ‘purified’ water purchased from a retail pharmacist, and fulfilling the standards of purity required by the British Pharmacopoeia. It was thought most realistic to use this, rather than de-ionised or distilled water which varies in its origins, availability and quality.


*Note:* This paper quotes values for UV contents of illumination that are in error by a factor of 1000, owing to the mistaken use of units of mW/lm (milliwatts per lumen) instead of W/lm (microwatts per lumen).


The presence of the hydronium cation, H$_3$O$^+$, in the zeolytic voids will defend the Prussian blue against alkaline hydrolysis, while not presenting a direct threat to the cellulose of the paper.


Calcium carbonate has a solubility of only ca 0.001 g per 100 cc water.


Held, Lauren, Burge, Daniel, and Nishimura, Douglas, 'The Effects of Acidic, Alkaline, Buffered, and Non–Buffered Enclosures on...

The most recent review article on this topic at the time of writing is: Dunbar, K R, and Heintz, R A, ‘Chemistry of Transition–Metal Cyanide Compounds – Modern Perspectives’, *Progress in Inorganic Chemistry*, 45 (1997), pp283–391


Davidson and Welo, *Journal of Physical Chemistry*, 32 (1928), pp1191


Keggin, J F, and Miles F D, ‘Structures and Formulae of the Prussian Blues & Related Compounds’, *Nature*, 137 (4 April 1936), pp577–8

See ref 667

Xiao–Wei Cao, Rong Wang, Gui–Hua Wang, Zong–Rang Zhang, ‘*In situ* Raman Spectroelectrochemical Characterization of th Prussian blue modified Platinum Electrode’,

---


Holtzmann, *loc cit*


The reader may find it helpful to be reminded of the formal oxidation states of the iron atoms in the formulations of compounds of this family.


It has been determined by radio–isotope studies that this is the mechanism, and not the cyanide ligands ‘switching’ their coordination ends from one iron centre to the other.

Wild *et al*, loc cit


Also now called the molar absorptivity.


To take proper account of the symmetry, the d orbitals of all six Fe(III) centres surrounding any given Fe(II) centre are taken as symmetry-adapted linear combinations.

Williams, *op cit*, p219


I thank Susan Blake for instrumental assistance in obtaining these spectra.


I thank David Collison for providing access to this instrument.


Duncan and Wigley, *loc cit*, found the Prussian blue formed by air oxidation of Prussian white to have the composition KFe[Fe(CN)₆].KOH.


Williams *op cit* p227


The Nernst Equation for the potential is given by $E = E^0 + (RT/nF)\ln K_s$


Mortimer and Rosseinsky, *loc cit*


Itaya *et al*, *loc cit*

Dostal *et al*, *loc cit*


as the photoproduct, Prussian blue, builds up it will increasingly absorb the incident UV radiation – the phenomenon of “self–masking”.

Properly, in a heterogeneous system, the optical density should be calculated using the Koubelka–Munk theory, which takes account of significant scattering. However the present approximation will serve for an ‘order–of–magnitude’ calculation.

Rigorously, the yield should be calculated by integrating over the whole waveband of actinic light, to take account of the variations of $I$, $f$, and $\phi$ with wavelength $\lambda$. The present approximation will serve for most purposes, however.

This corresponds to a pigment having an extinction coefficient in the order of $\varepsilon = 10^4 \text{dm}^3/\text{mol/cm}$
The intrinsic printing exposure range of the iron–based sensitizers generally appears to be 7 or 8 stops, corresponding to arithmetic factors of $2^7 = 128$, to $2^8 = 256$.

According to Kosar, *op cit* p32, commercial blueprint paper has a coating weight of 0.6 to 0.75 g/m$^2$ of iron salts.

Brinckman, E, Delzenne, G, Poot, A, and Willems, J, *Unconventional Imaging Processes*, (London: The Focal Press, 1978), pp103, 135. There are some numerical errors in the concentration values quoted by these authors for their calculation, but the final result is consistent.

Assuming that the Beer–Lambert Law is valid for suspensions or layers of Prussian blue: $D_{ref} = 2cCd$ because the light traverses the absorbent layer a second time after being reflected by the white paper base; where $C$ is the concentration in mol/dm$^3$ and $d$ is the path length in cm. Conversion of units to SI leads to the given equation.


806 Attfield, *Chemistry: General, Medical, and Pharmaceutical*, (London: John van Voorst, 1880, 9th edn.) p172


808 Valenta, E, *Photographisches Correspondenz* (1897), p74


810 Uphaus, R A and Blake, M I, ‘Electron Spin Resonance Characterization of the Ferric Ammonium Citrates (Scale Salts)’, *Naturwissenscachen*, 68 (1981), pp270–1


819 The anionic formula, FeIII[FeII(CN)6]–, used here to represent the Prussian blue formed in the cyanotype process, is only intended as a formalism; various cations may be present, e.g. K+, NH4+, H3O+, or none, or even anions, with the consequence that the lattice may have defects, as explained in the previous Appendix.

820 In this respect ‘cyanotype Prussian blue’ differs in its method of preparation from the ‘normal’ form of Turnbull’s blue, which is always obtained from uncomplexed, aquated iron(II).
Kosar, op cit, pp32–3
Suzuki et al, loc cit
Murray, loc cit
Holden, J, British Patent No.418,369 (24 October, 1934)
Faust and Zepp loc cit
Jahoda loc cit
‘Pigment blue 27: C.I. 77510, 77520’ The Colour Index, (Society of Dyers and Colorists, 19 ) 2nd edn, pp2777, 3621
The identification of millilitres (ml) with cubic centimetres (cc) is not strictly exact, but serves for most practical purposes.
Since the litre is not an approved unit of the SI system, the units here should strictly be written as moles/dm³.
Though with the growth of digital imaging technology, this skill may become rare.
The Merck Index
Weast, op. cit., Tables F–3, F–4